

Cambridge English

SECOND EDITION



Complete Advanced



Student's Book
with answers



Guy Brook-Hart and Simon Haines



C1
English
Profile

For revised exam from 2015



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS



CAMBRIDGE ENGLISH
Language Assessment
Part of the University of Cambridge

Cambridge English

SECOND EDITION



Complete Advanced

Student's Book **with** answers

Guy Brook-Hart

Simon Haines

CAMBRIDGE

UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781107670907

© Cambridge University Press 2014

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2009

Second edition 2014

Printed in the United Kingdom by Latimer Trend

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-107-63106-9 Student's Book without answers with CD-ROM

ISBN 978-1-107-67090-7 Student's Book with answers with CD-ROM

ISBN 978-1-107-69838-3 Teacher's Book with Teacher's Resources CD-ROM

ISBN 978-1-107-63148-9 Workbook without answers with Audio CD

ISBN 978-1-107-67517-9 Workbook with answers with Audio CD

ISBN 978-1-107-68823-0 Student's Book Pack (Student's Book with answers with CD-ROM and Class Audio CDs (2))

ISBN 978-1-107-64450-2 Class Audio CDs (2)

ISBN 978-1-107-66289-6 Presentation Plus DVD-ROM

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Map of the units	4
Introduction	6
Cambridge English: Advanced content and overview	7
1 Our people	8
2 Mastering languages	18
Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 1 and 2	28
3 All in the mind	30
4 Just the job!	40
Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 3 and 4	50
5 Dramatic events	52
6 Picture yourself	62
Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 5 and 6	72
7 Leisure and entertainment	74
8 Media matters	84
Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 7 and 8	94
9 At top speed	96
10 A lifelong process	106
Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 9 and 10	116
11 Being somewhere else	118
12 The living world	128
Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 11 and 12	138
13 Health and lifestyle	140
14 Moving abroad	150
Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 13 and 14	160
Language reference	162
Writing reference	184
Speaking reference	194
Answer key	199
Acknowledgements	252

Map of the units

Unit title	Reading and Use of English	Writing
1 Our people	Part 8: My early career Part 4: Key word transformation	Part 1: An essay on methods schools and universities use to help students find jobs
2 Mastering languages	Part 6: Endangered languages Part 3: The naming of products	Part 2: A report on English-language TV programmes
<i>Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 1 and 2</i>		
3 All in the mind	Part 5: The next step in brain evolution Part 2: Nature vs nurture, Where do my talents come from?	Part 1: An essay on methods schools and universities should use to help students with stress
4 Just the job!	Part 8: Graduate jobs: advice from an expert Part 1: Friends benefit firms	Part 2: A report on a work experience programme
<i>Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 3 and 4</i>		
5 Dramatic events	Part 7: A walk in the woods Part 4: Key word transformation	Part 2: A proposal on honouring a local hero
6 Picture yourself	Part 5: Teenage self-portraits Part 2: Art for offices; Graffiti: art or vandalism?	Part 2: A review of a book
<i>Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 5 and 6</i>		
7 Leisure and entertainment	Part 7: Your guide to virtual worlds Part 1: The changing face of Bollywood	Part 2: An informal letter about free-time activities in your town
8 Media matters	Part 6: The ethics of reality TV Part 3: Broadcasters must find ways to regain public trust	Part 2: A proposal for a series of television documentaries
<i>Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 7 and 8</i>		
9 At top speed	Part 7: Bugatti Veyron Part 4: Key word transformation	Part 1: An essay on technological progress
10 A lifelong process	Part 8: Choosing a university Part 1: Why do we need lifelong learning?	Part 2: A report on ways of attracting students to a language school
<i>Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 9 and 10</i>		
11 Being somewhere else	Part 5: Disappearing into Africa Part 2: Island wanted; Paradise found	Part 2: A review of two hotels
12 The living world	Part 7: Alex the African Grey Part 3: Species loss accelerating	Part 2: A proposal on ways of conserving resources and reducing waste
<i>Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 11 and 12</i>		
13 Health and lifestyle	Part 8: Unusual national sports Part 3: Why I run	Part 2: A letter of complaint about a sports club
14 Moving abroad	Part 6: Cities and immigration Part 4: Key word transformation	Part 1: An essay on helping immigrants to integrate
<i>Vocabulary and grammar reviews Units 13 and 14</i>		

Listening	Speaking	Vocabulary	Grammar
Part 4: Unusual occupations	Part 1	Collocations with <i>give</i> and <i>make</i>	Verb forms to talk about the past
Part 1: Language learning, Spelling reform, Job interviews	Part 2	Collocations with <i>make</i> , <i>get</i> and <i>do</i>	Expressing purpose, reason and result
Part 2: 'Face-blindness' – a psychological condition	Part 3	Nouns which can be countable or uncountable Formal or informal?	<i>no, none, not</i> The passive
Part 2: The co-operative movement	Part 4	Dependent prepositions Adjective–noun collocations (1)	Expressing possibility, probability and certainty
Part 1: Dramatic past experiences	Part 2	Idiomatic language	Verbs followed by <i>to + infinitive</i> or the <i>-ing</i> form
Part 3: An interview with a portrait artist and his sitter	Part 3	Adjective–noun collocations (2)	Avoiding repetition
Part 4: Talking about music	Part 4	Complex prepositions Money words	Linking ideas: relative and participle clauses; apposition
Part 3: An interview about news reporting	Part 3	'Talking' verbs	Reported speech Transitive verbs
Part 1: Rail travel, Olympic records, Space travel	Part 2	<i>action, activity, event and programme</i>	Time clauses Prepositions in time expressions
Part 2: Studying Arabic in Abu Dhabi	Part 4	<i>chance, occasion, opportunity and possibility</i>	Expressing ability, possibility and obligation
Part 1: Travelling on a river, A sponsored walk, A conversation between two travellers	Part 1	Phrasal verbs <i>at, in and on</i> to express location	Conditionals
Part 2: Climate change and the Inuit	Part 3	Prepositions following verbs Word formation	Nouns and articles
Part 3: Allergies	Part 2	Prepositions following adjectives	Ways of contrasting ideas The language of comparison
Part 4: Migration	Part 4	<i>learn, find out and know; provide, offer and give</i>	Comment adverbials and intensifying adverbs Cleft sentences for emphasis

Introduction

Who this book is for

Complete Advanced 2nd Edition is a stimulating and thorough preparation course for students who wish to take the **Cambridge English: Advanced** exam from 2015). It teaches the reading, writing, listening and speaking skills necessary for the exam as well as the grammar and vocabulary which, from research into the **Cambridge Learner Corpus**, are known to be essential for exam success. For those of you who are not planning to take the exam in the near future, the book provides you with skills and language highly relevant to an advanced level of English (Common European Framework of Reference level C1).

What the book contains

In the **Student's Book** there are:

- 14 units for classroom study. Each unit contains:
 - practice in two parts of the Reading and Use of English paper and one part of each of the other three papers in the Cambridge English: Advanced exam. The units provide language input and skills practice to help you deal successfully with the tasks in each part.
 - essential information on what each part of the exam involves, and the best way to approach each task.
 - a wide range of enjoyable and stimulating speaking activities designed to increase your fluency and your ability to express yourself.
 - a step-by-step approach to doing Cambridge English Advanced writing tasks.
 - grammar activities and exercises for the grammar you need to know for the exam. When you are doing grammar exercises you will sometimes see this symbol: . These exercises are based on research from the Cambridge Learner Corpus and they deal with the areas which are known to cause problems for students in the exam.
 - vocabulary necessary for the exam. When you see this symbol  by a vocabulary exercise, the exercise focuses on words which Advanced candidates often confuse or use wrongly in the exam.
 - a unit review. These contain exercises which revise the grammar and vocabulary that you have studied in each unit.

- A **Language reference section** which clearly explains all the main areas of grammar which you will need to know for the exam.
- **Writing and Speaking reference sections.** These explain the possible tasks you may have to do in the Writing and Speaking papers, and they give you examples together with additional exercises and advice on how best to approach these two papers.
- A **CD-ROM** which provides you with many interactive exercises, including further listening practice exclusive to the CD-ROM. All these extra exercises are linked to the topics in the Student's Book.

Also available:

- Two audio CDs containing listening material for the 14 units. The listening material is indicated by different-coloured icons in the Student's Book as follows:
 02,  02
- A **Workbook** containing:
 - 14 units for homework and self-study. Each unit contains full exam practice in one or two parts of the Reading and Use of English paper.
 - full exam practice in one part of the Listening paper in each unit.
 - further practice in the grammar and vocabulary taught in the Student's Book.
 - exercises for the development of essential writing skills such as paragraph organisation, self-correction, spelling and punctuation based on the results from the Cambridge Learner Corpus.
 - an audio CD containing all the listening material for the Workbook.

Cambridge English: Advanced content and overview

Part / timing	Content	Test focus
Reading and Use of English 1 hour 30 minutes	<p>Part 1 A modified cloze test containing eight gaps, followed by eight multiple-choice questions</p> <p>Part 2 A modified cloze test containing eight gaps</p> <p>Part 3 A text containing eight gaps. Each gap corresponds to a word. The stems of the missing words are given beside the text and must be changed to form the missing word.</p> <p>Part 4 Six separate questions, each with a lead-in sentence and a gapped second sentence to be completed in three to six words, one of which is a given 'key' word</p> <p>Part 5 A text followed by six 4-option multiple-choice questions</p> <p>Part 6 Four short texts, followed by four cross-text multiple-matching questions</p> <p>Part 7 A text from which six paragraphs have been removed and placed in jumbled order, together with an additional paragraph, after the text</p> <p>Part 8 A text or several short texts, preceded by ten multiple-matching questions</p>	Candidates are expected to be able to: demonstrate the ability to apply their knowledge and control of the language system by completing a number of tasks at text and sentence level; demonstrate a variety of reading skills, including understanding of specific information, text organisation features, implication, tone and text structure.
Writing 1 hour 30 minutes	<p>Part 1 One compulsory question</p> <p>Part 2 Candidates choose one task from a choice of three questions.</p>	<p>Candidates are expected to write an essay in response to a proposition to discuss, and accompanying text.</p> <p>Candidates are expected to be able to write non-specialised text types such as a letter, a report, a review or a proposal.</p>
Listening Approximately 40 minutes	<p>Part 1 Three short extracts or exchanges between interacting speakers. There are two multiple-choice questions for each extract.</p> <p>Part 2 A monologue with a sentence-completion task which has eight items</p> <p>Part 3 A text involving interacting speakers, with six multiple-choice questions</p> <p>Part 4 Five short, themed monologues, with ten multiple-matching questions</p>	Candidates are expected to be able to show understanding of feeling, attitude, detail, opinion, purpose, agreement and gist.
Speaking 15 minutes (for pairs)	<p>Part 1 A short conversation between the interlocutor and each candidate (spoken questions)</p> <p>Part 2 An individual 'long turn' for each candidate followed by a response from the second candidate (visual and written stimuli, with spoken instructions)</p> <p>Part 3 A two-way conversation between the candidates (written stimuli, with spoken instructions)</p> <p>Part 4 A discussion on topics related to Part 3 (spoken questions)</p>	Candidates are expected to be able to respond to questions and interact in conversational English.

Starting off

1 Work in small groups. How do you think these things reflect our personality? (Give examples.)

- the job we choose
- the subject(s) we choose to study
- our free-time interests
- the clothes we wear
- the friends we choose

What sort of personalities do you imagine the people in the photographs have?

2 These adjectives can be used to describe personality. Complete the table by writing each adjective in the correct column.

competent conscientious genuine idealistic
 imaginative insecure insensitive modest naïve
 open-minded outgoing protective self-centred
 unconventional

Personality attributes		
Usually positive	Usually negative	Could be either

3 Choose adjectives from Exercise 2 and talk to your partner.

- 1 Explain how three of the adjectives form part of your personality.
- 2 Use three different adjectives to describe one of your close friends.



Listening | Part 4

1 Work in pairs. You will hear five short extracts in which people are talking about a family member they admire. Before you listen, look at the list of occupations (A–H) in Task One.

- 1 What do you think attracts people to these occupations?
- 2 Which do you think is easiest and which is the most difficult to learn?

TASK ONE

For questions 1–5, choose from the list (A–H) the person who each speaker is talking about.

A a deep-sea diver

B a fisherman/fisherwoman

Speaker 1 1

C a gardener

Speaker 2 2

D a magician

Speaker 3 3

E a musician

Speaker 4 4

F an actor

Speaker 5 5

G an archaeologist

H an explorer

Exam information

In Listening Part 4

- you hear five short monologues on related subjects and you do two listening tasks
- in each task you have to choose one answer for each speaker from a list of eight options
- you hear each speaker twice.

This part tests your ability to identify the gist of what the speakers say, their attitude and the main points, and to interpret the context they are speaking in.

TASK TWO

For questions 6–10, choose from the list (A–H) the quality the speaker admires about the person.

A a positive outlook on life

B ability to anticipate problems

Speaker 1 6

C an enquiring mind

Speaker 2 7

D attention to detail

Speaker 3 8

E calmness under pressure

Speaker 4 9

F readiness to explain things

Speaker 5 10

G kindness to children

H originality and inventiveness

2 Which of these phrases would you associate with each occupation? (You can associate some of the phrases with more than one occupation.)

- a few of his/her recordings
- complete dedication to his/her craft
- perform a new trick
- underwater adventures
- out in all weathers
- the first person to set foot in a place
- suffer from stage fright
- digging at some excavation or other

Now think of one more phrase you might associate with each occupation.

3 Look at the list of qualities (A–H) in Task Two and paraphrase each of them using your own words. Which quality would you associate with each occupation?

4  02 Now listen to the five speakers and do Tasks One and Two.

5 Work in pairs. Tell each other about someone interesting or unusual in your family or circle of friends.

- What do they do?
- What are they like?
- What is your relationship with them like?



Grammar

Verb forms to talk about the past

1 Look at these extracts 1–8 from Listening Part

4. Match the underlined verb forms with the explanations a–g. There are two verb forms you can match with one explanation.



- 1 We loved his stories of the strange creatures he'd seen.
 - 2 When she invited me to come out on one of her trips it was a real eye-opener to see what she was doing.
 - 3 When she invited me to come out on one of her trips ...
 - 4 We've listened to them so many times.
 - 5 He'd drop whatever he was doing.
 - 6 She never used to panic.
 - 7 Even if he'd been working all day, he'd be really conscientious about giving them a complete tour of the site.
 - 8 He's been spending a lot of time recently getting this new show ready.
- a something that happened at a specific time in the past
 b a repeated action or habit in the past which doesn't happen now
 c an activity which started before and (possibly) continued after an event in the past
 d something which happened before another activity or situation in the past
 e something which happened before another activity or situation, with an emphasis on the length of time
 f an activity that started in the past and is still happening, with an emphasis on the length of time
 g something that has happened more than once at times which are not stated between the past and the present

→ page 177 Language reference: Verb forms to talk about the past

2 Put the verbs in brackets into the simple or continuous form of the past, past perfect or present perfect. (In some cases more than one answer is possible.)

- 1 Chenhas been working..... (work) in Singapore since he (leave) university two years ago, but next year he expects to be transferred to Hong Kong.
- 2 Alexander takes university life very seriously. He (study) here for six months and he still (not go) to a single party!
- 3 Maria (come) round to dinner last night. She (start) telling me her life story while I (make) the salad and (continue) telling it during dinner.
- 4 Ivana (have) a splitting headache yesterday evening because she (work) in the sun all day and she (not wear) a hat.
- 5 I (grow) up in a house which (belong) to my great-great-grandfather. We (sell) it now because it was too big for our small family.

3 Circle the correct alternative in *italics* in each of the following sentences.

- a My teachers (1) were often getting / often used to get annoyed with me when I was at school because I (2) never used to bring / had never brought a pen with me and I (3) would always ask / have always asked someone if I could borrow theirs.
- b The village (4) used to be / would be very quiet and remote until they (5) built / had built the motorway two years ago. In those days everybody (6) would know / used to know everyone else, but since then, a lot of new people (7) came / have come to live in the area and the old social structures (8) gradually changed / have gradually been changing.
- c When I was a child, both my parents (9) used to go / were going out to work, so when they (10) would be / were out, my grandmother (11) was looking / would look after me.



4  Exam candidates often make mistakes with present perfect, past and past perfect tenses. In the sentences below, circle the correct alternative in *italics*.

- 1 In recent times people *had* / *have had* more contact with their friends through email and mobile phones than they did in the past.
- 2 The feedback we received from our clients meant we *have been* / *were* able to provide excellent advice to the people developing the product, which they then acted on.
- 3 The party was great and the best bit for me *has been* / *was* the jazz band.
- 4 We should have had a really good holiday for what we paid, but unfortunately we discovered that they *didn't organise* / *hadn't organised* anything very much so it was rather a disappointment.
- 5 While I was studying in England, I *haven't taken* / *didn't take* an examination because it was not offered to me or to any of my fellow students either.
- 6 Are you going to the dinner on Saturday? A lot of my other friends were *invited* / *have been invited* and I know they'd love to meet you.
- 7 I have *only lived* / *have only been living* in Geneva for the past few months, though Madeleine, who you met yesterday, *lived* / *has lived* here all her life.
- 8 Petra looks after my children very well. I *haven't noticed* / *didn't notice* any weaknesses in her character, so I'm sure you'll be happy to offer her a job.



Reading and Use of English | Part 8

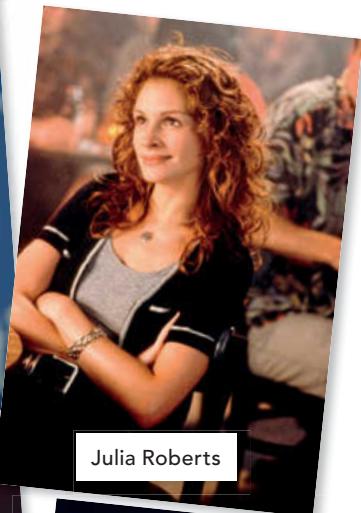
Exam information

In Reading and Use of English Part 8, you must match ten questions or statements with a text divided into four to six sections or four to six separate short texts.

This task tests your ability to read quickly and understand details, opinions and attitudes and to locate specific information.



Rafael Nadal



Julia Roberts



Nelson Mandela



Beyoncé

- 1 Work in small groups. You are going to read extracts from four autobiographies. Before you read, discuss these questions.

- 1 What things make an autobiography entertaining?
- 2 What things do you expect to find out by reading an autobiography?
- 3 Of the people photographed above, whose autobiography would you be interested in reading? Why?

2 Work in pairs. Read questions 1–10 carefully and for each question

- a underline the key idea
- b paraphrase it as if you were the person speaking.

Example

1 *My mother worries too much about the danger I might be in.*

Who says

one of their parents can be unnecessarily protective?

 1

they have changed during the course of their working life?

 2

their parents never imagined the consequences of something they said?

 3

they discovered the job they wanted in an unlikely place?

 4

one parent saw the project as an opportunity for both the parents?

 5

they gain satisfaction from the way their work affects others?

 6

they thought the future promised them surprising experiences?

 7

their upbringing was unusual?

 8

they were enthusiastic but nervous about the job they were going for?

 9

they achieved promotion by staying in the job longer than other people?

 10

3 For questions 1–10 in Exercise 2, choose from the extracts A–D. The extracts can be used more than once.

4 Work in small groups. Discuss these questions.

- 1 Which of the people in the texts would you be most interested to meet?
- 2 How important do you think parents' opinions are when choosing a career?
- 3 What other factors should young people take into account when choosing a career?

My early career



A Linda Greenlaw

I am a woman. I am a fisherman. Neither abused nor neglected, I am the product of a blissful and unique childhood, a rare claim these days. Like all young children, I believed wholeheartedly in the words of my mother and father. It was only natural that I took seriously the assertions of my parents that I could do whatever I liked with my life, become anything I wanted. Although the advice they gave was well intentioned, my parents never dreamed that it might come back to haunt them when I decided that what I liked and wanted to become was a fisherman.

Fishing my way through college, I made my first deep-sea trip at the age of nineteen aboard the *Walter Leeman*. By the time I graduated from college I had outlasted the original crew members I had started with, most of whom moved on to boats of their own, and became captain of the boat by attrition. Promising my parents that I would postpone law school for just one year, I became a full-time fisherman.

Adapted from *The Hungry Ocean*

B Eric Idle

When you make an audience laugh, they really do love you, and that's one of the nicest things about being a comedian. Usually you've touched them at a time when they needed some kind of reassurance or they wanted something or they were feeling depressed and then you made them feel better. So there is a sort of healing thing to it.

But you don't sit and think, 'I'm going to have a career now.' Things just happen. I stumbled into performing at Cambridge University. I think there's something very seductive about the glamour of dressing up and playing someone else, and that comes from a sadness. I think I only became any good eventually through *Monty Python** by being disguised and by being other people and it was only latterly in my life that I have been able to be funny as myself or be confident. I don't have to put on a disguise or wear a wig now but that's what I used to do.

**Monty Python's Flying Circus* was a comedy series broadcast between 1969 and 1974.

Adapted from *The Pythons Autobiography*

**C Emma Richards**

It had been only a few short months before that I'd made a flying visit to Scotland to tell my parents I was going to sail around the world. Dad had picked me up from Glasgow airport. He'd asked if I was up for a wedding or a party, the kind of occasions for which I'd normally make a flying visit.

'No,' I said. 'I've got something to tell you. I'm going to sail around the world alone.'

My mum often doesn't sleep when I'm at sea. She's the kind of mum who still instinctively goes to grab your hand when you cross the road, even though all four of us children left home at least ten years ago. She said it was a great idea, that she and Dad would travel round the world to visit me at the stopovers. She said it'd be great to see all those places, they'd be there to support me. She just kept talking.

Adapted from *Around Alone*

**D Kate Adie**

Then, in a very odd act of serendipity, I read the local paper – the *Sunderland Echo* was no one under eighty's preferred reading, but I wasn't very busy; and there in the classifieds was an advertisement, headed *BBC Radio Durham*. I can still remember the jump it gave me, as the small private thought woke up at the back of my mind and leaped around shouting silently: this is it, this is it.

I didn't dare tell anyone, not my parents, nor my friends, and I realised with some trepidation that I wanted it very much indeed. Somehow the life with the BBC might satisfy a lot of unarticulated longing for ... I wasn't sure what; just something to do with bigger events, the wider stage, the unexpected.

Adapted from *The Kindness of Strangers*



Vocabulary

Collocations with give and make

- 1 Look at this sentence from Reading and Use of English Part 8. Write the correct verb (A–D) in the gap.

Although the advice they was well intentioned, my parents never dreamed that it might come back to haunt them.

A made B gave C said D expressed

- 2  Exam candidates often use the wrong verb when they should use *give* or *make*. In most of the sentences below, the underlined verb is wrong. Replace the underlined verb with *give* or *make*, or write *correct* if you think there is no mistake.

- 1 When you print the article, we also expect you to give an apology.
- 2 Her report on the trip did not show accurate information so we were quite confused.
- 3 I have some suggestions to give before the forthcoming trip.
- 4 I hope your company will give me at least a partial refund.
- 5 I'm so grateful that you have made me the chance to attend the course.
- 6 In my boss's absence, I give telephone calls to customers, clean desks, and write emails.
- 7 Installing modern technology will give a good impression of the college.
- 8 Our evening lectures were made by 'experts' who knew nothing about the subject.
- 9 There is another recommendation I would like to give concerning the club.

- 3 Words which are often used together (e.g. *make an apology*) are called collocations. Which verb often forms a collocation with these nouns? Write *give* or *make* in each gap.

- 1 a speech, lecture, talk, performance
- 2 (someone) information, details, advice, instructions
- 3 a(n) recommendation, comment, apology, suggestion
- 4 someone a(n) chance, opportunity
- 5 someone a refund, their money back
- 6 a phone call
- 7 an impression on someone
- 8 someone an impression

Reading and Use of English | Part 4

Exam information

In Reading and Use of English Part 4 you

- complete six sentences with between three and six words so that they mean the same as the sentences printed before them
- use a word given in CAPITALS without changing it in any way.

This part tests your ability to manage grammar, vocabulary and collocations.

- 1 Work in pairs. Study the exam instruction below. Then, for questions 1–4, read some answers that different students gave for each question. Decide which answer (A–C) is correct and say why the other answers are wrong.

For questions 1–4, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

- 1 His actions were based on what his uncle advised him to do.

ADVICE

The basis for his actions him.

A was some advice that his uncle gave

B was the advice his uncle gave

C was what his uncle advised

- 2 Alba made every effort to arrive at the meeting on time.

BEST

Alba to the meeting on time.

A did her best to get

B made the best to arrive

C tried very hard to make it

- 3 Unless the product is in perfect condition, we cannot return your money.

REFUND

We will be unable the product is not in perfect condition.

A to pay you a refund unless

B to refund the money you paid if

C to give you a refund if

- 4 Otto's teachers were favourably impressed by the presentation he gave to the class.

IMPRESSION

Otto's presentation to the class
his teachers.

- A gave a favourable impression to
- B made a favourable impression on
- C made an impression which was found very favourable by

- 2 For questions 1–6, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

- 1 I would often go cycling with my father when I was a child.

USED

My father cycling with him when I was a child .

- 2 Having apologised, Klaus shook my hand.

APOLOGY

When Klaus , he shook my hand.

- 3 Anna has been trying as hard as possible to take care of her children.

CAN

Anna has been doing the after her children.

- 4 For me, the second chapter was more convincing than the rest of the book.

PERSUASIVE

I found the second chapter other part of the book.

- 5 I never planned to annoy you.

AIM

It you angry.

- 6 I've never had problems with my car before.

TIME

This is the me problems.

Speaking | Part 1

Exam information

In Speaking Part 1 the examiner asks you questions about yourself. These may include questions about your life, your work or studies, your plans for the future, your family and your interests, etc.

This part is intended to break the ice and tests your ability to interact with the examiner and use general social language.

- 1 Work in pairs. Read the questions below from Speaking Part 1. Which questions are

- a mainly about the present? b mainly about the past?

How would you answer each question?

- 1 What do you most enjoy doing with your friends?
- 2 Have you ever had the opportunity to really help a friend? How?
- 3 Would you prefer to spend your holidays with your family or your friends?
- 4 What is the best way for people visiting your country to make friends?
- 5 Who do you think has influenced you most? Why?
- 6 What is your happiest childhood memory?
- 7 Who is the best teacher you've ever had?
- 8 Tell me about a friend of yours and how you got to know him or her.

- 2  03 Listen to two students, Marta and Lukas.

Which question does each of them answer?

Marta: Lukas:

- 3  04 Now listen to them again, with the examiner's questions, and say if the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 They both give very brief answers.
- 2 They give some details or reasons to support their answers.
- 3 They use a range of tenses appropriately.
- 4 They speak in a relaxed, natural way.

- 4 Think about how you could answer each of the questions in Exercise 1. Then work in pairs and take turns to ask and answer the questions.

 page 194 Speaking reference: Speaking Part 1



Writing | Part 1

An essay

Exam information

In Writing Part 1 you write an essay in which you discuss a question or topic. You are given

- three areas to consider and you must discuss two of them
- three opinions which you can use if you wish.

This part tests your ability to develop an argument or discussion, express your opinions clearly and support your ideas with reasons and examples.

1 Underline the key ideas in the writing task below.

Your class has taken part in a seminar on whether the education system does enough to help young people to find jobs which fit their abilities and interests. You have made the notes below.

Methods schools and universities use to help students find suitable jobs

- providing courses and qualifications
- work experience programmes
- careers advice

Some opinions expressed in the seminar:

'We study lots of things which we'll never use in any future job.'

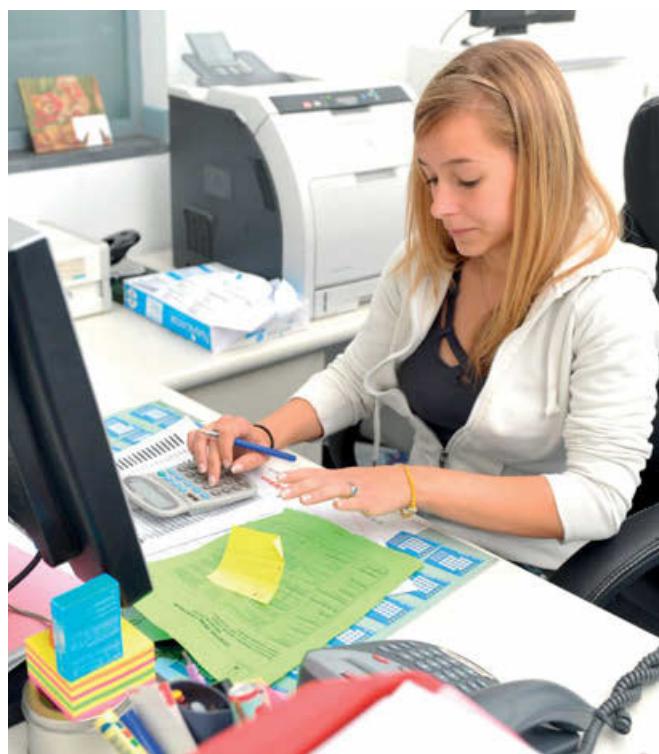
'Without work experience you'd have no idea what to study at university.'

'Some of my teachers can't give me advice because they've never done any job other than teaching.'

Write an essay discussing **two** of the methods in your notes. You should explain **which method is more effective**, giving **reasons** in support of your answer.

You may, if you wish, make use of the opinions expressed in the seminar, but you should use your own words as far as possible.

Write your answer in 220–260 words in an appropriate style.



2 Work in small groups.

- Discuss each of the methods and whether or not you agree with the opinions expressed in the seminar.
- During your discussion, express your own opinions on the methods and give reasons for your opinions.
- Take notes on the main ideas which arise during the discussion.

3 Read the writing task in Exercise 1 again. Do you think the following sentences are true (T) or false (F)? Why?

- 1 You must discuss all three methods.
- 2 You must decide which is the best method.
- 3 You must say whether you agree or disagree with the opinions expressed.
- 4 If you use any of the opinions, you should express them in a more formal style.
- 5 When you express your opinion, you should say why you hold that opinion.
- 6 You can expand the topic to talk about other issues related to work that interest you.
- 7 You can write your answer using a bulleted list of points instead of formal paragraphs.
- 8 The task contains a word limit, but if you write 300 words you will get higher marks.

- 4 Read Cristina's essay. Then complete the plan she wrote beforehand by matching the notes (a–e) with the paragraphs.

For many young people it is hard to find the sort of job they aspire to.¹ This is in part due to a mismatch between what education provides and what employers believe ²they require.

Schools and universities should offer students courses which provide ³them with qualifications which will attract potential employers. However, employers often complain that courses are too theoretical and do not teach students the practical skills ⁴they will need in the workplace.

While I understand ⁵this viewpoint, I do not entirely share ⁶it. I believe that the purpose of education is primarily to develop critical thinking skills, including the ability to analyse and solve problems. ⁷These abilities will be useful throughout people's working lives. To achieve ⁸this, I do not think it matters whether someone studies history or theoretical physics as long as the right teaching methods are used. Students will then pick up the specific job skills they require very quickly once they are in full-time employment.

It is often suggested that young people need to gain work experience in order to make an informed choice of university course and career. Although I believe ⁹this helps to focus students' minds on what working life will be like, generally speaking it is not possible for students to get a wide enough range of experience to be able to choose ¹⁰their career wisely.

I would therefore argue that the best way to help young people find suitable jobs is to give them an excellent general education while ensuring that employers realise how valuable ¹¹it is.

Plan

Para 1: Introduction:

Para 2:

Para 3:

Para 4:

Para 5: Conclusion:

- a education should teach students to think – useful for every job
- b provide a good all-round education + persuade employers of its importance
- c employers say courses not practical enough
- d difficulty finding jobs – education vs. employers' needs
- e work experience often too limited for students to make informed choices



- 5 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

- 1 Why is it important to underline the key ideas in the writing task?
- 2 Why should you write a plan before you write your essay?
- 3 Did Cristina follow her plan exactly?
- 4 Has she dealt completely with the instructions in the writing task?
- 5 What words and phrases does she use in her essay to introduce her opinions?
- 6 To what extent do you agree with Cristina's point of view?
- 7 Why is it important to make your opinions clear in an essay?
- 8 When you write, it is important that each paragraph should cover a different aspect of the subject and that sentences should be linked together using clear references. What do the underlined reference words in Cristina's essay refer to?
- 9 Write your own plan for the writing task in Exercise 1. When you have finished, compare your plan with a partner's.
- 10 Read Cristina's essay in Exercise 4 again and highlight any words or phrases you would like to use in your essay. Also, copy them to your plan and to your notebook.

Then write your essay following your plan.

→ page 186 Writing reference: Essays

Starting off

- 1 Work in pairs. Read the following remarks and write a word or phrase from the box in each gap.

a bit rusty accurately aims an excellent command
bilingual fashionable loanwords fluency
highly articulate mother tongue pick up switch

- 2  05 Check your answers by listening to the speakers.

- 3 Work in pairs. Which of the speakers' opinions do you agree with? Which do you disagree with? Why?



People tend to be (1)
– they speak the regional and the national language and they (2) between languages with ease.



Lots of (3) are coming into the language, particularly from English, so my (4) is not at all the same as it was, say, fifty years ago.



My English has got (5) because I don't use it very often.



Living in the country, you just (6) the language naturally and that's just about the best way to learn it.



I aim to achieve (7) of English, which means becoming (8) and being able to use the language (9)



I wouldn't consider accuracy to be as important as (10) when learning a foreign language.



We should be teaching young people how they can use language effectively to achieve their (11)

Listening | Part 1

Exam information

In Listening Part 1

- you hear three short conversations on different themes
- you have to answer two multiple-choice questions with three options about each conversation.

This part tests your ability to identify both the gist and specific details in the conversation and to identify the speakers' attitudes and opinions and how they agree or disagree.

1 You will hear three different extracts. Before you listen, work in pairs. Read questions 1–6 and discuss the following.

- a Why would you learn the local language of a place you are visiting?
- b In question 2, which of the options A–C do you think is essential for adults who want to learn a new language?
- c What do you think is meant by 'spelling reform'?
- d In question 4, how are options A, B and C related to spelling reform?
- e How would you answer question 5?
- f In question 6, which of the options A–C would be most helpful for non-native speakers looking for jobs?

Extract One



You hear two travellers talking about language learning.

- 1 Why did the man learn the local language in Mongolia?
 - A to deal with awkward situations
 - B to learn other skills from local people
 - C to have direct contact with the people around him
- 2 They both agree that people wanting to learn a new language must
 - A have a talent for language learning.
 - B be prepared to work hard.
 - C be ready to take risks.

Extract Two

through thorough though
plough rough cough

You hear two teachers, Rajiv and Susan, discussing the need for English spelling reform.

- Rajiv argues that spelling should be reformed because it would
 - A make learning more pleasant for young children.
 - B reduce the number of mistakes his students make.
 - C make written publications shorter.
- Rajiv and Susan agree that simplified spelling would
 - A reduce learning difficulties.
 - B improve foreign learners' pronunciation.
 - C produce substantial economic savings.



Extract Three

You hear an conversation between two researchers who have studied job interviews conducted in English.

- What does the woman consider the main problem for non-native speakers?
 - A Their English is not good enough.
 - B Their body language may be misleading.
 - C Their answers are unsuitable.
- They agree that the recruitment process might be improved by
 - A training interviewers to ask clearer questions.
 - B replacing interviews with practical tests.
 - C changing interviewers' expectations.

2 Now listen, and for questions 1–6, choose the answer (A, B or C) which fits best according to what you hear. There are two questions for each extract.

3 Discuss these questions.

- What are the main difficulties for people wanting to learn your language?
- What, for you, are the main difficulties of doing an interview in an exam or for a job in English?

Vocabulary

Collocations with *make*, *get* and *do*

1 Form collocations with the words in **bold** by writing *make*, *get* or *do* in the correct form in the gaps in these extracts from Listening Part 1.

- 1 But you a conscious **decision** to learn it when you were in Mongolia, didn't you?
- 2 What's essential, though, is **an effort**.
- 3 I remembered those dictation **exercises**.
- 4 As a language teacher it would my life a lot **easier**.
- 5 **the questions right** would be useful training for many interviewers.

2 Exam candidates often use the wrong verb with the words and phrases in the box. Write each word or phrase in the correct column of the table below. Two words/phrases can be written in more than one column.

a comment	a course	a decision	a mistake	a job
an effort	a point	a proposal	a qualification	
a suggestion	activities	an apology	business	
complaints	changes	exercise	further information	
friends	harm	one's money back	one's best	
some shopping	sport	household chores	the cooking	
the right choice	use of something		an improvement	

make	get	do
a comment	a job	a job

3  Each of the sentences below contains a mistake made by candidates with a collocation of *make*, *do* or *get*. Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Before working in our shop you first make a one-week course in developing photos.
- 2 A lot of my time was wasted, so I think I should receive some of my money back.
- 3 She did everything possible to turn the trip more pleasant.
- 4 We were made to work very hard at school and that certainly didn't make me any harm.
- 5 We need to reduce the time taken to achieve all the tasks mentioned above.

- 6 Other members of the club have given suggestions about a quiz or karaoke night to form part of our social programme.
- 7 We'd be very grateful if you'd make your best to solve this problem.
- 8 You can spend lots of time at this holiday camp practising exercise and having a great time!



Reading and Use of English | Part 3

Exam information

In Reading and Use of English Part 3

- you read a text of 150–170 words with eight gaps and one example (0)
- in each gap you write the correct form of the word given in CAPITALS at the end of the line.

This part tests your knowledge of vocabulary and your ability to form words by adding prefixes and suffixes and making other changes.

1 Work in small groups. How many words can you form from each of these base words?

govern	care	critic	child	break	occasion	force
deep	fragile	friend	repair			

Example

govern: *government*, *governmental*, *governable*, *ungovernable*, *ungovernably*, *governing*, *governor*

2 Look at your answers to Exercise 1. Which of these suffixes did you use?

-ion, -ment, -less, -ise, -ally, -hood, -able, -ly, -ful, -en, -ity, -ship

Which of the suffixes above are used to form

1 verbs? 2 nouns? 3 adjectives? 4 adverbs?

3 Can you think of other suffixes which are used in each of the categories 1–4 in Exercise 2? For each suffix, write one word as an example, e.g. nouns: -ness: *kindness*.

- 4 Which of the words in the box are spelled correctly? Correct the words which are spelled incorrectly.

occurrence happenning developement
statement referrence opening realy
factually beautifuly truthfull disappointed
disatisfied iregularrity reliable undeniable
useable refuseing basicaly arguement

→ page 183 Language reference: Spelling rules for adding affixes

- 5  Spelling mistakes are among the most frequent errors made by candidates in the exam. Find and correct the spelling mistakes made by candidates in the sentences below.

- 1 As you can see in the advertisement, the holiday is quite cheap.
 - 2 People are begining to get tired of being promised things it's impossible to give them.
 - 3 I'm sure you're going to be as succesful as your predecessor was.
 - 4 He was sent to prison for expressing his disagreement with the goverment.
 - 5 By implementing these proposals we will be doing more to protect the enviroment.
 - 6 The family I stayed with was realy kind and helpful.
- 6 Work in small groups. You are going to read a text about names for new products. Before you read, suggest an attractive and an unattractive name for each of the products in the pictures.



- 7 Read the text below quite quickly to find out

- 1 how companies name products
- 2 what problems they have when naming products.

The naming of products

International companies are finding it (0) important to develop brand names that can be used in a wide range of countries. A product with a single, (1) recognised name can enable companies to make major (2) in production and promotion costs – especially now that world advertising is a (3) in such contexts as major sporting events.

It is said that more time is actually spent deciding the name of a product than on the research and development leading to the (4) itself. Thousands of possible names may need to be investigated to find one that is internationally (5)

An indication of the scope of the problem can be seen from the experience of Dunlop, who spent over two years (6) researching a name for a new tyre. They then launched an international (7) amongst their employees, receiving over 10,000 entries. Around 30 names were selected from an enormous number of (8) but not one was found to be legally available in more than a small number of countries.

Adapted from *The Cambridge Encyclopedia of Language*

INCREASE

UNIVERSE
SAVE

REAL

INNOVATE

ACCEPT

SUCCEED

COMPETE

SUBMIT

- 8 For questions 1–8, read the text again. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

- 9 Work in pairs.

- How do people in your country choose names for their children?
- Are fashions in children's names changing?
- In Britain, people also name their pets and sometimes their houses. What things do people in your country name, and what sorts of name do they choose?



Reading and Use of English | Part 6

Exam information

In Reading and Use of English Part 6, you

- read four short extracts from academic texts on the same subject
- answer four questions.

This part tests your ability to identify similarities, differences and connections between opinions and attitudes expressed in the extracts.

- 1** Work in small groups. You will read four extracts from texts about minority languages. Before you read, discuss these questions.
 - What minority languages, or languages spoken by just a small number of people exist in your country, or do you know about?
 - Are they in danger of dying out? Why (not)?
 - Do you think it is important to protect endangered languages? Why (not)?
- 2** Before you do the exam task in Exercise 4, read the introductory sentence in *italics* and each extract carefully and answer these questions. Then discuss your answers in pairs.

Extract A

- 1 What effect has globalisation had on minority languages?
- 2 What suggestion does the writer have for keeping minority languages alive?

Extract B

- 3 What reasons does the extract give for not promoting regional languages?
- 4 What is the 'benign neglect' position?

Extract C

- 5 What problem do linguistics researchers face and how has this affected their research?
- 6 Why should languages be kept alive?

Extract D

- 7 When is it clear that a language is going to die?
- 8 Why is it important to prevent the loss of minority languages?
- 3 To follow the arguments of academic texts, it is important to understand the referencing within the texts. Work in pairs. What do the underlined words and phrases (1–16) in the texts refer to?

Endangered languages

The threat to minority languages in different parts of the world is an area of discussion amongst linguists.

A

In our connected globalised world, the languages which dominate communications and business, Mandarin, Hindi, English, Spanish and Russian amongst ¹others, are placing small languages spoken in remote places under increasing pressure. Fewer and fewer people speak languages such as Liki, Taushiro and Dumi as their children shift away from the language of their ancestors towards languages which promise education, success and the chance of a better life. While to many parents ²this may appear a reasonable choice, giving their offspring the opportunity to achieve the sort of prosperity they see on television, the children themselves often lose touch with their roots. However, in many places the more reasonable option of bilingualism, where children learn to speak both a local and a national language, is being promoted. ³This gives hope that many endangered languages will survive, allowing people to combine their links to local tradition with access to wider world culture.

B

While individuals are free to choose if they wish to speak a minority language, national governments should be under no obligation to provide education in an economically unproductive language, especially in times of budget constraints. It is generally accepted that national languages unite and help to create wealth while minority regional languages divide. Furthermore, governments have a duty to ensure that young people can fulfil their full potential, meaning that state education must provide ⁴them with the ability to speak and work in their national language and so equip them to participate responsibly in national affairs. People whose language competence does not extend beyond the use of a regional tongue have limited prospects. ⁵This means that while many people may feel a sentimental attachment to their local language, their government's position should be one of benign neglect, allowing people to speak the language, but not acting to prevent ⁶its eventual disappearance.



The Breton language of Brittany, France, is classified as 'severely endangered'.



Of 250 known Australian Aboriginal languages, all but 35 have died out or are in critical danger.



There are just 50 speakers of Udege left in Siberia and most of them are over 50 years old.

C

Many PhD students studying minority languages lack the resources to develop their language skills, with the result that they have to rely on interpreters and translators to communicate with speakers of the language ⁷they are studying. ⁸This, I believe, has a detrimental effect on the quality of their research. At the same time, ⁹they have to struggle against the frequently expressed opinion that minority languages serve no useful purpose and should be allowed to die a natural death. ¹⁰Such a view fails to take into account the fact that a unique body of knowledge and culture, built up over thousands of years, is contained in a language and that language extinction and species extinction are different facets of the same process. ¹¹They are part of an impending global catastrophe which is beginning to look unavoidable.

D

A healthy language is ¹²one which children learn to speak, so that however many adults use the language, if young people do not acquire ¹³it, it will not survive. While the disappearance of a language may be a tragedy for the people who speak it, ¹⁴it may appear to be an event of little importance to ¹⁵others. However, I would argue that language diversity is as necessary as biological diversity and that we are simply not aware of all the things we lose when a language disappears. When an animal or plant becomes extinct, we seldom realise how its existence might have benefited us. ¹⁶The same is true for many small languages. Moreover, the resources to prevent their loss are unlikely to ever be available simply because the economic benefits of keeping them alive cannot be demonstrated.

4 Now do the exam task. For questions 1–4, choose from the extracts A–D. The extracts may be chosen more than once.

Which extract

shares Extract B's view of the economic significance of major languages?

1

expresses a different view from the others regarding the need to preserve minority languages?

2

takes a different view from the others regarding the future of small languages?

3

takes a similar view to Extract C on the effect of language disappearance?

4

5 Work in small groups.

- Which extract(s) do you think it would be interesting to read more of? Why?
- What can be done to keep endangered languages alive?

Speaking | Part 2

Exam information

In Speaking Part 2 you are each given three photos and are asked to choose two of the photos to speak about. You must speak on your own for one minute. You have to

- compare the two photos you have chosen
- answer two questions connected with the photos, which are printed on the task sheet.

When the other candidate is speaking, you need to listen and then answer a brief question about the photos.

This part tests your ability to speak at length, organise your ideas, compare, describe, express opinions and speculate about things connected with the photos.

- 1** Look at the photos and read the examiner's instructions. What are the three parts to the task?



In this part of the test I'm going to give each of you three pictures. I'd like you to talk about two of them on your own for about a minute, and also to answer a question briefly about your partner's pictures. Here are your pictures. They show people explaining things. I'd like you to compare two of the pictures and say what the speakers might be explaining and what problems the speakers might have.



- What might the speakers be explaining?
- What problems might the speakers have?

**1**

- 2** In the Speaking test you will get higher marks if you use a range of appropriate vocabulary. Decide which of these phrases you could use with each photo. (Some can be used with more than one photo.)

argue a case boost morale defend a client
decide on / discuss / explain tactics encourage the team
give a demonstration influence the outcome
persuade the judge/jury reach a verdict
take people through the steps

- 3** **07 Listen to Ivan doing the Speaking task.**

- 1 Which phrases from Exercise 2 does he use?
- 2 When he compares the photos, does he just point out differences or does he also mention similarities?
- 3 Does he answer both of the examiner's questions?

- 4** Complete each of these sentences about the photos. You can use your own ideas or Ivan's ideas.

- 1 The coach looks as if ...
- 2 They give the impression that ... judging by ...
- 3 The lawyer seems ...
- 4 She appears ...
- 5 The coach wants ... while the barrister wants ...
- 6 In both photos I imagine ...

**2****3**

5 Work in pairs.

- Take turns to talk for a minute to do the Speaking task in Exercise 1. You can choose which two photos you wish to speak about.
- When your partner has finished speaking, briefly answer this question about the photos your partner chose: *Which of the two speakers do you think has the harder task?*

6 Work in pairs. Look at the photos and read the examiner's instructions. Then answer questions 1 and 2 below.

Here are your pictures. They show adults and children talking to each other. I'd like you to compare two of the pictures and say why they might be talking to each other and how each of them might benefit from this.



- Do you think you should choose the two easiest photos to talk about, or the two most difficult? Why?
- When you answer the second question, should you just talk about how the children might benefit?

- Why might the people be talking to each other?
- How might each of them benefit from this?

**7 Work in pairs.** Which of these phrasal verbs and other phrases could you use with each of the photos?

bond with each other cheer someone up
give encouragement look through an album
put a brave face on things remember good times
share family history spend quality time together
teach someone basic skills

8 Work in pairs.

- Student A:** Follow the examiner's instructions in Exercise 6.
- Student B:** When Student A has finished, follow the examiner's instructions in Exercise 6 using the photo Student A didn't use and one of the others.
- When your partner has finished speaking, briefly answer this question: *Which situation do you think the adult would find most rewarding?*

→ page 195 Speaking reference: Speaking Part 2



Grammar

Expressing purpose, reason and result

1 Match the beginnings of these sentences (1–8) with their endings (a–h).

- 1 I thought I should pick the language up while I was there, **so**
 - 2 It might be better to set up a simulation of the job in question **so as to**
 - 3 The candidate often lacks the sort of cultural background that would stand them in good stead in these situations, **with the result that**
 - 4 They used to give us dictations in class **to**
 - 5 I always write new vocabulary down in my notebook **in case**
 - 6 Pavla is studying languages at university **with the intention of**
 - 7 We found the lecturer difficult to hear **due to**
 - 8 You'll need to use a microphone, **otherwise**
- a eventually working as an interpreter.
 b I forgot it.
 c I immersed myself in the life of the local community.
 d the people at the back won't hear you.
 e the poor acoustics in the hall.
 f their responses take the interviewer by surprise.
 g see whether the candidate has the skills and attitude they're looking for.
 h make sure we knew things like putting a double 'p' in 'approve'.

2 Answer the following questions.

- 1 Which of the **bold** words/phrases in Exercise 1 express
 - a a purpose?
 - b a reason?
 - c a result?
- 2 Which of the words/phrases are followed by
 - a an infinitive?
 - b a noun / verb + *-ing*?
 - c a clause?

→ page 170 Language reference: Expressing purpose, reason and result

3  Exam candidates often make mistakes with words and phrases to express reason, purpose and result. Circle the correct alternative in *italics* in each of the following sentences.

- 1 My Italian is excellent *because / due to* I lived in Italy for four years.
- 2 *By / For* technical reasons, the flight was delayed for several hours.
- 3 Over the last decade, our lives have changed a lot *because of / by* computers.
- 4 Could you please send us a brochure *so as / so that* we can see exactly what you are offering?
- 5 I hope the organisation's efficiency will improve *for not to / in order not to* waste people's time and money.

Writing | Part 2

A report

Exam information

- In Writing Part 2 you do one writing task from a choice of three.
- The possible tasks are an email/letter, a proposal, a report or a review.
- You must write between 220 and 260 words.

1 Read the following writing task and answer the questions below.

An international media company is investigating the influence that television programmes imported from English-speaking countries have on different countries around the world. You have been asked to write a report on English-language TV programmes in your country. In your report you should address the following:

- how popular these programmes are and why
- the effect they are having on local culture
- any changes you would recommend.

Write your report.

- 1 Who is expected to read this report?
- 2 Should you use a formal or informal style?
- 3 What are the four main points you should deal with?
- 4 In what order would you deal with them?

- 2 Read the sample report and write one word/phrase from the box in each gap.

accounted for the aim as a consequence due to means meant resulted so as the effect the result

English-language TV programmes in my country

Introduction

1 of this report is to comment on the popularity of imported English-language television programmes in my country, to explain how they are affecting local culture and to recommend changes that could be made in the way these programmes are shown.

Popularity of imported programmes

Approximately fifty percent of the programmes shown on TV in this country have been made in an English-speaking country and were originally in English. The popularity of these programmes can be ²..... by their larger budgets, which ³..... they are generally more spectacular than locally made programmes and may include internationally famous stars in their casts. On most channels, viewers can choose which language they wish to watch the programme in, with ⁴..... that people with a good command of English tend to watch programmes in their original versions.

Effects on local culture

The popularity of English-language programmes has ⁵..... that it is hard for local programme-makers to compete, given their limited budgets. ⁶....., local culture has been heavily influenced by American values of consumerism. Moreover, exposure to mistranslations of English-language films has ⁷..... in words in our languages being used with new or wrong meanings. However, a positive effect has been that people have become more open and ready to change ⁸..... the fact that they see other ways of living and thinking.

Recommended changes

I would recommend that the government should subsidise national television companies ⁹..... to encourage them to make more quality programmes. This would have ¹⁰..... of reducing our reliance on imported programmes while at the same time promoting local values and culture.

- 3 Read the report again and answer these questions.

- 1 How is the layout of a report different from other types of writing?
- 2 Has the writer included all the points in the writing task? Where are they dealt with in the report?
- 3 Is the style appropriate for the target readers?

- 4 Read the following writing task and then

- 1 underline the points you must deal with
- 2 identify who will read the report
- 3 decide what style you will need to use
- 4 decide what title to give your report and what sections and section headings you will need.

A leading educational publisher is interested in language learning in different countries. You have been asked to write a report on foreign language learning in your country. In your report you should deal with

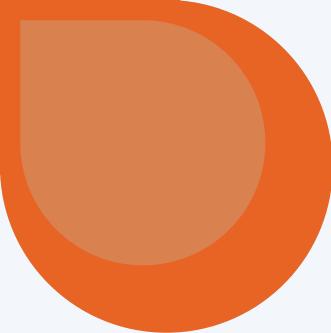
- the languages people learn, who learns them and where they learn them
- recommendations for improving language learning in your country.

Write your report.

- 5 Write the report, using the sample report in Exercise 2 as a model.

→ page 191 Writing reference: Reports





Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 1

Vocabulary

- 1 Complete each of the sentences below by writing the correct form of *give*, *do* or *make* in each gap.

- 1 The minister a rousing speech at the end of the conference.
- 2 Carrie sat through the entire meeting without a single suggestion to solve the problem.
- 3 We our students plenty of opportunities to speak to ensure they become fluent.
- 4 Fergus a pretty bad impression in Saturday's match, so the manager is him just one last chance or he'll be dropped from the team.
- 5 If you'd just me the details, I'll take a note of them and pass them to the person responsible.
- 6 I never expected to see you at the concert because the last time we met, you me the impression that you didn't like classical music.
- 7 If you're not completely satisfied with the result, we'll you a full refund.
- 8 Patsy is just a phone call at the moment, so she'll be with us in a sec.

Grammar

- 2 For questions 1–6, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1 I received some very useful advice from Gustavo.
FOUND
I me very useful.

2 The opportunity to study at university should be open to everyone.
BE
Everyone to study at university.

3 The first time Carla went skiing was last Monday.
NEVER
Carla last Monday.

- 4 We were all favourably impressed with Paola's lecture.

FAVOURABLE

The lecture
on all of us.

- 5 Students don't spend their free time in the same way as fifty years ago.

CHANGED

The way students spend their free time fifty years.

- 6 Without a receipt, they will not return your money.

REFUND

They will not
you have a receipt.

- 3 Circle the best alternative in *italics* in the sentences below.

1 We got to the park quite soon after lunch and fortunately the rain stopped / had stopped by then.

2 We'd stood / We'd been standing in the rain for at least twenty minutes before the bus arrived, by which time we were feeling / had been feeling pretty cold and wet, as you can imagine.

3 I've driven / I've been driving along this road a thousand times – I could almost do it with my eyes shut!

4 You'd expect Fran to be looking tired because she's studied / she's been studying for her final exams for the last three weeks.

5 Maisie ate / had been eating sweets all evening so it was not surprising she didn't want any supper!

6 I think people used to work / would work much harder in the past than they do nowadays.

7 So much noise had come / had been coming from our flat all afternoon that eventually the neighbours complained and we had to explain that we repaired / were repairing the heater and that we'd be finishing soon.

8 We always used to go to the Mediterranean for our holidays when I was a child. I think we went / used to go to Ibiza at least five times.

Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 2

Vocabulary

- 1 For questions 1–8, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

The evolution of linguistics

Linguistics has undergone two great revolutions in the past 70 years. In the late 1950s Noam Chomsky theorised that all languages were built on an underlying (1) grammar embedded in human genes. A second shift in linguistics – an (2) of interest in small and endangered languages – has focused on the (3) of linguistic experience. Field linguists are more interested in the (4) that make each language unique and the ways that culture can be (5) in a language's form. At present some 85 percent of languages have yet to be documented. Understanding them can only (6) our comprehension of what is similar in all languages.

Different languages highlight the range of human experience, revealing that aspects of life that we have a (7) to think of as true of all languages, such as our experience of time, number or colour, are in fact quite (8) In the Siberian language Tuva, for example, the past is always spoken of as ahead of one and the future is behind one's back.

THEORY
UNIVERSE
EXPLODE
VARY
CHARACTER
INFLUENCE
RICH
TEND
CHANGE

- 2 Complete each of these sentences with a word/phrase relating to language (the number of letters in each word is given at the end of the sentence).

- 1 You've got to be able to write for this job. We can't afford to have people making mistakes. (10 letters)
- 2 Amina expresses her ideas very clearly – but then she's a highly young woman. (10)
- 3 Having lived in Chile for seven years, Philippe has a perfect of Spanish. (7)
- 4 It takes a great deal of practice to achieve in a language. (7)

- 5 I prefer to the language while I'm visiting the country rather than going to classes. (4, 2)
- 6 Maria's English is virtually perfect although her is Greek. (6, 6)
- 7 With a Japanese father and a French mother, Motoko is completely (9)

- 3 Complete these sentences by writing the correct form of *make*, *get* or *do* in the gaps.

- 1 Lee has been working hard because he needs to better professional qualifications.
- 2 The new principal is planning on quite a few changes to the way this college is run.
- 3 How long have you been your current job?
- 4 It was a difficult decision, but I think you the right choice.
- 5 I don't understand you. What point are you trying to ?
- 6 It wouldn't you any harm to take a bit more exercise!

Grammar

- 4 Complete each of these sentences with a word or phrase from the box.

due to in case otherwise so as so that with the intention of

- 1 I caught an earlier train finishing the report before my boss arrived in the office.
- 2 Natalie delivered the parcel herself to make sure it arrived safely.
- 3 If I were you, I'd take your bank card your money runs out.
- 4 You really should write new vocabulary in your notebook, you'll forget it.
- 5 Services on North-East Trains were cancelled today a train drivers' strike.
- 6 Amin covered his face as he left the building no one would recognise him.

Starting off

1 Discuss these questions.

- Do you believe it is possible to measure a person's intelligence accurately? Why (not)?
- Even if you believe it is possible, do you think we should measure intelligence? Why (not)?

2 Now consider what type of a thinker you are. Look at the nine types below and give yourself a score of 0–5 for each statement (0 = completely untrue for you, 5 = absolutely true for you).

Compare yourself with other students. How similar or different are you?



Type of thinker	Characteristics	Score 0–5
Logical/Mathematical	You like to understand patterns and relationships between objects or actions. You are good at thinking critically and solving problems creatively.	
Linguistic	You think in words and like to use language to express complex ideas. You are sensitive to the sounds and rhythms of words as well as their meanings.	
Interpersonal	You like to think about and try to understand people. You make an effort to cultivate good relationships with family, friends and colleagues.	
Intrapersonal	You spend a lot of time thinking about and trying to understand yourself. You understand how your behaviour affects your relationship with others.	
Naturalistic	You like to understand the natural world and the living beings that inhabit it. You have an aptitude for communicating with animals.	
Existential	You like to think about philosophical questions such as 'What is the meaning of life?'. You try to see beyond the 'here and now' and understand deeper meanings.	
Musical	You tend to think in sounds, and may also think in rhythms and melodies. You are sensitive to the sounds and rhythms of words as well as their meanings.	
Spatial	You tend to think in pictures and can develop good mental models of the physical world. You think well in three dimensions and have a flair for working with objects.	
Kinaesthetic	You think in movements and like to use your body in skilful and expressive ways. You have an aptitude for working with your hands.	

- 3 What type of thinkers do you think these famous people are/were? Focus on their occupations and use some of the expressions below.

I'd imagine someone like X would be / have been ...
 X is/was probably a ... thinker, don't you reckon?
 X could be / have been a ... thinker or a ... thinker.
 X must have been a ... thinker – he/she was so ...
 Would you agree?
 That's just my opinion.
 It's difficult/impossible to tell.



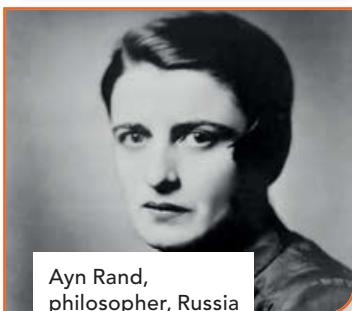
Louise Bourgeois,
sculptor, France



Charles Darwin, scientist, UK



Chinua Achebe, novelist, Nigeria



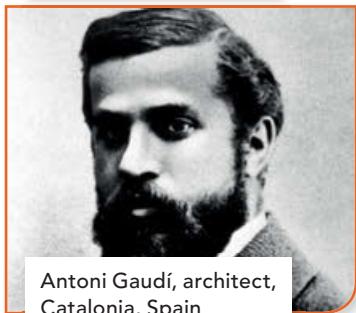
Ayn Rand,
philosopher, Russia



Judit Polgár, chess
grandmaster, Hungary



Maria Callas,
opera singer, Greece



Antoni Gaudí, architect,
Catalonia, Spain



Lionel Messi,
footballer, Argentina

Listening | Part 2

Exam information

Listening Part 2 is a monologue lasting about three minutes. You hear the recording twice. You have to

- listen and complete eight sentences with information you hear, using 1–3 words.
- write the actual words that the speaker uses.

This part tests your ability to identify specific information and the opinions expressed.

- 1 Work in pairs. How good are you at recognising people you have only met once or twice before?
- 2 Look at this painting by the surrealist artist René Magritte. Do you find it amusing, disturbing, interesting, mystifying or just pointless? Compare your reaction with your partner's.



- 4 What is your opinion of attempts like this to categorise people?

3 **08** You are going to listen to part of a radio programme about a psychological condition known as *prosopagnosia*. What is the more common name for this condition? Listen to the first part of the programme to find the answer.

4 **09** Listen to the whole programme and say if the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 The speaker compares face-blindness to the inability to hear.
- 2 Scientists do not understand how normal people remember faces.
- 3 The face-blind subjects could not distinguish between the faces or the objects.
- 5 Read the sentences below. How many of the gaps can you already fill? (The number of missing words is in brackets, but this information is not given in the exam.)

According to the speaker, the painting by René Magritte (1) the idea of face-blindness. (2 words)

People with face-blindness have no memory of a person's face once the person (2) their sight. (1 word)

Some people with this condition are so (3) that they cannot recognise members of their own family. (2 words)

It could help scientists to understand (4) if they knew more about face-blindness. (2 words)

Scientists do not yet know whether the ability to recognise faces has a (5) of its own or whether it is part of an individual's general ability. (3 words)

In an experiment, a number of (6) were shown images of people, places and objects. (3 words)

The experiment proved that the human brain processes (7) differently from faces. (2 words)

Other experiments have shown that people with this condition can improve their (8) (3 words)

6 **09** Listen again. For questions 1–8, complete the sentences with a word or short phrase.

Vocabulary

Nouns which can be countable or uncountable

1 Look at the nouns in *italics* in these extracts from Listening Part 2. Are they being used as countable or uncountable nouns?

- 1 As soon as someone leaves their *sight*, the *memory* of that person's face is blank.
- 2 This *ability* helps to hold *society* together and has enabled human beings to develop a complex *culture*.
- 2 Write sentences in which the uncountable nouns in Exercise 1 are used as countable nouns and vice versa.
- 3 In pairs, discuss the countable and uncountable meanings of these nouns.

art business chicken disease exercise speech

page 166 Language reference: Countable and uncountable nouns

Grammar

no, none, not

1 Complete these extracts with *no, none* or *not*.

- 1 The subjects were shown pictures of faces with hair on their heads.
- 2 of the subjects could recognise the faces well.
- 3 This is to say that prosopagnosia has advantages.

page 173 Language reference: *no, none, not*

2 Five of these sentences contain mistakes that exam candidates have made in expressing negation. Correct the mistakes. (One sentence is correct.)

- 1 It was difficult to get around last weekend as there was not public transport.
- 2 Most students were no satisfied with the standard of food in the school canteen.
- 3 We've had hardly no communication from management for over a week.
- 4 As far as I can see, there's not much difference between Spanish grammar and Italian grammar.
- 5 I'm afraid I don't know nothing about psychology.
- 6 We couldn't get treated for two hours because none doctors were available.

Grammar

The passive

1 How are passive verbs formed? Compare these two sentences.

- Active:** They showed the subjects images of cars, tools, guns, houses and landscapes.
- Passive:** The subjects were shown images of cars, tools, guns, houses and landscapes.

2 Underline the passive verbs in these extracts from Listening Part 2.

- The subjects were asked to indicate whether each image they saw was new or repeated.
- Faces are handled differently by the brain from other objects.
- It has been shown in experiments that people with face-blindness can be taught to improve their face recognition skills.

3 Discuss these questions.

- In which extract above is the doer of the action (the 'agent') mentioned?
- Who or what could be the agents in the other extracts?
- Why is the agent not mentioned in these extracts? (There are several possible reasons.)
- Would you be more likely to find passive verbs
 - in an email to a friend or an essay?
 - in a scientific report or a magazine story?
 - in a personal anecdote or a job application?
- Change these active sentences into the passive form. Only include an agent if you think it is important.
 - Over a million people have watched this YouTube clip.
 - They made the film over twenty years ago.
 - At the time no one had seen anything like it.
 - Apparently, they are making a new version of the film at the moment.
 - They are going to release it next year.

5 In formal writing we often begin sentences with *It* + passive, especially if we want to focus attention on ideas and arguments, e.g. *It has been shown* in Exercise 2, extract c. Work in pairs to complete these beginnings with your own ideas. Choose any subject you find interesting.

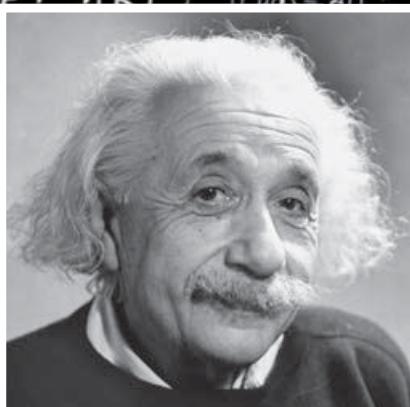
- It is commonly believed that ...
- It has been reported in the last few days that ...
- It has been proved beyond doubt that ...

6 Rewrite this text using passive verbs to replace the underlined active verbs. Only include an agent if you think it is important. Use one verb with *it*, as in Exercise 5.

Example: 1 A new study on Albert Einstein has been completed ...

An expert (1) has completed a new study on Albert Einstein and she (2) will publish it next month in a journal on neurology. The study suggests that a uniquely shaped brain (3) may have influenced Einstein's extraordinary genius. When anthropologist Dean Falk and her team made a comparison with 85 'normal' human brains, (4) they found that Einstein's brain possessed some remarkable features.

The researchers were using 14 photos of the genius's brain which people (5) had only recently rediscovered. With permission from his family, scientists (6) removed and photographed Einstein's brain after his death in 1955. The National Museum of Health and Medicine (7) hold the photographs but people (8) had never fully investigated them before.



Reading and Use of English | Part 5

Exam information

In Reading and Use of English Part 5 you have to

- read a text of 650–750 words
- answer six questions about it by choosing A, B, C or D.

This part tests your ability to understand the main ideas and purpose of the text and the writer's opinions or attitude, and to understand text organisation features such as exemplification.

1 You are going to read an article about how digital technology is affecting people's lives. Before you read: how does it affect your life? Make a list of the ways you use digital technology. Then compare lists with a partner and discuss how important this technology is in your lives.

Examples: smart phone apps, downloading music, films or podcasts, creating a website ...

- 2 Read this article quickly and decide whether you are more like Emily Feld or her mother, Christine.

The next step in brain evolution

Emily Feld is a native of a new planet. While the 20-year-old university student may appear to live in London, she actually spends much of her time in another galaxy – in the digital universe of websites, e-mails, smart phones and social networking sites. The behaviour of Emily and her generation, say experts, is being shaped by digital technology as never before. It may even be the next step in evolution, transforming our brains and the way we think.

'First thing every morning I check my mobile for messages, have a coffee and then go on Twitter,' says Emily. 'I look at Facebook, my favourite social networking site, update my status, add any photos and interesting articles or music clips I've found. And I've got about 300 friends so there are always messages to read and reply to. Then I'll browse the Internet, and if a news article on Google catches my eye, I'll read it.'

'The other day, I went to meet a friend in town and realised I'd left my mobile at home. I felt so lost without it that I panicked and went back to collect it. I need to have it on me at all times. Technology is an essential part of my everyday life. I don't know where I'd be without it.'

That's what makes Emily a 'digital native', someone who has never known a world without instant communication. Her mother Christine, on the other hand, is a 'digital immigrant', still coming to terms with a culture ruled by the ring of a mobile and the zip of text messages. Though 55-year-old Christine happily shops online and e-mails friends, at heart she's still in the old world. 'Children today are permanently multitasking – downloading tracks, uploading photos, texting. It's non-stop,' she says. 'They find sitting down and reading, even watching TV, too slow and boring.'

Are digital natives like Emily charting a new course for human intelligence? Many parents fear that children who spend hours glued to computer screens will end up as zombies with the attention span of an insect. Cyberspace is full of junk, they worry, and computer games are packed with mindless violence. But it need not be like that, say some experts, and increasingly it isn't, as users exert more control and discrimination.

The sheer mass of information in the modern world is forcing digital natives to make choices that those who grew up with only books and television did not have to make. 'Younger people sift more and filter more,' says Helen Petrie, a professor of human-computer interaction. 'We have more information to deal with, and we pay less



attention to particular bits of information, so it may appear that attention spans are shorter.'

The question, then, is how do digital natives learn to discriminate, and what determines the things that interest them? Parents who hope that skills, values and limits are instilled at school may be fighting a losing battle. According to some educationalists, the reason why many children today do not pay attention in school is that they find teaching methods dull compared with their digital experiences. Instead, parameters are increasingly set by 'wiki-thinking', peer groups exchanging ideas through digital networks. Just as the online encyclopedia Wikipedia has been built from the collective knowledge of thousands of contributors, so digital natives draw on the experience and advice of online communities to shape their interests.

Where is this all leading? Only one thing seems clear: changes propelled by the digital world are just beginning. Indeed, apart from age, one of the differences between the natives and the immigrants is the intuitive acceptance of rapid digital change. Parents may use the Internet as much as their children, but what they are not used to doing is upgrading. The younger generation are much more used to replacing old technology. Faster broadband speeds, smaller hardware – innovation is happening at such a pace that what was science fiction a few years ago will soon be fact.

Anecdotally, it seems, a lot of natives in this digital culture are adept at multitasking, doing several things simultaneously. But nobody knows exactly what the effect will be. In a sense, we are running a grand-scale experiment. We're bringing up a whole generation in this totally new environment – without any firm evidence of how they will be affected.

3 Read the article again and for questions 1–6, choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the article.

- 1 Why are the first three paragraphs of the article devoted to Emily Feld?
 A She is particularly interested in technology.
 B She is a typical university student.
 C She is a representative of people of her age.
 D She is studying the effects of digital technology on students.

- 2 How would you sum up Emily's relationship with digital technology?
 A She is completely dependent on it.
 B She uses it mainly to support her academic studies.
 C It provides her with a meaningful social life.
 D It is useful but she could live without it.

- 3 How is Emily's mother different from her daughter?
 A She is very uncomfortable using digital technology.
 B She rarely uses digital technology.
 C She is still adjusting to digital technology.
 D She prefers reading or watching TV.

- 4 Some parents worry that continued exposure to digital technology will result in children
 A becoming uncontrollable and violent.
 B becoming too reliant on technology.
 C being unable to discriminate between right and wrong.
 D losing the ability to pay attention for more than a few seconds.

- 5 Educationalists believe that digital natives may be developing their ideas and interests from
 A older family members.
 B online encyclopedias like Wikipedia.
 C internet contacts of their own age.
 D schools and teachers.

- 6 What, according to the writer, is the only certainty with regard to the future of digital technology?
 A Children will always be happier with digital technology than their parents.
 B The world is at the start of the digital age.
 C Everybody will need to become accustomed to multitasking.
 D People will accept that digital technology is changing their world.

4 Discuss these questions.

- 1 How do you feel about the idea expressed in the following extract?

The behaviour of Emily and her generation is being shaped by digital technology. It may even be the next step in evolution, transforming our brains and the way we think.

- 2 The writer says: *Many parents fear that children who spend hours glued to computer screens will end up as zombies.* Are parents right to be worried?
- 3 The article concludes: *We're bringing up a whole generation in this totally new environment – without any firm evidence of how they will be affected.* How do you think this generation will be affected?



Vocabulary

Formal or informal?

1 Which of the following examples would you be more likely to find in formal writing and which in informal writing? Pay particular attention to the words in **bold** type.

- 1 They've rung to say **they're** coming tomorrow.
- 2 What on earth are you doing?
- 3 We **will** be leaving as soon as the **fog has** lifted.
- 4 We have never **contemplated residing** in any other **neighbourhood**.
- 5 I can't **put up with** this situation for much longer.
- 6 'Community' can be defined as any individual or organisation **with whom** we interact.
- 7 A teenager is **believed** to have started the fire.
- 8 **Grub's up.** Come and get it.
- 9 That's the girl I go to school **with**.

2 Rewrite each of the sentences in Exercise 1, changing from formal to informal and vice versa.

3 Look again at paragraphs 3–7 in the article on page 34 and find examples of formal and informal language. Why is there a mixture of styles here?

Reading and Use of English | Part 2

- 1 You are going to read an article which considers the extent to which we inherit our personalities as well as our physical characteristics from our parents.
- 1 What is your opinion on this issue? Are we born with a ready-made personality, or does our personality develop from our experiences? Think about yourself and people you know.
- 2 Read *Nature vs nurture* quickly, without paying attention to the missing words. What conclusion does the article come to?
- 2 Work in pairs to complete the text. Use the list below to help you think of the type of word you need for each gap.

preposition article verb adjective pronoun
auxiliary verb auxiliary verb pronoun

Nature vs nurture



You know where your looks come from – for example, you may have your mother’s nose or your father’s eyes. But what about things that we cannot see, like your talent (0) *for* music? Is this something that you learned, or are your abilities and personality traits determined (1) your genes? What makes (2) individual behave in a certain way and display certain talents?

Scientists are not clear what the answer to this question (3) Those who support the ‘nature’ theory believe that humans are genetically programmed to behave in certain ways, regardless of culture and upbringing. On the (4) hand we have the ‘nurture’ theory, (5) argues that a person’s behaviour and personality (6) developed by teaching and experience. There is evidence to support both of these theories and the debate (7) still to be resolved. (8) seems most probable that both theories have their validity and that nature and nurture each play a part in making us who we are.

Exam information

In Reading and Use of English Part 2 there is a text with eight gaps. You have to write one word in each gap. Most missing words are ‘grammar words’, e.g.

- articles (*the, a*)
- auxiliary or modal verbs (*are, is, can*)
- pronouns (*he, us*)
- conjunctions (*but, although*)
- possessive adjectives (*my, our*)
- prepositions (*at, to*)

A few may be ‘meaning’ words, e.g. nouns, verbs, adjectives. You must spell your answers correctly.

- 3 Now do the task below with no assistance. For questions 1–8, read the text and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word for each gap. There is an example at the beginning.



Where do my talents come from?

Some people claim that the ability (0) *to* sing, dance or draw is acquired, rather than inherited. But you know what they also say: some people have it and some people don’t. How do people actually acquire (1) individual talents? You could argue that you become good (2) something by determination and constant practice, but there are small children with (3) or no training who sing or dance beautifully or are clearly genius-level artists. Most children of musicians and actors seem to be talented (4) their parents. Then again, I personally can sing, dance and draw but my parents have none of those abilities. I was singing and drawing (5) I was little but had never been in a choir or to an art class in my life. It just came naturally to (6) I suppose you could say that being born (7) stronger lungs or longer legs and arms might give you (8) advantage.

- 4 Discuss these questions.

- 1 What physical characteristics have you inherited from your parents?
- 2 Where do your likes, dislikes, tastes and interests come from – your genes or your experience?

Speaking | Part 3

Exam information

In Speaking Part 3, you and the other candidate discuss a situation or issue together.

- The examiner gives you instructions and a set of written prompts.
- You have about 15 seconds to think about the task and then two minutes to discuss your ideas.
- The examiner then asks you another question, which requires you to come to a decision. You have one minute to do this.

This part tests your ability to interact with your partner by exchanging ideas, expressing and justifying opinions, agreeing and disagreeing, speculating, evaluating and reaching a decision through discussion. It is important that you keep talking.

1 Do the following tasks related to the causes of stress in today's society.

- 1 Make a list of things that make people feel stressed, for example, overwork, difficult relationships, etc.
- 2 Compare lists with a partner. How many causes of stress are in both your lists?
- 3 Explain to your partner how you cope with stressful situations you find yourself in.

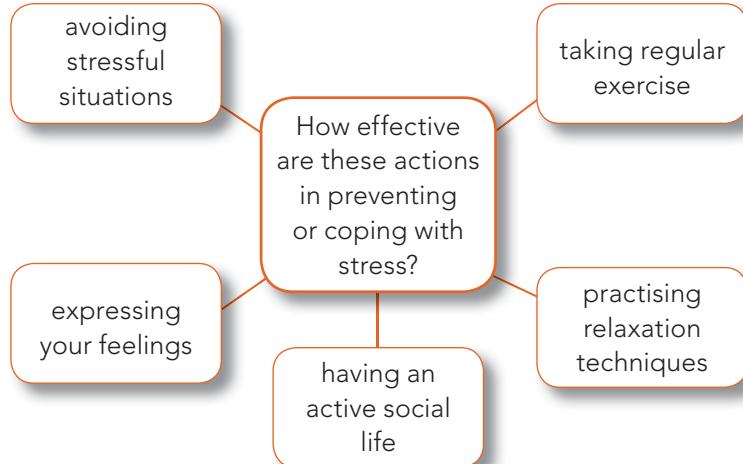
2  **10** Listen to two people discussing stress and how they cope with it. Do either of the speakers mention any of the causes of stress that you have discussed?

3  **10** To make sure you don't speak too much in the discussion, ask your partner questions. Listen to the conversation again and complete these questions which the speakers ask to involve their partner.

- 1 Do you know what I?
- 2 That's one of the worst effects of stress,?
- 3 So what if you're feeling stressed?
- 4 What you?
- 5 Have you that?

- 4** Read the examiner's instructions. Then look at the written prompts below and prepare what you are going to say.

Here are some of the actions that people take to prevent or cope with stress. Talk to each other about how effective these actions might be in helping people to prevent or cope with stress.



- 5** Now discuss the prompts with your partner. Your discussion should last for about two minutes.

- 6** After your discussion, the examiner will give you a final instruction, like this:

Now you have about a minute to decide which action would be the most effective in helping people prevent or deal with stress.

Try to reach agreement with your partner.



Writing | Part 1

An essay

1 Discuss these questions in pairs or groups and note down your ideas while you are talking.

- 1 What are some causes of unhappiness or tension
 - for employees in the workplace?
 - for students at school or university?
- 2 What can employers or educational organisations do to increase happiness and reduce tension?
- 3 Read the essay task below and discuss these questions.
 - 1 In the context of employment, what do you consider to be good communications?
 - 2 What do you understand by the term work-life balance?
 - 3 What does the phrase feel valued mean to you?
 - 4 Do you strongly agree or disagree with any of the three opinions?

Your class has listened to a debate about methods employers should use to ensure that their workforce is happy and motivated. You have made the notes below.

How can employers ensure that their employees are happy and motivated?

- establish good communications
- encourage a work-life balance
- make employees feel valued as people

Some opinions expressed in the debate:

'Most employees are satisfied if they are well paid'

'The happier employees are, the more efficient and productive they will be.'

'You need to be able to discuss problems with your colleagues and your manager.'

Write an essay discussing **two** of the methods in your notes. You should **explain which method you think is more important** for employers to adopt, **providing reasons** to support your answer.

You may, if you wish, make use of the opinions expressed in the debate, but you should use your own words as far as possible.



3 Read the following essay on the task in Exercise 2. Then discuss these questions with a partner.

- 1 Has the writer
 - a discussed two methods?
 - b provided reasons for his/her opinion?
 - c used his/her own words?
- 2 Is the style of the essay appropriate?
- 3 Is the essay roughly the correct length?

Methods employers should adopt to ensure that their employees are happy and motivated

There is no doubt, in my opinion, that the happier and more motivated employees are, the more productive they are likely to be. This almost certainly results in the organisation they are employed by being more successful than it would otherwise be. For this reason, it is in employers' interests to ensure that their workers are happy and motivated. I'll now consider methods which employers could adopt to achieve this.

Perhaps the most important thing employers can do is make employees feel valued, not just as paid workers but as individuals. In practice, this should involve establishing good relationships between staff at all levels. Employees should have access to those above them in their organisation, people with whom they can discuss their work or personal matters which affect their work. Employees will feel valued if they know that they are being listened to.

Employers should also, in my view, encourage employees to have a healthy work-life balance. This means accepting that employees need time to pursue leisure activities and to socialise with their friends and families. Employers should even discourage employees from starting work too early in the morning or from taking on a lot of overtime and finishing late in the evening.

I believe that both the approaches I've suggested are actually interdependent; one of the ways employers can make their employees feel valued is to recognise that they have lives outside work. This will help to ensure that employees remain happy and motivated.

4 Look at the structure of the sample essay and discuss the following.

1 Summarise the purpose of each of the four paragraphs, like this:

Para 1: Introduction showing the writer's general approach to the topic

Para 2: One of the methods ...

2 How do the paragraphs relate to the essay task?

3 In which paragraph(s) does the writer express his/her opinions?

5 Read the essay task below.

1 Discuss the topic of the essay with a partner, using your own experience of schools or universities.

2 Do you agree with any of the opinions expressed?

You have taken part in a seminar discussing how schools and universities can help to make the exam period less stressful for students. You have made the notes below.

How can schools and universities help to ensure that students do not suffer from stress during the exam period?

- support from tutors
- a structured revision timetable prior to exams
- time for relaxation and leisure activities

Some opinions expressed in the seminar

'Students need to remember that there is more to life than exam success.'

'Revising for 24 hours a day before exams doesn't necessarily lead to success.'

'You won't do well on the day if you feel stressed.'

Write an essay discussing **two** of the methods in your notes. You should **explain which method you think is more important** for schools and universities to adopt, **providing reasons** to support your answer.

You may, if you wish, make use of the opinions expressed in the seminar, but you should use your own words as far as possible.

6 Consider how you can adapt the paragraph structure in Exercise 4 for the new essay task. Discuss this question.

Which of the following paragraph openings would be appropriate for this essay and in which paragraph (1–4) would each of these fit best?

1 One way in which schools can help is ...

2 Both of these methods ...

3 I feel incredibly stressed out when ...

4 Firstly, ...

5 For many students, exams are ...

6 Another method ...

7 Exams don't bother me much ...

8 In my opinion, the more important ...

9 Exam stress is a problem which ...

10 In addition, ...

7 Plan and write your essay on the task in Exercise 5. Start by making a paragraph plan which is clearly related to the essay task, as in Exercise 4.

Exam advice

Make sure that you

- read the question and notes carefully, underlining key words so that you know exactly what you have to do
- answer the question, dealing with two of the three topic areas listed
- use your own words if you decide to make use of any of the opinions expressed.

Start by making a paragraph plan to ensure that you cover all the points in the question.



4

Just the job!

Starting off

1 Look at the photos of people in jobs. What aspects of working do you associate with each job?

Example

1 This person is probably a high-flying executive in a large multinational company. She is likely to be involved in high-level decision-making, so she has a lot of power, high status and a large salary. She probably works long hours and has to deal with a lot of stress.

2 Which of these aspects of work appeal to you?

- working under pressure
- being creative
- working with the public
- working in finance
- working as part of a team
- working independently
- being your own boss
- having managerial responsibilities
- problem solving and troubleshooting
- quick promotion



Reading and Use of English | Part 1

Exam information

In Reading and Use of English Part 1, you read a text of 150–170 words with eight gaps and one example (0). You must choose the best option, A, B, C or D, for each gap.

This part tests your knowledge of the meanings of words, how they are used, collocations and the grammar connected with particular words.

1 Work in pairs. How far do you agree with each of the following statements?

- 1 My best friends are the ones I've met through my work/studies.
 - 2 I'd never consider going on holiday with someone I work/study with.
 - 3 What I find most interesting about my work/studies are the people I come in contact with.
 - 4 My friendships with colleagues help me to cope with my work/studies.
- 2** Quickly read the text. Which of the ideas in the statements above are reflected in the text?

Friends benefit firms

We have all heard tales about difficult people at work, usually managers, but the office is also where many people make friends, and friends (0) us to feel that bit more enthusiastic about the job we do. Research has found that more than half of British workers (1) their best friends in the office and more than a third say that they go on holiday with (2) workers.

The changing nature of work with more flexibility and more multi-tasking means that people (3) stability from their workmates. Friendships bring (4) in a changing world. A collaborative working environment (5) the way for making job-sharing and expansion of roles more of an (6) for employers and employees.

So fun workplaces where friendships flourish (7) workers who can handle changing job roles. This is not (8) surprising since numerous experiments carried out by workplace psychologists over the years have clearly demonstrated that work is a social affair.

Adapted from *The Times*

3 For questions 1–8, read the text again and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning (0). Use the clues to help you (in the exam there are no clues).

0 A enliven B influence C inspire D stimulate

1 A meet B encounter C find D know

Clue: this word means 'to see and speak to someone for the first time'.

2 A peer B colleague C companion D fellow

Clue: this word can be used as an adjective which collocates with 'worker' to describe someone who has the same job as you.

3 A desire B search C seek D wish

Clue: a word which means 'look for' and is not followed by a preposition

4 A basis B support C assistance D backing

Clue: a word which means 'help and encouragement'

5 A leads B finds C shows D paves

Clue: If something ... the way for/to something else, it makes the other thing possible.

6 A option B opportunity C opening D occasion

Clue: a word which means 'one thing which can be chosen from a set of possibilities'

7 A appeal B attract C lure D engage

Clue: these workplaces are pleasant and enjoyable, so people want to work there.

8 A extremely B thoroughly C entirely D utterly

Clue: this word forms part of a phrase which means 'not completely' and collocates with 'surprising'.

4 Work in pairs.

- What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of going on holiday with your colleagues?
- Do you think people find it easier or more difficult to make friends than they did in the past? Why?



Reading and Use of English | Part 8

1 Work in small groups.

In your country

- how easy is it for graduates to find jobs?
- what are the most usual methods of job hunting?
- what is the most effective way to find a job?
- how well do universities prepare students for the world of work?

2 You are going to read an article for graduates joining the job market. Before you read the article, read the title and introductory sentence in *italics*. What contradiction is the writer pointing out?

3 Underline the key idea in questions 1–10 below.

In which section does the writer

advise graduates to continue job-hunting while already working?

1

explain why some graduates accept a certain type of employment opportunity?

2

make a suggestion for graduates whose job hunting has so far been unsuccessful?

3

mention a variety of ways of obtaining employment?

4

suggest how graduates can create a good impression?

5

mention the need to maintain relationships?

6

recommend a way of thinking positively?

7

explain why some jobs may have fewer applicants?

8

warn graduates that some information may be difficult to hide?

9

describe an employment opportunity he disapproves of?

10

4 For questions 1–10, choose from the sections (A–D). The sections may be chosen more than once.

Exam advice

Before reading the sections,

- read the questions carefully, underlining the main ideas
- read the first section and find which questions it answers
- deal with each section in turn in this way.

Graduate jobs: advice from an expert

You've got a beautiful new degree, a dazzling career ahead of you and the world is your oyster. Terrifying, isn't it?

A

You should be very conscious of your digital footprint and remember that nothing can ever really be deleted and this includes social media profiles as well as forums and websites. Although it helps if you activate the privacy settings on your social media accounts and control who you allow to see your account, the most foolproof solution is to behave well and treat these networks with a healthy respect. You might not be able to fully prevent some things from showing on search engines, but you can make the most of what shows up first by using public professional networking sites to build a much more professional footprint which you can then add to by getting mentioned for extracurricular activity. In the job market this can be gold dust, so find opportunities to comment on blogs and articles, provide quotes for journalists and guest blog on things you're interested in or know a lot about.

B

By all means apply for vacancies on big job boards, but the major drawback is that if you've seen a vacancy, so has everybody else. If you've had no joy applying for positions this way, it may well be more productive to start hunting for less visible vacancies instead, because when you do find one, the competition will be a fraction of what you're up against for widely advertised positions. It's important to realise that different job-hunting methods work for different industries. If you're answering ads for junior jobs in media, applying blind is unlikely to reap rewards, but building a network of contacts will. On the other hand, for public-sector jobs all the talking in the world won't get you through the door: you'll have to apply through official channels like everybody else. If you've only targeted big companies, broaden your search to smaller outfits. They'll have tighter recruitment budgets and won't be advertising vacancies or hiring stands at recruitment fairs, so find out how they do recruit and see which small companies are thriving.

C

Strictly speaking, in some countries unpaid internships are illegal which means it's illegal for your employer not to pay you and for you to work for free, as you're both undermining the national minimum wage law. The problem is that in some countries this law isn't being enforced, so employers are free to exploit graduates who can afford to work for less than the minimum wage and exclude those who can't. Because many graduates are desperate for experience, the result is that most internships now pay nothing, even when interns are effectively doing a proper job and working long hours with a wide range of activities for months at a time. Until things change, you'll have to decide for yourself whether an unpaid internship is a good investment. This will depend on the calibre of the company and what you'll be doing while you're there. As there is no guarantee of a paid job at the end of it, you must keep applying for roles elsewhere before your internship ends.

D

It's normal to feel low just after graduation. For some graduates, it's because the energy they needed is still flowing but now has no outlet, so they feel anxious. For others, it's because they've realised how much effort they've expended, and they feel exhausted. Whatever the reason, pay attention to the words you use. Graduation represents an ending, it's true, but it also represents new beginnings and it's more energising to think in those terms. Instead of saying, "I need to start my career," you should break the task ahead into smaller steps and frame each step in a way that allows you to measure progress. So, for example, instead of expecting to "sort myself out", ask yourself to "prepare my CV", "find two referees", and "register with an employment agency". Put these goals in chronological order and focus on each one in turn until you have achieved it. In the long run you might easily conclude that the most treasured aspect of your university experience wasn't your academic education or any careers advice, but rather the friends you made, so you should make it a priority to stay in touch with those who mattered most to you during your university career.

Adapted from *The Guardian*



5 Work in small groups. Discuss these questions.

- Why should people be careful about using social media? How careful do you think people need to be?
- Which do you think is a better way to start your working life: in a big organisation or a small company?
- What are the advantages and disadvantages of doing an internship?
- How easy do you think it is to keep up with friends when you leave university?

Vocabulary

Dependent prepositions

Complete these extracts from Reading and Use of English Part 8 by writing a preposition in each gap.

- 1 You should be very conscious your digital footprint.
- 2 You might not be able to fully prevent some things showing on search engines, but you can make the most what shows up first by using public professional networking sites.
- 3 If you've had no joy applying positions this way, it may be more productive to start hunting less visible vacancies.
- 4 Because many graduates are desperate experience, the result is that most internships now pay nothing.
- 5 Pay attention the words you use.
- 6 Put these goals in chronological order and focus each one in turn until you have achieved it.
- 7 You should make it a priority to stay in touch those who mattered most to you.

→ page 167 Language reference: Dependent prepositions

Adjective–noun collocations (1)

1 Look at these sentences from Reading and Use of English Part 8. Which of the words in *italics* form collocations with the words in **bold** that follow them?

- 1 The *large* / *major* **drawback** is that if you've seen a vacancy, so has everybody else.
 - 2 Interns are effectively doing a proper job and working *many* / *long* **hours** with a *wide* / *long* **range** of activities.
- 2** Exam candidates often make mistakes forming collocations with the words in **bold** in the following sentences. Which adjective from each set of three is not correct?
- 1 Karl has *wide* / *extensive* / *vast* **experience** of sorting out computer glitches.
 - 2 Gustav's report made a(n) *huge* / *extreme* / *powerful* **impact** on his managers.
 - 3 Our staff enjoy a *high* / *big* / *great* **degree** of flexibility in their working hours.
 - 4 People working here have to work under *heavy* / *constant* / *high* **pressure**.
 - 5 The company I work for has a(n) *excellent* / *big* / *unrivalled* **reputation** for quality.
 - 6 There has been *big* / *fierce* / *intense* **competition** for the manager's job.
 - 7 We have had a *high* / *large* / *great* **number** of applicants for this job.
 - 8 There's been a *strong* / *huge* / *considerable* **increase** in the number of job applicants.
 - 9 With her *expert* / *high* / *specialist* **skills**, Suzy is bound to get the job.
 - 10 With Marianne's *vast* / *extensive* / *strong* **knowledge** of statistical theory, I'm sure she'll get the job.

Listening | Part 2

1 Work in small groups. You will hear a student, Jessica, giving a talk to her class about a project she has done on the co-operative movement. Before you listen, which of these statements do you agree with? Why (not)?

- Employees should have a say in decisions affecting the place where they work.
- To become a manager, you should start at the bottom and work your way up.
- Companies exist equally for the benefit of staff, clients and shareholders.

2 Work in pairs. Read the sentences below. What type of information do you think you need to fill each gap?

Example: 1 a time or period of history



The co-operative movement

Co-operatives were originally set up during the

(1) to provide for workers.

The first successful co-operative was formed by

(2) in northern England.

The co-operative opened a food store for its members and also sold (3)

Nowadays there are traditional co-operatives running chain stores or financial services and new ones active in areas ranging from (4) to web design.

Co-operatives are businesses owned and run by and for their members, who may be

(5) , customers or employees.

All members share company profits and have an (6) in decisions.

Co-operatives are popular now because they are seen to have a strong (7) in comparison to conventional companies.

Some co-operatives avoid investing money in companies which harm the environment by producing (8) or participate in the arms trade.



- 3** **11** Listen and for questions 1–8, complete the sentences in Exercise 2.

Exam advice

Before you listen, look at the gaps to check

- what type of information you need
- what types of word will fit the gaps.

Then, when you listen

- write words you actually hear
- make sure you spell them correctly.

- 4** Match phrases 1–9 from the recording with their definitions a–i. If necessary, listen to the recording again.

- 1 make a go of something
 - 2 set up
 - 3 go a step further
 - 4 be around
 - 5 share out
 - 6 have a say (in something)
 - 7 set something apart
 - 8 go about things
 - 9 put money into something
- a be involved in making a decision about something
 - b begin to do something or deal with something
 - c divide food, money, goods, etc. and give part of it to someone else
 - d exist
 - e formally establish a new company, organisation, system, way of working, etc.
 - f invest in something
 - g show something to be different from, and usually better than, other things of the same type
 - h take an extra action which adds to a situation
 - i make something succeed, usually by working hard

- 5** Work in small groups.

- Would you be interested in working for a co-operative? Why (not)?
- Jessica mentioned two types of business she thinks are unethical. Do you agree with her?

Grammar

Expressing possibility, probability and certainty

- 1** Read the underlined phrases in these pairs of sentences. Which sentence in each pair expresses a stronger possibility?

- 1** a If you've had no joy applying for positions this way, it may well be more productive to start hunting for less visible vacancies instead.
b If you've had no joy applying for positions this way, it may be more productive to start hunting for less visible vacancies instead.
- 2** a If you're answering ads for junior jobs in media, applying blind is unlikely to reap rewards.
b If you're answering ads for junior jobs in media, applying blind is highly unlikely to reap rewards.
- 3** a In the long run you might easily conclude that the most treasured aspect of your university experience wasn't your academic education or any careers advice, but rather the friends you made.
b In the long run you might conclude that the most treasured aspect of your university experience wasn't your academic education or any careers advice, but rather the friends you made.

page 169 Language reference: Expressing possibility, probability and certainty

- 2** What do you think you will be doing in five years' time? Write five sentences about yourself, using the phrases underlined from Exercise 1.

Example

In five years' time I may well be working for an international company.

When you have finished, compare and discuss your sentences in pairs. Give reasons for your statements.

3  The sentences below all contain mistakes made by exam candidates. Find and correct the mistakes.

- 1 By reaching an advanced level of English, I am more probably to succeed in business.
 - 2 If you come here for your holiday in July, you bound to enjoy it.
 - 3 If you also watch television and films, then you're most likely to learn the language faster than if you just go to class.
 - 4 I've studied the three possible options to try to solve the problem.
 - 5 I'd like to recommend Grey's Academy as one of the possibly best schools in Barnsley.
 - 6 This was the worst trip I probably have ever experienced.
 - 7 That may be the possible reason why you're having such problems.
- 4** For questions 1–6, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.
- 1 Madeleine felt sure that she would be offered the job.
BOUND
Madeleine felt she offered the job.
 - 2 Boris is unlikely to win the prize.
LIKELIHOOD
There is little the prize.
 - 3 There's a good chance that Takesi has seen your message.
WELL
Takesi your message.
 - 4 I'm sure you didn't remember to post the letter.
MUST
You post the letter.
 - 5 If you arrive late, the teacher may well get angry with you.
LIKELY
The teacher his temper with you if you arrive late.
 - 6 Do you think you might be able to help me with the essay?
CHANCE
Is me with the essay?

Speaking | Part 4

Exam information

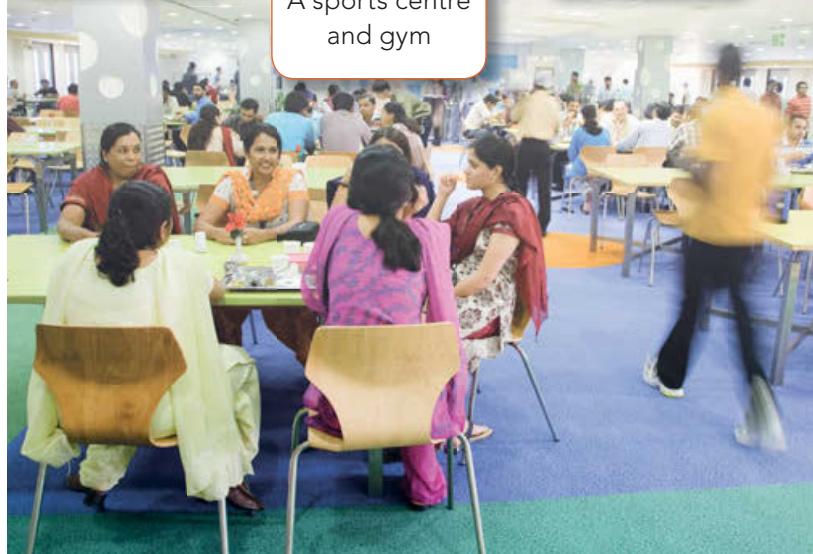
In Speaking Part 4, the examiner

- asks both candidates questions to find out their opinions on general topics related to Part 3. You may both be asked the same question, or each asked different questions.
- may also ask you to react to ideas and opinions which the other candidate expresses, so it is important to listen carefully to what he/she says.

This part tests your ability to express and justify opinions, agree and disagree.

- 1** Work in pairs. Before working on Speaking Part 4, follow the examiner's instructions for the first part of this Speaking Part 3 task.

Now, I'd like you to talk about something together for about two minutes. Here are some things that companies can do to make their employees' working lives more pleasant. Talk to each other about how effective these things might be in making employees' lives more pleasant.





- 2 Now follow the examiner's instruction for the second part of the Part 3 task.



Now you have about a minute to decide which two things would benefit staff most.



- 3 Work in pairs. Look at these Part 4 questions and decide which of them you should answer by

- a expressing just one point of view and a reason / reasons for it
- b giving a number of different ideas and perhaps reasons for them.

- 1 The world we live in is changing faster than ever before. How do you think our working lives will be different in the future?
- 2 Many people dream of being able to work from home. What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of working from home?
- 3 Some people believe that people should continue working as long as they can, while other people believe that everyone should retire at 60 or 65. What is your view?
- 4 Which do you think is more important in a job: friendly colleagues or a good salary?
- 5 How can young people get the experience they need to be given a good job?
- 6 Many people complain about their managers. What qualities would you look for in a perfect manager, and why?

- 4 Work in pairs. Discuss and make brief notes on how you could answer questions 1–6.

- 5 In which answers to questions 1–6 could you use these words/phrases?

achieve a good work-life balance commute
feel valued give praise a good communicator
a feeling of isolation a job vacancy motivate/motivation
a reasonable/heavy/light workload recruit
take somebody on a trainee a work environment
a workplace

- 6 12 Listen to Daniel and Laura answering three of the questions.

- 1 Which words/phrases from Exercise 5 did they use?
- 2 Which answers do you agree with?

- 7 Say if the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 Daniel and Laura suggest several different ideas to answer each question.
- 2 They give general answers to the questions.
- 3 They occasionally mention their personal situation but don't answer the question entirely with that.
- 4 They answer the question but also add other ideas which are not relevant.
- 5 When they agree with their partner, they add extra ideas.
- 6 When they disagree with their partner, they explain why.

- 8 Work in pairs. Take turns to ask and answer questions 1–6 in Exercise 3.

page 198 Speaking reference: Speaking Part 4

Writing | Part 2

A report

1 Read the exam task below and underline the key points. Then answer these questions.

- 1 Why does the organisation want to improve your work environment?
- 2 Who will read the report?

The international organisation where you work has a sum of money available for making improvements to the work environment in your office to make it more productive. You have been asked to write a report for your manager in which you

- outline the problems with your work environment
- summarise the improvements you and your colleagues suggested
- recommend two changes.

Write your **report**. Write between 220 and 260 words.

2 Work in pairs.

- 1 Brainstorm and note down a list of problems (e.g. noisy air-conditioning system) and their effects (e.g. headaches).
- 2 Decide which problems you want to mention in your report (you need to limit the number of ideas so that you can deal with the whole task within the word limit). Then think of improvements to deal with them.
- 3 You need to persuade your manager to implement your ideas. Discuss what you can say to explain how the improvements will make your office more productive.
- 4 Decide which two changes you will recommend and the reasons for recommending them.



3 Work alone and write a brief plan for your report, including sections and section headings (see pages 26–27). When you have finished, compare plans with a partner.

4 Read the sample report below, without paying attention to the options in *italics* for the moment. Compare the contents of the report with your plan.

Report on workplace improvements

Introduction

The aim of this report is to ¹sum up / outline ²the deficiencies in / what's wrong with our present office environment and the suggestions which have been made for improvements, and to ³make recommendations / give ideas for two changes.

The office environment

At present, the office suffers from ⁴a number of / lots of problems. Firstly, the air-conditioning system is ⁵antiquated / worn out and therefore noisy. This causes headaches and occasionally makes it difficult to ⁶talk on the phone / hold telephone conversations. Also, the open office plan makes it difficult for people to ⁷get on with / concentrate on their work as they are frequently ⁸put off / distracted by conversations in other parts of the office. Finally, many of the office chairs are uncomfortable and employees who spend ⁹lots of time / long hours in front of their computers often complain of backache.

Staff suggestions

Staff were ¹⁰consulted / asked and they made the following suggestions: first, the air-conditioning should be replaced by a more modern, quieter system which provides cool air in the summer and heating in the winter. It was felt that this would ¹¹reduce / cut down on tiredness and improve morale, which would enable staff to work more productively. To deal with distractions from conversations there were two suggestions: either dividing the office with screens round each work station, or having separate meeting rooms for ¹²necessary work discussions / the chats people need at work. Staff also requested more ergonomic office chairs.

Recommendation

¹³As a first measure, I would recommend / The first thing I'd recommend is replacing the air conditioning and the office chairs. These two changes will ¹⁴have a direct effect on productivity / increase the amount of work people do by reducing ¹⁵absence due to sick leave / time off because people are ill and ¹⁶giving staff the chance / enabling staff to work more efficiently and more comfortably.

- 5 Read the report again and choose the more formal alternatives from the options 1–16 in *italics*.
- 6 Work in pairs. Writing Part 2 often asks students to persuade the reader about something.
 - 1 Why is using a suitable style essential to persuading the reader?
 - 2 Which arguments in the sample report are used to persuade the manager?
- 7 Read this writing task and underline the key points you must deal with.

You have been working in an international hotel chain for a month as part of a work experience programme. The training manager has asked you to write a report in which you

- describe the tasks and activities you participated in
- explain any problems with the programme
- make recommendations for two improvements for future programmes.

Write your report. Write between 220 and 260 words.

8 Work in pairs.

- 1 Think of a number of tasks and activities you participated in.
- 2 Decide what problems you want to mention and think of two improvements for future programmes.
- 3 Discuss how you can persuade the training manager to implement them. (For example, will they make the programme more effective? Will they attract better trainees? Will they save money?)
- 9 Read the sample report again and underline words and phrases which you think might be useful when you write your own report. Compare ideas with a partner.
- 10 Write a plan for your report. Then in small groups, compare your plans.
- 11 Now write your report.

Exam information and advice

Writing a report tests your ability to organise and express information and to make recommendations or suggestions.

When writing a report

- you should give it a title
- you can divide it into sections and give each section a heading (the first and last sections could be *Introduction* and *Conclusion* or *Conclusion and recommendations*)
- if required by the task, make suggestions and recommendations
- make sure that you answer all parts of the task
- match your style to the situation and the target reader(s).

→ page 191 Writing reference: Reports



Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 3

Vocabulary

- 1 For questions 1–8, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Problems between neighbours

Research shows that nearly a fifth of Britons have had a serious dispute with their neighbours in the past year, with the (0) suggesting that difficult (1) with our fellow residents are generally the result of a breakdown in (2) between people. Although there are many people who do get on well with their neighbours, the research shows that nearly a third of Britons (3) speak to them. One in seven of us don't even know the names of the people who live in our immediate (4) Consequently, many neighbours are finding it (5) difficult to settle disputes amicably. One in seven people have had verbal (6) with a neighbour in the past, and a small number of disputes have even ended in physical (7) Feuding neighbours are also turning to the authorities to solve their (8) for them. In fact, almost a fifth of people have reported their neighbours to the police or local council.

FIND
RELATION
COMMUNICATE

RARE
NEIGHBOUR
INCREASE

ARGUE
VIOLENT
AGREE

Grammar

- 2 The words *no*, *not* and *none* are used incorrectly in some of these sentences. Correct the mistakes.

- 1 I've searched everywhere for my passport but there is not sign of it.
- 2 Most of my family love all kinds of sport, but no my sister – she thinks all sport is a waste of time.
- 3 The exam was so difficult that I didn't get none of my answers right.
- 4 Humans are basically no different from any other animal.
- 5 I thought we had plenty of coffee but I've just looked in the cupboard and there's no left.
- 6 Not one of Patrick's friends remembered his birthday.
- 7 Our rate of pay is no the point – it's the actual working conditions that are so awful.
- 8 The group left for the North Pole three weeks ago and so far we've had none news of their progress.

- 3 Rewrite these short texts replacing active verbs with passive verbs where possible and appropriate.

- 1 We use the term 'amnesia' to refer to a partial or complete loss of memory. It is usually a temporary condition which only affects a certain part of a person's experience. Specific medical conditions can cause amnesia.
- 2 We all know very well that our real experiences form our memory. But could someone put a false memory into our heads? Could they persuade us that we had experienced something that never actually took place?
- 3 We use our semantic memory to store our knowledge of the world. Everyone has this knowledge base, and normally we can access it quickly and easily. Our semantic memory includes the meanings of words and the names of people and places.
- 4 Our working memory is a very important part of our memory system. You can think of it as the ability to remember and use a limited amount of information for a short amount of time. Our working memory can help us to perform a task, like following a set of instructions. However, this information is erratic. If someone distracts you, you can lose the information and you have to start the task again.

Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 4

Vocabulary

- 1 For questions 1–8, read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap.

The importance of internships

Recent research indicates that graduates (1) to some of the UK's leading employers (2) a much better chance of being (3) a job if they have already had some work experience with the same organisation – either through internships, industrial placements or vacation work. In fact three quarters of graduate vacancies are (4) to be snapped up by graduates who already had some work experience with the same employer. This latest research (5) that taking part in work placements or internships whilst at university is now just as important as getting a good degree.

A separate study warns that almost six in ten students finish university without a graduate job, highlighting the (6) competition for graduate jobs. It is not (7) that employers are going to be interested in your previous work experience and while this does not have to have been a glamorous internship with an investment bank, using your time at university to gain work experience is going to have a major (8) on your future job prospects.

- 1 A asking B applying C joining D recruiting
- 2 A stand B give C hold D take
- 3 A provided B contracted C found D offered
- 4 A liable B probable C prone D likely
- 5 A agrees B declares C confirms D yields
- 6 A firm B heavy C intense D impressive
- 7 A astonishing B surprising C amazing D shocking
- 8 A result B consequence C repercussion D impact

- 2 Complete each of the sentences with an adjective from the box. In some cases more than one answer is possible.

constant excellent extensive fierce huge
powerful specialist vast

- 1 Malik's positive attitude and experience make him the best person for the job.
- 2 Almodóvar's film has made a(n) impact on audiences throughout the country.
- 3 This is a highly stressful job and we're under pressure to meet our targets.
- 4 The Paradise Hotel has a(n) reputation in this town.
- 5 I want to join the football team but there's extremely competition for places.
- 6 The increase in house prices has made it very difficult for young people to buy a first home.
- 7 Ivan's knowledge of the market is invaluable to our operations.
- 8 We need someone with language skills to work as part of our expert team.

Grammar and vocabulary

- 3 Circle the correct alternative in *italics* in each of these sentences.

- 1 It's by far the best film of the festival so far. I think it *must / could* easily win first prize.
- 2 The weather forecast isn't too good so the outing *might not / could not* take place tomorrow.
- 3 Jay had a sprained ankle so he *mightn't have / couldn't* have run very far!
- 4 It's just about *probable / possible* that the train has been delayed.
- 5 We're *highly / strongly* likely to see Fran at the concert tonight.
- 6 You're looking exhausted! You *mustn't / can't* have had a very relaxing holiday.
- 7 Why don't you call Marcos? He's *bound / liable* to have the information you need.

Starting off

- 1 You receive an email telling you that you have won an adventure activity competition. Which of these three activities would you choose?
- 2 Compare and discuss your choice of activity with other students.
- 3 Work in pairs. Discuss these quotations. What do they mean? Do you agree with them?
 - 'Do one thing every day that scares you.' (Eleanor Roosevelt)
 - 'Distrust and caution are the parents of security.' (Benjamin Franklin)

HYDROSPEEDING



Hydrospeeding in Morzine, Switzerland, is not for everyone but the more extreme will love it. Equipped with a float, helmet, flippers and wetsuit, you will float, plunge and scream your way down the River Dranse!

Interested?

[Click here>>](#)

York Skydiving Centre



Ready to skydive? We offer tandem skydiving, parachuting and freefalling at York Skydiving Centre. Come and experience the exhilaration of jumping from an aeroplane at 4,000 metres at the closest full-time parachute centre to York.

Interested? [Click here](#)

WILDERNESS HUSKY SAFARI



Quite simply, we love this and, judging by the feedback, so do our clients.

You will be provided with all the necessary equipment, including thermal clothing, and then taken to meet the dogs. You will be taught how to handle your team and the sled, and then you depart into Pallas-Ounas National Park in Western Lapland, one of Europe's few remaining wilderness areas.

Interested? [CLICK HERE](#)

Listening | Part 1

- 1 You will hear three people talking about dramatic past experiences. Before you listen, match 1–10 with a–j to make sentences which refer to frightening experiences.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1 It seemed to go on ... | a nightmares about it. |
| 2 Everything seemed to
be happening ... | b in a flash. |
| 3 It was as though time ... | c I'll never forget. |
| 4 It was all over ... | d stood still. |
| 5 Everything was ... | e as if it was yesterday. |
| 6 I remember it ... | f much about it. |
| 7 It's an experience ... | g in slow motion. |
| 8 I still have ... | h happening at once. |
| 9 It's all ... | i forever. |
| 10 I don't remember ... | j a bit of a blur now. |

- 2 Now tell a partner about a dramatic experience that happened to you or someone you know. Use some of the sentences from Exercise 1 if possible.

3 Read the questions and options in Exercise 4. At this stage, think about what you can work out from the question and answers. Ask yourself questions like these.

- 1 In Extract One, what are we told about Harry? For example, where has he been? What has happened to him? Whose fault might it have been?
 - 2 In Extract Two, what do we know about what happened to the motorist? Why do you think the police were involved?
 - 3 In Extract Three, why might the person have to leave her home and why might moving back be a problem?
- 4**  **13** Now listen and for questions 1–6, choose the answer (A, B or C) which fits the best according to what you hear.

Extract One

You hear two people, Harry and Jasmine, talking about an incident at a gym.

- 1 When did Harry's accident happen?
 A when he started to run fast
 B as soon as he got on the machine
 C when he tried to reduce his running speed
- 2 Why did Jasmine stop going to the gym?
 A She found the equipment to be unreliable.
 B She thought the machine might not work properly.
 C She found running on machines exhausting.



Extract Two

You hear a police officer interviewing a motorist who has been involved in a driving incident.

- 3 How does the motorist correct something the policeman says?
 A He tells him who was with him at the time.
 B He tells him why he was travelling late at night.
 C He tells him the time of the incident.
- 4 What was the driver's state of mind after he was hit by the stone?
 A He was convinced he was going to die.
 B He was confused but still able to steer the car.
 C He was optimistic that the trees would slow the car down.

Extract Three

You hear a news reporter interviewing someone who has had to leave her home.

- 5 Why isn't the reporter particularly surprised by the problem the woman is facing?
 A He is in a similar situation himself.
 B The same thing happened to him in the past.
 C He has heard similar stories from other people.
- 6 How does the woman feel about the whole incident?
 A She realises that it could have been much worse.
 B She can't stop thinking about the problems she faces.
 C She is afraid she'll never be able to move back.

Exam advice

- Before you listen to the recording, read the questions and options and infer as much information as possible from them about the topic. This should help you to understand the recording when you hear it for the first time.
- The words you hear will usually be different from the words in the question, so listen for the meaning rather than for specific words.



Vocabulary

Idiomatic language

1 Discuss these questions about words and phrases from Listening Part 1.

- 1 Are *flashbacks* pleasant or unpleasant? What kinds of event cause flashbacks?
- 2 What is the meaning of *treadmill* in this sentence?
There were days when child-rearing seemed like an endless treadmill of feeding and washing.
- 3 What might cause a memory to be a *blur*?
- 4 What did the speaker mean by *I was sure we'd had it?*

2 Discuss the meaning of the idiomatic expressions in these sentences, which all include parts of the body.

- 1 In the end all I could do was jump off and keep my fingers crossed.
- 2 I'm really scared of heights but if you twist my arm, I suppose I'll go climbing with you.
- 3 James may seem friendly but he's likely to stab you in the back when he has something to gain.
- 4 Lots of people use their work computers for personal reasons, but managers usually turn a blind eye to it.
- 5 He told me I'd won the lottery but I knew he was just pulling my leg.

Grammar

Verbs followed by *to + infinitive* or the *-ing* form

1 Circle the correct verb form in these sentences from Listening Part 1. Compare choices with a partner.

- 1 Then I decided to run / running fast for ten minutes.
- 2 I'm considering to take / taking the company to court.
- 3 I keep to think / thinking how disastrous it could have been.
- 4 I was trying to stop / stopping it by digging ditches.
- 5 In the end, I just gave up to dig / digging and got out.

2 Are the verbs in the box followed by the *to* infinitive or the *-ing* form? Make two lists of verbs, and then check your answers in the Language reference.

admit afford agree avoid can't help choose
deny enjoy expect finish hope involve keep on
mind offer pretend promise put off refuse
resent risk suggest

3 Some verbs have different meanings depending on whether they are followed by the *-ing* form or the infinitive. Discuss the differences in meaning between the verbs in *italics* in these pairs of sentences.

- 1 a I remember waking up on the grass verge.
b Remember to wake me up early tomorrow morning.
- 2 a I tried putting my foot on the brake, but the car simply went faster.
b I tried to hold on to the steering wheel, but it slipped out of my hand.
- 3 a While we were driving along the motorway, we saw planes taking off.
b When we went to the airport to meet my brother, we got there in time to see his plane land.
- 4 a I regret saying anything now.
b I regret to say that I won't be able to come to your wedding.
- 5 a Being a careful driver means paying attention to other road users.
b I'm sorry. I didn't mean to offend you.

4  The following sentences contain mistakes made by exam candidates. Correct the mistakes.

- 1 I suggest to take the overnight train to Vienna.
- 2 Part of my job is to help maintaining the machinery in good working order.
- 3 I would strongly recommend to sail rather than going by plane.
- 4 I never considered to do anything except being a teacher.
- 5 I told my department manager that I objected to work at weekends.
- 6 Despite not being able to afford going abroad, I am interested in diving in other countries.

5 Work in small groups. Discuss some of these topics.

- something I'm looking forward to
- things I'd like to give up
- things I put off doing
- jobs I'd refuse to do
- something I regret having done
- something I've tried to do, but failed



→ page 179 Language reference: Verbs + *to infinitive* or *-ing*

Reading and Use of English | Part 4

1 Work in pairs. Look at this sample task for Reading and Use of English Part 4 and discuss the questions.

We only felt safe when we were on dry land again.

UNTIL

It was only after we had finally got on dry land again that we felt safe.

- 1 Does the completed second sentence have a similar meaning to the first sentence?
- 2 Is it grammatically correct?
- 3 Would this answer be correct in the exam?
- 4 If not, what should the answer be?

2 Read these sentences and discuss the clues under each one. (You do not have clues in the exam.) Then complete the second sentence with between three and six words, including the word given.



- 1 I have absolutely no interest whatever in adventure holidays.

APPEAL

Adventure holidays in the least.

Clue: What preposition do you need after the verb 'appeal'?

- 2 They had offered him a .38 gun for his own protection.

PROTECT

They had offered him a .38 gun so that himself.

Clue: What kind of structure follows 'so that'?

- 3 Driving a car without insurance is illegal.

LAW

It a car without insurance.

Clue: Which phrase using 'law' means 'illegal'?

- 4 People generally think of tennis as a safe sport.

CONSIDERED

Tennis a safe sport.

Clue: How does starting with 'Tennis' affect the grammar of the second sentence?

- 5 Our surroundings became more primitive as we travelled further inland.

THE

The further we travelled our surroundings became.

Clue: What comparative structure includes the word 'the' twice?

- 6 It is advisable not to climb mountains after a heavy snowfall.

AVOID

You mountains after a heavy snowfall.

Clue: Which modal verb is normally used for advice?



Exam advice

- Use the word in CAPITALS without changing it.
- Count the words you have used to complete the gapped sentence. Contractions (*isn't*, *don't*, etc.) count as two words.
- Check that the words you have added are grammatically correct in the gapped sentence.
- Finally, read both sentences again to check that they have the same meaning.

- 3 Some questions in Part 4 test your knowledge of idiomatic expressions and phrasal verbs, such as those in *italics* below. Match the expressions in 1–6 with the meanings a–f.

1 After the meal we *settled up* and left.

2 *It's a wonder* that you got here at all.

3 *Keep an eye on* the weather.

4 I'm *tied up* until this afternoon.

5 Thank goodness, she's *on the mend*.

6 He's always trying to *pick a fight*.

a very busy

d surprising

b start an argument

e watch carefully

c get better

f pay what you owe

- 4 Write sentences of your own using the six expressions in Exercise 3.

Reading and use of English | Part 7

Exam information

In Reading and Use of English Part 7, you read a text of 650–800 words from which six paragraphs have been removed and placed after the text. You have to decide which paragraph fits in each gap. There is one extra paragraph which does not fit into any of the gaps.

This part tests your ability to understand the structure of a text, how an argument develops and how ideas link to one another.

1 Discuss these questions with a partner.

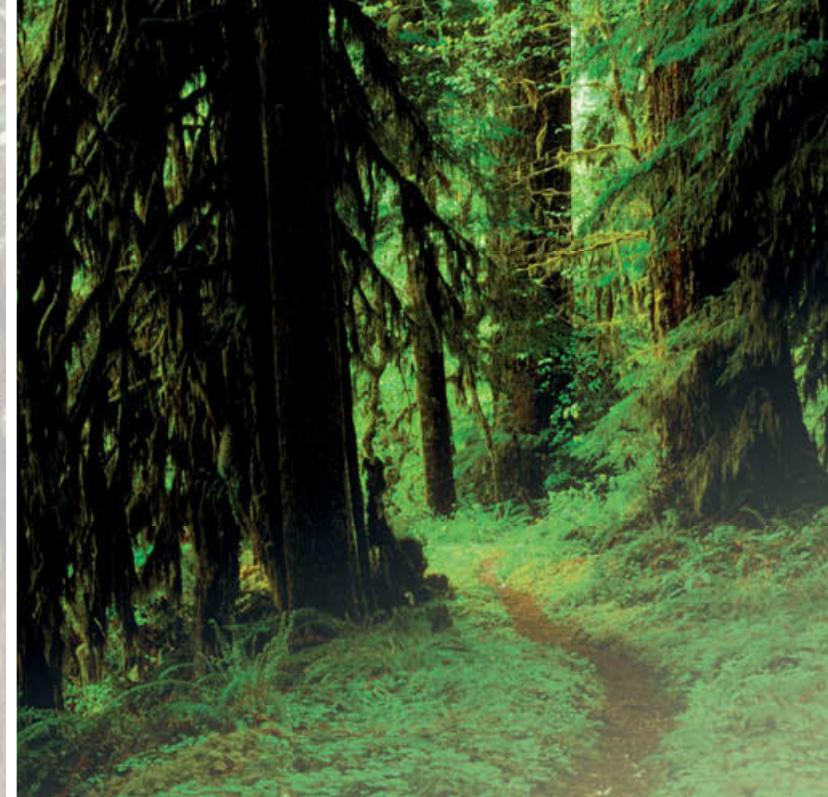
- 1 Tell each other about an interesting unspoiled area you have visited. It could be a forest, a desert, a mountainous region or a wild coastal area. How did being in this area make you feel?
 - 2 Do you enjoy visiting wild, natural areas like this? Why (not)?
 - 3 Are there areas like these you would like to visit in the future?
- 2** Read the exam task. Then follow the sequence of activities below to complete the task.

You are going to read an extract from a book by Bill Bryson. Six paragraphs have been removed from the text. Choose from paragraphs A–G the one which fits each gap (1–6). There is one extra paragraph which you do not need to use.

- Read the main part of the text quickly to build up a picture in your mind of what is happening.
- Underline any reference words or phrases in the text which you think may refer to either the previous or the following missing paragraph. These may include pronouns, time expressions, conjunctions and other linking phrases.
- Read the missing paragraphs and look for subject matter and language links.
- Match any gaps and missing paragraphs that you are sure of first.

3 Discuss these questions in pairs or small groups. Give reasons for your answers.

- 1 If a friend suggested a walk in the woods, how would you respond?
- 2 If you went for a walk in a wood or forest, would you prefer to go alone or with a friend?
- 3 How would you feel if you had to spend the night in a wood or forest?



A WALK IN THE WOODS

Woods are not like other spaces. Their trees surround you, press in from all sides. Woods choke off views, and leave you without bearings. They make you feel small, confused and vulnerable, like a child lost in a crowd. Standing in a desert, you know you are in a big space. Standing in a wood, you only sense it. They are a vast, featureless nowhere. And they are alive.

1

Though you tell yourself it's preposterous, you can't quite shake off the feeling that you are being watched. You order yourself to be calm – it's just a wood, but you are feeling jumpy. Every sudden noise makes you spin in alarm. Whatever mechanism within you is responsible for adrenalin, it has never been so prepared to pump out the warm adrenal fluid. Even asleep, you are a coiled spring.

2

But tougher men were sobered by this strange menace. Daniel Boone, who wrestled bears, described corners of the southern Appalachians as 'so wild that it is impossible to behold them without terror'. When Daniel Boone is uneasy, you know it's time to watch your step.

3

Most of this vast forest area is now gone, but what survives is more impressive than you might expect. The Chatahoochee is part of four million acres of forest stretching up to the Great Smoky Mountains. On a map of the USA it is just a smudge of green, but on foot, the scale of it is colossal. It would be four days before Katz and I crossed a highway and eight till we came to a town.

4

In a normal year we would be walking into the dynamic abundance of a southern mountain spring, through a radiant, productive world alive with insects and birds. Above all, there would be wild flowers blossoming from every twig and pushing through the forest floor. Instead, we trudged through a silent world of bare trees. In this way, we fell into a simple routine.

5

Sometimes other hikers would come along, and tell me where he was. Because everyone walks at different rates and rests at different times, several times a day you bump into fellow hikers, especially on mountain tops or beside streams, and at the wooden shelters that stand at distant intervals.

6

Around four, we would find somewhere to camp. One of us would go off to fetch water while the other prepared noodles. Sometimes we would talk, but mostly we existed in a kind of companionable silence. By six o'clock, dark, cold and weariness would force us to our tents. Katz went to sleep instantly as far as I could tell. I would read until my shoulders and arms grew chilly. So I would put myself in darkness and lie there listening to the peculiarly clear, articulated sounds of the forest at night.

Adapted from *A Walk in the Woods* by Bill Bryson

A And so we walked – up mountains, through forgotten hollows, along ridges and through mile after mile of dark, deep, silent woods, on a trail about half a metre wide.

B In consequence, you get to know your fellow hikers quite well if you meet them at the shelters. Even at busy times, however, the woods are great providers of solitude, and I encountered long periods of perfect aloneness, when I didn't see another soul for hours.

C So woods are spooky. Quite apart from the thought that they may be hiding wild beasts, there is something sinister about them that makes you sense an atmosphere of doom with every step, and leaves you profoundly aware that you ought to keep your ears pricked.

D The American woods have been unnerving people like this for 300 years. Henry Thoreau thought nature was splendid, but when he experienced this real wilderness, he was unnerved to the core. This wasn't the tame world of overgrown orchards that passed for wilderness in suburban Massachusetts, but a forbidding country that was 'wild and savage'. Apparently, the experience left him, 'almost hysterical'.

E There is a strange frozen violence in a forest out of season. Fallen trees lay across the path every fifty or sixty yards, often with great bomb craters of dirt around their roots. Dozens more lay rotting on the slopes, and every third or fourth tree, it seemed, was leaning on a neighbour. It was as if the trees couldn't wait to fall over.

F When the first Europeans arrived in the New World, there were perhaps 950 million acres of woodland in what became the lower forty-eight states. The Chatahoochee National Forest, through which Katz and I now trudged, was part of an immense canopy stretching from Alabama to Canada and beyond.

G Each morning we rose at first light, shivering and rubbing arms, made coffee, broke camp, and set off into the silent woods. We would walk from half past seven to four. We seldom walked together, but every couple of hours I would sit and wait for Katz to catch up.

Speaking | Part 2

- 1 Answer these questions about Speaking Part 2. Then compare answers with a partner.

 - 1 How many photos is each candidate given by the examiner?
 - 2 How many photos does each candidate have to talk about?
 - 3 How long does each candidate have to speak for?
 - 4 What happens after each candidate finishes talking about their photos?

- 2 Read the examiner's instructions and look at the three photos. Write brief notes in answer to the questions below.



Here are your pictures. They show people doing dangerous jobs. I'd like you to compare two of the pictures and say what the dangers of the jobs might be and why people choose to do jobs like these.



- 1 What are the three jobs? (If you don't know the job title, how can you describe it?)
- 2 In what way is each job dangerous?
- 3 What words might describe the sort of person who chooses each of these jobs?
- 3 Work in pairs. Take turns to compare two of the three photos. You should each talk for about a minute. Time your partner, but don't interrupt while he/she is speaking.

4 Listen to a student speaking about the photos.

- 1 Which two is he comparing?
- 2 Why does he use these words and phrases?

almost certainly obviously I suppose It must be
he seems to be probably I'd say perhaps

- What are the dangers of these jobs?
- Why do people choose to do jobs like these?



- 5 Now read these examiner's instructions and look at another set of three photos.



Here are your pictures. They show people doing dangerous activities. I'd like you to compare two of the pictures and say what skills and personal qualities each activity involves, and how these activities make people feel.



Before you start the task, consider the two questions you have to answer and decide which of these words/phrases are most suited to each question.

adrenalin rush concentration control courage
daring excitement exhausted exhilarated fit
proud satisfaction self-confident stamina
steady nerves a sense of achievement strength
terrified thrill

6 Work in pairs.

Student A: Choose photos 1 and 2.

Student B: Choose photo 1 or 2 and photo 3.

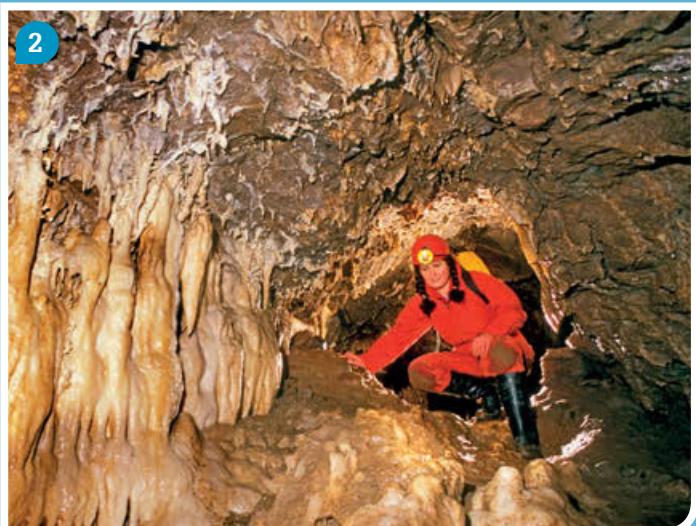
Now prepare what you are going to say about your two photos.

- 7 Take turns to speak for one minute about your photos. Incorporate some of the words and phrases from Exercises 4 and 5.
- 8 After your partner has spoken, ask him/her a question related to his/her photos.

Exam advice

- Listen very carefully to the instructions you are given by the examiner, so that you answer the specific questions you are asked rather than talking vaguely or generally about the photos.
- You are asked two questions, which are printed on the page with the photos. Make sure you answer them both.
- Compare the photos in the context of the questions – don't make irrelevant comparisons. Spend about half your time comparing the photos and the other half answering the questions.
- You shouldn't try to describe the photos in detail.
- If you have time before starting to speak, spend a few seconds planning what you want to say.

- What skills and personal qualities does each activity involve?
- How do these activities make people feel?



Writing | Part 2

A proposal

Exam information

A proposal may be written for a superior, for example a boss or a teacher, or for a peer group, for example club members or work colleagues.

- You are expected to make suggestions, supported by factual information, to persuade your reader(s) that a certain course of action should be taken.
- A proposal should be clearly organised and may include headings.
- The style should be formal if you are writing for a superior, but may be more informal if your readers are colleagues or club members.



- 1 Read the writing task below. Then think about who you would choose as your local hero and make a few brief notes.

You see this notice on the website for your town or city council.

The Council is planning to honour a local hero connected with our area. The local hero can be someone well known or an ordinary citizen. He/She could be still living or could be someone from history.

Residents are invited to send in proposals identifying a deserving person, giving reasons for their choice and suggesting a suitable way in which this hero should be honoured.

Write your **proposal** in 220–260 words.

- 2 Take turns to tell a partner about the person you would choose. Give at least two reasons for your choice. Answer your partner's questions about your nomination.

- 3 Read the sample proposal without paying attention to the alternatives in *italics*. Answer these questions.

- 1 How well does the writer know his local hero?
- 2 What did Helen Keane do?
- 3 What does the writer say she could have done instead?
- 4 What has Helen Keane shown people?
- 5 How does the writer suggest Helen Keane should be honoured?

In response to your invitation, I am writing, to suggest a local hero who, ¹*in my opinion / I think*, deserves to be honoured. My hero is from my neighbourhood, but not someone I know personally.

My choice

My choice is Helen Keane, who, until recently, was just an ordinary working ²*mother / mum*. One Friday last August, Helen was driving home, looking forward to a relaxing weekend. Suddenly, a lorry in front of her swerved and crashed into a bridge. Helen immediately stopped and went to help. When she ³*got to / reached* the lorry, flames were coming from the cab but, without hesitating, Helen opened the door, pulled the unconscious driver out of his lorry and dragged him to safety. Helen herself ⁴*was burnt / suffered burns* which kept her in hospital for two weeks.

Reasons for my choice

My main reason for choosing Helen is that she was an ordinary person going about her daily life. She could easily have ⁵*gone off / driven home*, leaving the ⁶*ambulance / emergency services* to deal with the accident. But instead, she stopped and saved a man's life. My other reason is that Helen has shown us all that special training is not necessarily required to help other people. Anyone can ⁷*make a difference / help*.

Honouring my hero

If my choice of local hero is accepted, I suggest that the council should ⁸*set up a fund / get together some money* which could be used to fund ⁹*an annual prize / a prize every year* for someone who helps other people. This could be known as the Helen Keane Award.

I hope you will consider Helen Keane a suitable nominee who deserves to be honoured.

4 Work in pairs.

- a Read the proposal again and choose the most appropriate words and phrases in *italics*. Compare your choices with a partner and discuss the reasons for your choice.
- b Has the writer of this proposal covered all parts of the task appropriately?

5 Underline the *-ing* forms in the sample proposal.
Then work in pairs to discuss how these forms are used, choosing from this list.

- 1 as an adjective
- 2 as part of a participle clause
- 3 as part of a main verb
- 4 after a preposition
- 5 as a noun

6 Most of the following sentences contain one or more mistakes made by exam candidates. Correct all the mistakes you can find.

- 1 We think we can solve this problem by opening the museum to the public and charge them an entrance fee.
 - 2 In addition to keep up with their studies, university students often have to cope on very low budgets.
 - 3 Within the next few weeks a new sports centre will be opening in the north of the city.
 - 4 A hardwork committee has recently put forward a set of interested proposals for improve the food and service be offered in the college canteen.
 - 5 To bring in new health and safety regulations, the government has shown that it is concerned with improving the wellbeing of the whole population.
 - 6 I knew my decision to work abroad would mean to leave my friends and family.
- 7 Which of the adjectives in this list could be used to describe a hero? (Some are negative and would not be appropriate.)

cautious courageous creative enthusiastic
exceptional extraordinary fearless generous
greedy innovative inspiring kind narrow-minded
passionate remarkable self-interested significant
tireless

8 Use the adverb form of some of the adjectives above to complete these sentences. (In most cases, more than one answer is possible.)

- 1 When the fire broke out, he acted quickly and
- 2 She works to promote green issues.
- 3 He was an gifted leader.
- 4 Her work has contributed to the welfare of our community.
- 5 He has been successful in achieving his aims.
- 6 He believes in what he is doing.
- 7 She treats everyone she meets and with respect.
- 8 He thinks about ways of solving social problems.
- 9 Residents have responded to the idea of naming the park after her.

9 Now plan and write your proposal for the writing task in Exercise 1.

- Use the example proposal in Exercise 3 as a model.
- If you cannot think of a real person to write about, your proposal can be fictional.
- Write in an appropriately formal style.
- Try to include *-ing* forms to link ideas in your proposal.
- Use some interesting and appropriate adjectives and adverbs.

→ page 190 Writing reference: Proposals



Starting off

1 Work in pairs. *The Times* newspaper and the Tate Gallery in London held a drawing challenge in which they asked young people aged 11–18 to submit a self-portrait. Look at these submissions to the challenge.

- Which picture appeals to you most?
- What impression do you have of each artist's personality?

2  6.1 Listen to three of the artists speaking. Which do you think are their self-portraits? Why?

Speaker A:

Speaker B:

Speaker C:

3 Which of these adjectives / adjective phrases did each speaker use?

a bit self-conscious aggressive approachable
moody neat nice to be around not threatening
really serious sincere thoughtful unadventurous
uptight

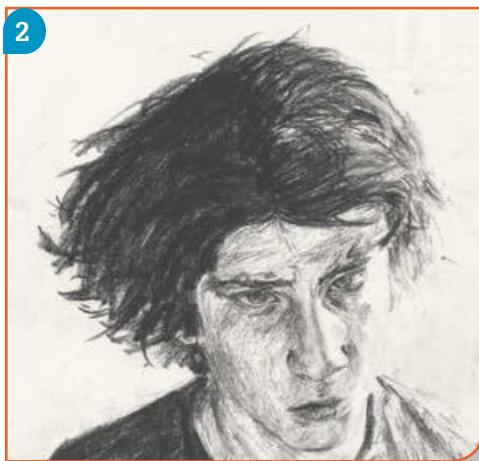
4 Work in pairs. Describe a photograph of yourself which you like.

- Where are you?
- What are you doing?
- What are you wearing?
- Who are you with?
- What expression do you have on your face?
- What impression do you think the photo gives of your personality? If possible, use some of the adjectives from Exercise 3.

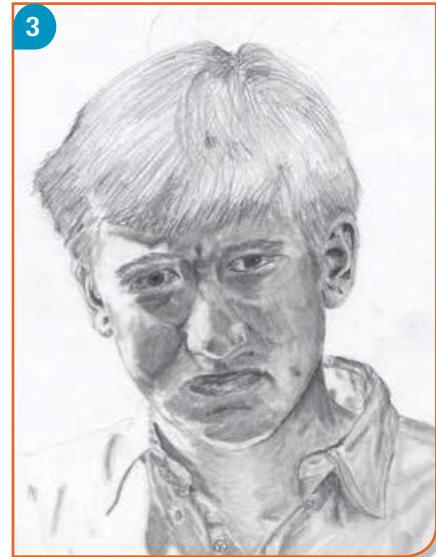
1



2



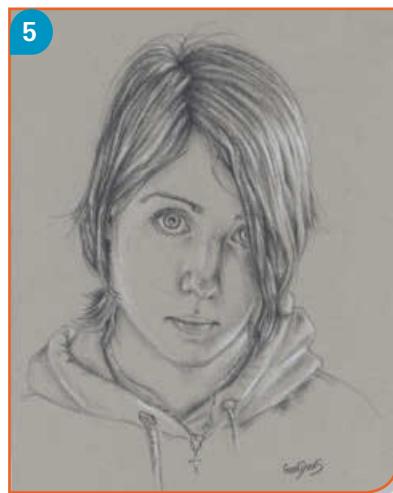
3



4



5



Listening | Part 3

Exam information

Listening Part 3

- is an interview or conversation between two or more speakers
- lasts about four minutes
- has six multiple-choice questions, each with four options.

This part tests your ability to understand attitude and opinion.

1 Work in pairs. You will hear an interview with Mike Byatt, a portrait painter, and his subject, actress Emily Curran. Before you listen, look at these two portraits by other artists.

- In what ways is a portrait different from a photo?
- Which of these portraits do you prefer? Why?



Helen Mirren by Ishbel Myerscough



PD James by Michael R Taylor

2 Work in pairs. Before you listen, read the multiple-choice questions 1–6 below and underline the main idea in each question (but not in the options A–D).

- 1** Mike painted the portrait in Emily's home because
 - A he wanted to include her things in the portrait.
 - B he wanted her to pose as naturally as possible.
 - C he believed it would help him understand her personality.
 - D he prefers his subjects to choose the background.
- 2** How did Emily feel at the beginning of the process?
 - A unsure how she should pose
 - B uncomfortable with so much attention
 - C excited to be achieving a dream
 - D impatient about the time it would take
- 3** According to Mike, the main reason why people have their portrait painted is that
 - A portraits are more revealing than photos.
 - B portraits are more decorative than photos.
 - C portraits indicate a person's importance.
 - D portraits stay with the family for many years.
- 4** Why does Mike prefer painting portraits with the sitter in front of him?
 - A He can discuss the portrait with the sitter.
 - B He can observe the sitter's moods and personality.
 - C He can achieve a more exact image.
 - D He enjoys the sitter's company.
- 5** What surprised Emily about the experience?
 - A She had to concentrate.
 - B She sometimes annoyed the artist.
 - C She found it easy to stay still.
 - D She was unhappy when it ended.
- 6** Mike says the personality of the person he paints
 - A is revealed in a successful portrait.
 - B is mixed with the artist's own in a portrait.
 - C is exaggerated in the final result.
 - D is interpreted by the portrait's viewers.

3 **16** Listen to the interview. For questions 1–6, choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which fits best according to what you hear.

4 Work in pairs.

- Would you prefer to have a painted portrait or a photograph of yourself in your house? Why?
- How big would it be and where would you put it?

Reading and Use of English | Part 5

1 You will read an article about the Tate Times Drawing Challenge. Before you read, match these words with their definitions from the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*.

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| 1 grimace | a to twist the face in an ugly way as an expression of pain or strong dislike |
| 2 misunderstood | b having the ability to control your fear in a dangerous or difficult situation |
| 3 enliven | c interested in things |
| 4 courageous | d to make something more interesting |
| 5 exuberance | e strong anxiety and unhappiness, especially about personal problems |
| 6 grin | f an unusual part of someone's personality or an unusual habit |
| 7 angst | g energy |
| 8 quirk | h wanting very much to do or have something, especially something interesting or enjoyable |
| 9 engaged | i having qualities that people do not recognise or appreciate |
| 10 eager | j a wide smile |

2 Read the article quite quickly. What sorts of portraits did the judges generally prefer?

Teenage self-portraits

When The Times invited anyone aged 11 to 18 to submit a self-portrait, the response was phenomenal.

You were interested in how your face and hair looked. We were interested in honesty, courage and lack of self-consciousness. And on Monday our mutual concerns met. A panel of judges that included a professor of drawing, Stephen Farthing; the Turner Prize-winning artist Grayson Perry; and myself, an art critic, assembled to assess the entries for the Tate Times Drawing Challenge. The competition invited anyone from 11 to 18 to pick up their pencils and submit a self-portrait, the best of which would be displayed in the Tate. There were more than 1,000 entries.

A self-portrait can be about total honesty. But, equally, it can be all about ways of deceiving. Artists can rival actors when it comes to obscuring or making themselves look better. Think of the difference between that public face that you practise in the mirror and that embarrassing grimace in the camera snap. The construction of an image involves dozens of decisions. To study a self-portrait is to understand how an artist wants to be seen. In the case of young people it would seem that for every pretty-faced teenager who would like to imagine themselves as some soft-focus fashion model, there is another who is keen for the world to know that they are lurking alone and misunderstood in their rooms. Despite all the worst intentions, a self-portrait reveals how its sitter sees the world. The judges were looking for a vision that seemed enlivening or truthful, courageous or unselfconsciously fresh. Sometimes the panel burst out laughing at the sheer exuberance – though that was mostly in the work of the younger entrants, before the toothy grins gave way to grimacing teenage angst. There were pictures of young people doing anything from brushing their teeth, to donning funny hats, to listening to iPods. But the

most interesting images were less self-consciously presented: it was as if the sitters had been caught unprepared.

The judges tended to prefer the pictures in which the artist had really tried to look in a mirror rather than copy the surface of a photograph. 'The best images,' says Stephen Farthing, professor of drawing at University of the Arts, London, 'are those done by someone who has spent time drawing from life, not just trying to make pictures that look as if they are finished.' Most of the most obviously perfect images were passed over by the panel. 'The distortions and quirks are where the subconscious leaks out,' Grayson Perry says.

It was notable how many entrants mapped out the spots on their faces. Clearly this matters a lot to a teenager. Hair was another obsession, though several got so caught up that their images were more like advertisements for L'Oréal. They weren't worth it. Most



3 Read the text again and underline where it answers the following six questions. Then work in pairs and summarise your answers in your own words.

- 1 In the first paragraph, what does the writer say the judges discovered?
- 2 According to the writer, what do all self-portraits have in common?
- 3 How did the children's work generally differ from that of the adolescents?
- 4 How did the judges generally feel about the way the competitors drew their hair?
- 5 According to the writer, what is the English Martyrs Sixth Form College an example of?
- 6 In the final paragraph, what does the writer say about contemporary young people from the competition?

judges preferred the bad-hair days of entrants such as 13-year-old Daniel Adkins, in whose self-portrait the hair took on a character all of its own.

Drawing may be unfashionable – and not least in our art colleges – but it was heartening to see not only how naturally talented so many of the entrants were, but also how naturally drawing could be taught. Three of the self-portraits were by pupils of the English Martyrs Sixth Form College, Hartlepool. Where some schools submitted work that seemed identical, here, it seems, is a teacher who knows how to tease out and develop innate talent. And that matters.

Drawing is a means of expression as much as writing and mathematics. It's a tool to be sharpened so that you can take it out when you need it and do whatever you want. But what does this competition tell us about the entrants? It offered a portrait of young people who are engaged, enthusiastic and eager. Once, young people aspired to be bankers and doctors and lawyers. But who wants to go to the office when they could be an artist?

From *The Times*

Exam advice

- First read the text quickly to get a general idea of what it is about.
- Read the first question, find where it is answered in the text and underline the words in the text which answer it.
- Read each of the options A–D carefully and choose the one which matches the meaning of the text.
- Deal with the other questions one by one in the same way.

4 Now, for questions 1–6 below, choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

- 1 In the first paragraph, the writer says the judges discovered that
 - A they shared the same objectives as the competitors.
 - B both entrants and judges were equally satisfied with the results.
 - C the entrants' and the judges' differing objectives were achieved.
 - D the winning entries combined good looks with other positive qualities.
- 2 According to the writer, what do all self-portraits have in common?
 - A They reflect exactly what the artist sees in the mirror.
 - B They are used to improve the artist's image.
 - C They deceive both the artist and the viewer.
 - D They reflect the artist's attitudes and concerns.
- 3 How did the children's work generally differ from that of the adolescents?
 - A It was livelier.
 - B It was more honest.
 - C It was more absurd.
 - D It showed more self-awareness.
- 4 How does the writer feel about the way competitors drew their hair?
 - A It suited them better when it was untidy.
 - B It deserved more attention from the artists.
 - C It was more attractive than their spots.
 - D It took up too much time for some artists.
- 5 The English Martyrs Sixth Form College is an example of
 - A how schools can help pupils to develop their natural abilities.
 - B why schools should teach unfashionable subjects.
 - C how some schools teach all their pupils to draw in the same style.
 - D why only naturally gifted pupils should be taught how to draw.
- 6 In the final paragraph, what impression does the writer have of those who took part in the competition?
 - A They suffer from the typical anxieties of teenagers.
 - B They are extremely interested in what they are doing.
 - C They generally prefer drawing to writing or mathematics.
 - D They are more artistically talented than previous generations.

Grammar

Avoiding repetition

- 1 Look at these extracts from Reading and Use of English Part 5 and write one word in each gap. Then check your answers by looking back at the text.
- 1 The competition invited anyone from 11 to 18 to submit a self-portrait, the best of would be displayed in the Tate. (para 1)
 - 2 For every pretty-faced teenager who would like to imagine as some soft-focus fashion model there is who is keen for the world to know that they are lurking alone. (para 2)
 - 3 The best images are done by someone who has spent time drawing from life, not just trying to make pictures that look as if are finished. (para 3)
 - 4 It was notable how many entrants mapped out the spots on their faces. Clearly matters a lot to a teenager. (para 4)
 - 5 Most judges preferred the bad-hair days of entrants such as 13-year-old Daniel Adkins, in self-portrait the hair took on a character all of its own. (para 4)
 - 6 Here, it seems, is a teacher who knows how to tease out and develop innate talent. And matters. (para 5)

→ page 164 Language reference: Avoiding repetition

- 2  Exam candidates often make mistakes when using pronouns and determiners. Correct the mistake in each of these sentences. In some cases there is more than one possible answer.

- 1 I wasn't happy about my hotel room. I said it to the receptionist but she didn't do anything about it.
- 2 There are several umbrellas in the stand in the hall. I'd advise you to take it if you're going for a walk.
- 3 I'd always wanted a portable DVD player and when I was given it as a birthday present, I thought it was wonderful.
- 4 Some of the machines broke down quite often, but when things like these happened we just called a technician.
- 5 The lecturers will give you a detailed explanation of the subject. You may not be able to understand all, but you should be able to get a general idea.
- 6 There was a long queue at the ice cream parlour because most of the children wanted it.
- 7 We're looking for a new accountant and it is why I'm writing to you.
- 8 You should aim to arrive at any time that's convenient for yourself.

- 3 Rewrite the following to reduce the number of words and avoid repetition.

- 1 I've been to two exhibitions at the National Gallery this year. The two exhibitions focused on 17th century painters.
I've been to two exhibitions at the National Gallery this year. Both focused on 17th century painters.
- 2 Fewer and fewer people listen to classical music. The fact that fewer and fewer people listen to classical music means that less classical music is being recorded.
- 3 I have to read lots of books for my Business Studies course. The books I enjoy most are the books on management theory.
- 4 I'm hoping to be given a pay rise. Being given a pay rise will mean I can buy a better car.
- 5 I want Karl, Pau, Ludmila and Mar to come to the meeting. I've told Karl. Can you tell Pau, Ludmila and Mar?
- 6 Marina doesn't like spending a lot of money on clothes, so she tends to buy second-hand clothes.
- 7 My mother asked you to help her and she'd have been so happy if you'd helped her.
- 8 When Raul feels strongly about something, he says he feels strongly about something.
- 9 She didn't do the shopping because no one asked her to do the shopping.
- 10 Someone left a message on the answering machine but the person didn't leave the person's name.

Vocabulary

Adjective–noun collocations (2)

- 1 Look at this sentence from Listening Part 3.

I've done a fair number of portraits that way and it seems to work better.

One of the adjectives below cannot be used with the word *number* to form a collocation. Which one?

fair large huge big small limited

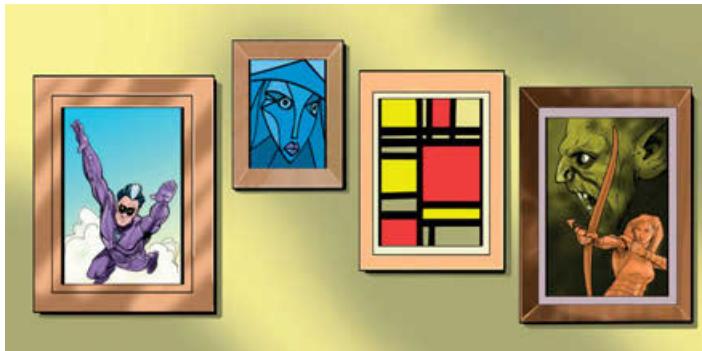
- 2  Candidates often make the mistake of using *big* with the nouns in bold in sentences 1–10. Which of the adjectives in the box can be used to form collocations with each noun? (In all cases several answers are possible.)

amazing considerable endless good great heavy high huge large loud satisfactory terrible tremendous valuable wide

- 1 Pascual is very busy: he spends a amount of time studying.
- 2 Our local supermarket sells a(n) range of coffees, so you should find what you're looking for.



- 3 I found it difficult to concentrate on the conversation because of the noise coming from the neighbours' television.
- 4 Your decision about whether to go to art school or study economics is of importance, so think it over carefully.
- 5 Magda was very late for the meeting because of the traffic on the motorway.
- 6 Meeting such a distinguished artist was a(n) experience and quite unforgettable.
- 7 Quite a(n) percentage of our students go on to become professional artists – in the region of 60%.
- 8 I think Jaroslaw has made progress with his drawing and is showing real talent.
- 9 Colin is a teacher with experience of teaching both adults and children.
- 10 The paintings in this gallery show a(n) variety of different styles.



- 3 Work in pairs. Where there was more than one possibility in Exercise 2, do the different alternatives change the meaning of the sentence? If so, how?

Reading and Use of English | Part 2

- 1 You will read a text about art in offices. Read the text quite quickly without paying attention to the gaps. According to the text, what are the benefits of having art in the workplace?
- 2 For questions 1–8, read the text again and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

Art for offices

(0) As a professional photographer and environmental psychologist, Wayne Hill knows (1) needs to be done with bland-coloured offices and windowless conference rooms: hang art on the walls. It cuts (2) on stress and raises productivity and creative thinking. 'Our best memories are often of a magic moment in (3) of the world's beautiful places. We can be taken back to them with realistic landscape photographs.'

(4) questioned, most employees say they are more likely to be inspired by good art than by (5) endless supply of the finest coffee. Most workers want some form of art at work. More surprisingly, perhaps, nearly two-thirds of office workers say they have never been consulted (6) the décor in their office. However, attitudes are changing. The kind of image companies now try to project through art is no (7) just aimed at customers. Now art is spread throughout the building (8) the benefit of employees.

Adapted from *The Observer*

- 3 Use these clues to check your answers to Exercise 2.

- 1 a word which means 'the thing which'
- 2 part of a phrasal verb which means 'reduce'
- 3 a word which indicates that it's a particular place
- 4 part of a time phrase or conditional phrase
- 5 *supply* is a countable noun – what word is needed before it?
- 6 a preposition used with *consult*
- 7 part of a phrase that means 'not any more'
- 8 a preposition



- 4 Work in small groups. Imagine you work together in the same bland-coloured office. Your office manager has asked how you think the office can be made a more pleasant place to work. Below are some of her suggestions.

Manager's suggestions

- some indoor plants
- our holiday photos on the walls
- an aquarium
- our kids' drawings on the walls
- some original art

- 1 Discuss how her suggestions would improve the office atmosphere.
- 2 Discuss which two would be most suitable.
- 5 Read this text quickly without paying attention to the gaps. Does the writer think graffiti is art or vandalism?

Graffiti: art or vandalism?

(0)Until..... recently, spray-painting a wall would land you in jail, but these days even politicians are associating with graffiti artists in an effort to gain popularity and internationally acclaimed artist Banksy, (1) works of art make millions, has transformed the way the community views street art. However, many still see (2) as a crime, especially as the cost of removing graffiti from walls runs (3) millions of euros every year. Last May, members of a gang which had left a six-year trail of destruction on trains as (4) apart as Australia and Japan were jailed for eight months (5) pleading guilty to conspiracy to commit criminal damage. (6) other form of art has ever divided people so strongly, even (7) the custom of leaving paintings on walls goes back to the days of cave art. No one would imagine scraping cave drawings off the walls of a cave, and a thousand years from now children may find (8) studying street artists in school.

adapted from *The Olive Press*

- 6 For questions 1–8, read the text and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

- 7 Work in small groups. What do you think: is graffiti art or vandalism?

Exam advice

- Read the text quite quickly to get a general idea of what it is about.
- Look at the words before and after the space and decide what type of word you need (an article, pronoun, preposition, etc.).
- Check whether the word you need refers to some other part of the text.
- Words may be part of fixed phrases or phrasal verbs, e.g. *instead of*, *go along with*, etc.

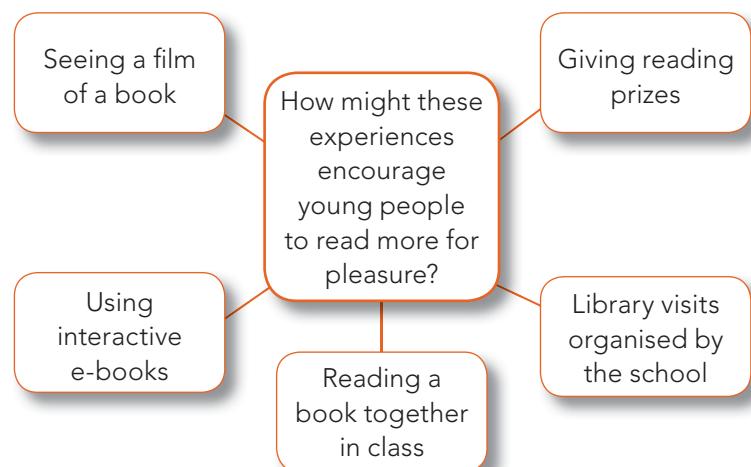


Speaking | Part 3

- 1**  **17** Work in pairs. Read the examiner's instruction below and look at the task. Then listen to extracts from two pairs of students doing the task and tick the correct box for each question.



Now I'd like you to talk about something together for about two minutes. Here are some ways of encouraging young people to spend more time reading and a question for you to discuss. Talk to each other about how successful each of these experiences might be in encouraging young people to read more for pleasure.



Which pair

- 1 doesn't start working on the task immediately?
- 2 deals with each suggestion on the task sheet in order?
- 3 spends a lot of time on one or two suggestions, so probably won't have time for all of them?
- 4 relates the suggestions to themselves personally?
- 5 shows most interest in their partner's reactions to the suggestions?

Pair A Pair B Both

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 2** Work in pairs.

- 1 Which pair do you think deals with the task better? Why?
- 2 How do you think each pair could improve their performance?

- 3** You will get higher marks in the exam if you use advanced vocabulary appropriately when speaking. Work in pairs. In what context did the candidates use each of these phrases? (You need not remember the exact words.)

- 1 they give me pleasure
- 2 the high point of the week
- 3 made me determined
- 4 I found it rather tedious
- 5 communicate her enthusiasm
- 6 out of obligation
- 7 get more involved
- 8 get distracted
- 9 picked up a reading habit
- 10 just another chore

- 4** Work in pairs. Do the task in Exercise 1, following the examiner's instructions. Try to use some phrases from Exercise 3.

- 5** Work in pairs. Look at the examiner's instruction for the second part of Speaking Part 3 and the list of strategies below. Then decide together which strategies would be good for this part of the task. Write Yes or No for each strategy and give a reason.



Now you have about a minute to decide which experience you think would be the most successful in encouraging young people to read more.



Strategies

- 1 Go over each of the options in turn again.
No. There isn't time – you need to reach a decision in one minute.
- 2 Suggest an option, give a reason and ask your partner's opinion.
- 3 Agree with the first option your partner suggests.
- 4 Disagree with the first option your partner suggests, give a reason, then suggest another option and give a reason.
- 5 Agree with the first option your partner suggests but then suggest an alternative and give a reason.
- 6 Disagree with everything your partner says in order to fill the time.



6  **18** Listen to Ivan and Anna doing the second part of the task. Which strategies do they use?

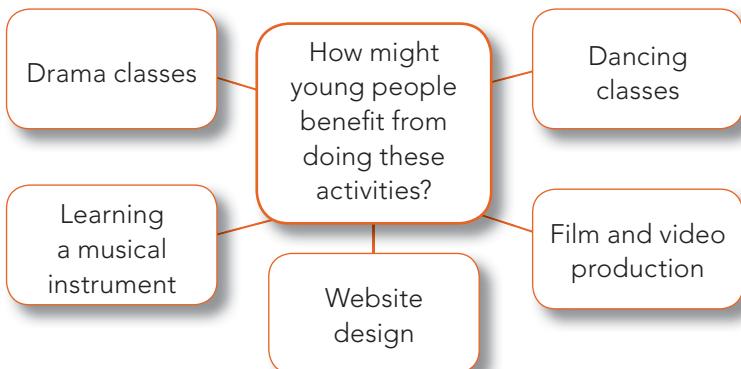
7 Work in pairs. Follow the examiner's instruction in Exercise 5, using one or two of the strategies from Exercise 5.

8 Work in pairs.

- 1 Read the examiner's instruction below. Then do the first part of the Speaking task.



Now I'd like you to talk about something together for about two minutes. Here are some creative or artistic activities which young people can study at school and a question for you to discuss. Talk to each other about how young people might benefit from doing each of these activities.



- 2 Read the examiner's next instruction and do the second part of the Speaking task.



Now you have a minute to decide which activity it is most important for young people to study at school.



Exam advice

When you discuss the first part of the task, you needn't talk about all of the options but you should make suggestions, ask your partner's opinion, listen carefully to what he/she says and respond to his/her ideas in order to have a natural conversation or discussion.

When you discuss the second part of the task, it isn't necessary to reach agreement, but you should

- discuss which option(s) to choose and give reasons for these choice(s)
- try to reach a decision.

Writing | Part 2

A review

- 1 Read the writing task below and underline the key points you must deal with.

You have seen this announcement in an international magazine.

We receive a lot of letters from readers asking us to recommend novels to read. We believe that they should read novels that they will find interesting and we'd like to publish reviews of novels which other readers have particularly enjoyed. Send us a review which describes the novel, says what you liked about it and explains why you recommend it.

Write your review.

- 2 Work in pairs. Decide which of these elements you should include in your review.

- a biographical information about the author
- b a summary of the whole plot
- c a general synopsis of the plot and characters and why they're interesting
- d a description of the type of book, the setting and what it's about
- e a mention of things you particularly like
- f a recommendation for your readers and reasons for it
- g a criticism of things you didn't like
- h suggestions for other books that you think your readers would enjoy

- 3 Read the review of *Cold Mountain* without paying attention to the highlighting. Complete the paragraph plan for this review.

Plan

Para 1:type of novel, setting, outline of story.....

Para 2:

Para 3:

- 4 Does the review give you a clear idea of what *Cold Mountain* is about? Having read the review, do you think you would enjoy the novel? Why (not)?



Cold Mountain by Charles Frazier

Cold Mountain is a historical novel set in North Carolina during the American Civil War. It tells the story of the main characters, Inman and Ada. Inman is a deserter from the army who makes a **hazardous** journey across the country to join Ada, the woman he loves. The novel switches between Inman's journey and Ada's life on her farm, where she struggles to survive after her father's death.

The novel contains a gallery of interesting characters. Inman is the **thoughtful**, **observant** hero who is **desperate** to escape the war and stay alive. He is motivated by love, but also capable of extreme violence. Ada, the heroine, comes from a **well-off**, **sheltered** background and at first seems incapable of surviving in **harsh** conditions, but as the novel progresses she becomes **self-sufficient** and decisive. She is helped by Ruby, a **tough** but lovable country girl. Also, during his journey, Inman meets many extraordinary minor characters who are trying to stay alive in unusual ways in wild, **remote** places.

I was fascinated by the **vivid** descriptions of American rural life at the time. I was also caught up in the suspense of each dangerous situation that Inman and Ada encounter during the story. If you enjoy historical novels, you will really love this book with its wonderful dialogues and its detailed observations and descriptions of life in nineteenth-century America. You will be transported into a world where love and kindness contrast with horror and cruelty to create a novel which is **unlike** any novel you have ever read before.



4 You will score higher marks in the exam if you use a range of appropriate advanced vocabulary. Match the highlighted adjectives in the review with their synonym or definition from the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*.

- 1 able to provide everything you need without help from other people
- 2 carefully considering things
- 3 producing clear, powerful, detailed images in the mind
- 4 dangerous
- 5 different from
- 6 feeling that you have no hope and are ready to do anything to change the bad situation you are in
- 7 good or quick at noticing things
- 8 protected too much
- 9 rich
- 10 strong
- 11 unpleasantly hard and demanding
- 12 a long way from any towns or cities

5 Work in pairs. Which novel could each of you write about? Tell each other a little about

- the type of novel, the setting and what it's about
- the plot and characters
- what you particularly liked – why you would recommend it.

6 Plan and write your own answer to the task in Exercise 1.

→ page 189 Writing reference: Reviews

Exam information and advice

Writing a review tests your ability to describe and give your opinions about something you have experienced (e.g. a book, a film, a café or restaurant, a language course) and to tell your readers whether or not you recommend it. You may be asked to compare two things of the same type in your review.

When writing a review

- consider what information will be of interest to your readers (e.g. where is the language course? What are the teachers like? Is it good value for money?)
- express your opinions of the different elements you decide to include in your review, so that your readers have a clear idea whether or not you are recommending what you are reviewing.

Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 5

Vocabulary

- 1 Read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap.

A night to remember

Anna had never been one to (1) unnecessary risks, but that evening was different. She knew there was a certain (2) of danger in her plan, but she felt quietly confident. She knew that if she succeeded in getting there by daybreak, she would experience a great (3) of achievement. She'd been (4) an eye on the weather all week, so it wasn't simply a question of keeping her fingers (5) and hoping for the best.

She picked up her overnight bag, left the house and got into her car. In no time, she'd covered fifty kilometres, and was still feeling good about her adventure. Then, without any warning, the car lurched to the right and left the road. The last thing she remembers was her head hitting the steering wheel. When she (6) round, she heard the sirens and saw the flashing lights of the (7) services as they arrived.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1 A make | B experience | C take | D feel |
| 2 A element | B factor | C aspect | D component |
| 3 A perception | B sense | C sensation | D recognition |
| 4 A having | B watching | C putting | D keeping |
| 5 A together | B crossed | C folded | D closed |
| 6 A turned | B came | C woke | D went |
| 7 A emergency | B health | C urgent | D safety |

Grammar

- 2 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change this word. Use three to six words including the word given.

1 I can't wait to start my new job.

FORWARD

I'm really my new job.

2 Thank goodness we avoided the floods.

LUCKY

We the floods.

- 3 I wish I hadn't phoned my sister.

REGRET

I that phone call to my sister.

- 4 We can't buy a new car – we don't have enough money.

AFFORD

We a new car.

- 5 He says he's never seen her before.

DENIES

He her before.

- 6 We paid our hotel bill when we checked out.

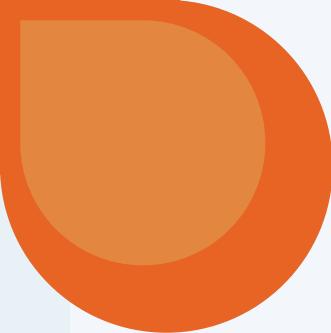
SETTLED

It wasn't until our hotel bill.

- 3 Complete these texts with the infinitive or -ing form of the verbs in brackets. One verb is in the passive.

Three of the people trapped on the third floor managed ¹ (climb) out onto the roof of the hotel, where they jumped to safety. The other two refused ² (leave) their room and waited ³ (rescue). The manager admitted ⁴ (wait) for 20 minutes before ⁵ (phone) the fire brigade. He claimed that he had attempted ⁶ (put out) the fire himself before ⁷ (realise) the seriousness of the situation. He apologised to his colleagues for ⁸ (put) their lives at risk.

The climbers refused ⁹ (take) the weather forecast seriously and ended up ¹⁰ (get) lost when it started ¹¹ (snow). Despite this, they went on ¹² (climb), but were eventually forced ¹³ (admit) defeat. It was then that they tried ¹⁴ (phone) mountain rescue ¹⁵ (ask) for help. However, because there was no phone signal on the mountain, they could not ¹⁶ (contact) the team and spent the night on the mountain, ¹⁷ (regret) their decision ¹⁸ (ignore) the forecast.



Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 6

Vocabulary

- 1 In each of the sentences below, cross out the adjective in *italics* which does not collocate with the noun in **bold**.

- 1 A *high / big / significant percentage* of accident victims coming to hospital have been doing DIY at home.
- 2 For me, visiting Paris is always a *great / wide / tremendous experience* – it really is my favourite city.
- 3 Giovanni attaches *considerable / great / large importance* to the way he dresses, so he always gets up extra early.
- 4 If you want to do a gap year before going to university, there is a(n) *endless / huge / deep range* of possibilities for you to choose from.
- 5 Martina is showing a lot of promise and she's made *high / considerable / satisfactory progress* with her English this term.
- 6 My brother has spent a *huge / heavy / considerable amount* of money renovating an old farmhouse – I don't know how he can afford it.
- 7 They're doing road works in the street and the **noise** is so *loud / terrible / big* that I can hardly hear myself think!
- 8 One of the attractions of this job is the *endless / high / wide variety* of different tasks I have to perform.

Grammar

- 2 Rewrite the following sentences in order to avoid repetition of words and phrases.

- 1 'Do you think you'll get a holiday in July?' 'I hope I get a holiday in July!'
'Do you think you'll get a holiday in July?' 'I hope so!'
- 2 When a child feels unhappy, the child will ask for the child's mother more often than the child will ask for the child's father.
- 3 Gustav bought a large house by the sea about ten years ago. Buying a large house by the sea turned out to be a good investment.
- 4 Leonardo lived in Canada as a child. The fact that he lived in Canada is the reason why he speaks such fluent English.

- 5 Svetlana spent several months trying to decide which car to buy and she finally bought a car last week.
- 6 Matthew likes reading novels. Matthew especially likes reading romantic novels.
- 7 Violeta bought apples in the market. Violeta put some of the apples in the fruit bowl. Violeta used the other apples to make an apple pie.
- 8 Narayan has had two jobs. The two jobs were in a bank. Unfortunately the two jobs were not well paid.
- 9 There are five official languages in Spain and Manolo speaks all of the five official languages of Spain.
- 10 Pete had never spoken to Ann, although Pete had often wanted to speak to Ann.

- 3 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

- 1 The photo and the portrait look identical to me.
DIFFERENCE
I can't see the photo and the portrait.
- 2 The judges were generally less keen on portraits painted from photos than portraits painted from life.
TENDED
The judges on portraits painted from life than portraits painted from photos.
- 3 This painting does not appear to be finished.
LOOK
This painting is finished.
- 4 Several of the applicants were not considered because of their age.
PASSED
Several of the applicants to their age.
- 5 For many teenagers, their looks are their highest priority.
MATTERS
Appearance is many teenagers.
- 6 It's encouraging to discover that the group is both talented and enthusiastic.
ONLY
It's encouraging to discover that the group shows as well.

Starting off

1 What do you enjoy doing in your free time? Choose which of these types of activities you prefer and give examples of specific activities you enjoy. Then compare your preferences with other students.

Activity types

- indoor
- competitive sports or games
- lone activities
- active: being creative or productive
- using electronic technology
- outdoor
- non-competitive sports or games
- social activities (with other people)
- passive: watching others doing things
- without technology of any kind

2 Discuss these questions.

- 1 How have people's leisure activities changed over the last fifty years? What can people of your generation do that your parents and grandparents couldn't do?
- 2 Do you combine work or study with leisure? For example, do you listen to music, text friends, or spend time on social networking sites while you are working or studying?
- 3 How, when and where do you listen to music?

2

3

4

5

Listening | Part 4

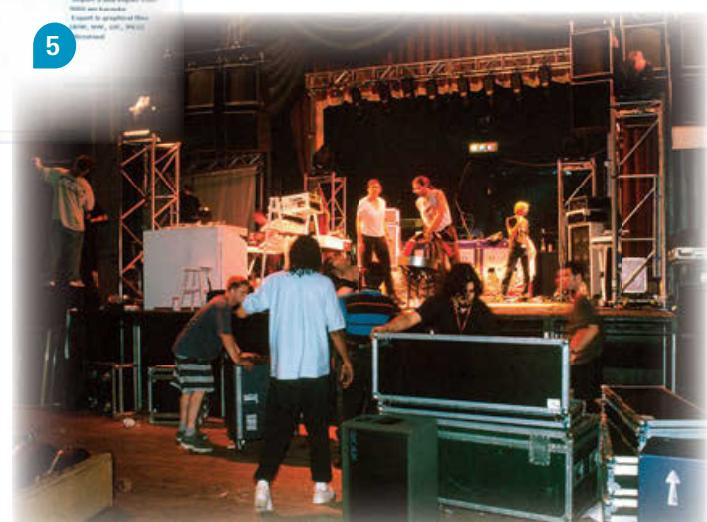
1 **► 19** You are going to hear ten snippets of music. Listen and match each with one of the types of music in the box. Which of these types of music do you enjoy listening to?

classical disco folk jazz Latin opera pop
rap rock

2 What is it that you particularly like about the music you listen to? Exchange ideas with a partner.

3 You will hear five short extracts in which people are talking about an aspect of music which is important to them.

- 1 Before you listen, look at the photos and discuss what the people are doing.
- 2 Read through Tasks One and Two in Exercise 4. Can you match the people listed in Task One (A–H) with any of the photos?



- 4  20 Listen to the five speakers and do Tasks One and Two.

TASK ONE

For questions 1–5, choose from the list (A–H) the person who is speaking.

- A a composer
- B a festival worker
- C an orchestra member
- D a folk musician
- E someone with varied musical tastes
- F a rock musician
- G a trombone player
- H a novice dancer

Speaker 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 1
Speaker 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 2
Speaker 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 3
Speaker 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 4
Speaker 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 5

TASK TWO

For questions 6–10, choose from the list (A–H) the feelings expressed by the speakers.

- A gratitude for an invention
- B disappointment at a failure
- C cautious optimism about an ambitious project
- D gratitude to musicians
- E satisfaction in having contributed to a successful event
- F relief that a project has succeeded
- G enthusiasm for a new interest
- H pride in a tradition

Speaker 1	<input type="checkbox"/> 6
Speaker 2	<input type="checkbox"/> 7
Speaker 3	<input type="checkbox"/> 8
Speaker 4	<input type="checkbox"/> 9
Speaker 5	<input type="checkbox"/> 10

Exam advice

- Before you listen, read both tasks, underlining the key ideas in each option.
- Listen for words and phrases which mean the same as the key ideas you have underlined. Listen for the answers to both tasks. You may hear the answer to Task Two before the answer to Task One.
- Wait until each speaker has finished talking before you choose your answer.

Vocabulary

Complex prepositions

- 1 Some prepositions are phrases of three words, for example:

I've travelled all over the world and played *in front of* audiences of thousands.

As *well as* the kind of instruments I was familiar with ...

Complete these sentences with the correct prepositions.

- 1 Last night's concert was performed aid a charitable trust.
- 2 These remarkable sounds were produced means magnetic waves.
- 3 She's bought an electric guitar place her old acoustic one.
- 4 We couldn't sleep account the bright light outside our window.
- 5 behalf the whole family, I'd like to thank you for being with us today.
- 6 I am writing to you regard your recent enquiry.
- 7 His grandfather played music very much keeping folk traditions.
- 8 We worked for five hours a day exchange meals and accommodation.

- 2 Match each three-word phrase from Exercise 1 with the correct meaning.

- a because of
- b fitting appropriately with
- c on the subject of
- d in order to help
- e in return for
- f representing
- g as a substitute for
- h by using

- 5  20 In each of these sentences, which word did the speaker use? When you have chosen, listen to the recording again to check your answers.

- 1 He sang at family assemblies / gatherings / meetings.
- 2 The rhythm was so conspicuous / defective / infectious that some of the audience got up and bopped about.
- 3 I have it with me all the time, whether I'm commuting / computing / conducting to work, exercising or just chilling.
- 4 We're planning to make a recording, but the linguistics / logistics / statistics are a nightmare.
- 5 I've just come back from Womad in Singapore – it was awful / awesome / fearsome.

Reading and Use of English | Part 7

1 Work in pairs. You are going to read an article about virtual online worlds.

- 1 What do you know about virtual worlds?
- 2 Why do you think people create avatars in virtual worlds? (An avatar is an image or virtual representation of a person.)

2 Read the main part of the article (but not the missing paragraphs A–G).

- 1 When did the first virtual world games appear?
- 2 Why did Second Life become less popular?
- 3 How does the writer expect virtual worlds to develop in the future?

3 Read paragraphs A–G. Note down a phrase that summarises the main idea of each paragraph.

Example:

Para A: what users can do in Second Life

4 Now choose from the paragraphs A–G the one which fits each gap in the text. There is one extra paragraph which you do not need to use.

Your guide to virtual worlds

Virtual worlds are online three-dimensional spaces where you can interact with other people, collect items and build structures, and communicate via a virtual representative of yourself called an avatar. They have been influenced by various science fiction writers, along with the movie *The Matrix*.

1

The origin of virtual worlds goes back to early games such as Maze War, which was developed in the early 1970s. The game included eyeballs as avatars, there were maps showing the levels, and it was one of the first games played on linked computers and eventually on a forerunner of the Internet.

2

In a research paper they wrote: 'At the core of our vision is the idea that cyberspace is a multiple-participant environment. It seems to us that the things that are important to the inhabitants of such an environment are the capabilities available to them, the characteristics of the other people they encounter there, and the ways in which these various participants can affect one another.'

3

Most early virtual worlds like these faded because the hardware and bandwidth requirements were too stringent, and they never established hardcore user bases as dot-com funding dried up at the turn of the millennium.

4

It was this range of creative possibilities that grabbed the attention of the media and marketers, who saw it as a new way of communicating and selling online. *BusinessWeek* ran a cover story called *My Virtual Life*, explaining breathlessly that 'big advertisers are taking notice'. *Wired* magazine ran a special travel guide to Second Life, while Reuters assigned a full-time reporter to cover news that unfolded there.

5

The fact is that even though computer hardware and bandwidth have improved over the years, Second Life still requires sophisticated computer systems and a lot of practice to master the interface. The number of registered avatars is misleading: many people simply try it out and give up, while others have multiple avatars. A more representative number for regular users is the number who have logged in during the past seven days, which is quite low.

6

Despite these difficulties, media companies are still fascinated with virtual worlds and continue to develop them. For example, MTV created a whole range of virtual worlds based on the content of its original television shows and other companies have created worlds for students and teens. Even if today's Second Life doesn't satisfy the mass market, dozens of other virtual worlds will certainly spring up, designed to cater for specific tastes and interests.



- A** However, while other worlds were withering, Linden Labs was developing their new virtual world, Second Life, which still exists today. Here you can create your own objects and buildings, and you have ownership rights over them. 'Linden dollars' are a currency which you can trade with real dollars. Real-world businesses can sell just about anything you could possibly want in the virtual world. Universities offer courses through Second Life, and bands play live shows and chat with fans in special in-world venues.
- B** That presents a problem for the many marketers such as Coca-Cola and Adidas who set up virtual spaces in Second Life, only to have them largely vacant. These businesses spent money – in the tens of thousands of dollars – to build a virtual island as an experiment, but then got little payoff. Residents are dispersed throughout the virtual world, making it hard for companies to get their attention en masse, and there's a limit to the number of people who can congregate in one place without crashing Linden's servers.
- C** Later, with the rise of the web, virtual worlds started booming. The Active Worlds platform allowed people to join for free or pay a monthly fee for premium features, while The Palace was a more chat-oriented world that became popular in entertainment circles.
- D** Second Life is built from user-generated content: its software provides the tools to design a dress, construct a building or carry out a range of other real-world activities. Its population includes a pet manufacturer, a nightclub owner, a car maker, a fashion designer, an architect, a tour guide and a property speculator.

5 Work in pairs. What do you think the phrases in *italics* from the article mean? What clues did you use to guess the meanings?

- 1 These worlds differ from *multi-player online* games.
- 2 ... eventually a *forerunner of the Internet*.
- 3 ... as long as they couldn't *hack into the system*.
- 4 The Palace was a more *chat-oriented* world.
- 5 The *media buzz* led many more people to explore virtual worlds.
- 6 These business spent money ... but then got *little payoff*.
- 7 ... making it difficult for companies to get their attention *en masse*.

6 Discuss these questions.

- 1 What kind of new online virtual world would attract you?
- 2 What would your avatar be like?

Exam advice

- First, read the main body of the text carefully to familiarise yourself with the contents of each paragraph and how the whole text is structured.
- Then read each of the missing paragraphs one by one. Pay close attention to the content and place each paragraph in a gap after you have read it.

E The media buzz led many more people to explore virtual worlds for the first time and Linden claims to have registered nearly 10 million avatars for Second Life since its inception. But many users ended up disappointed.

F The next stage was when Lucas Film Games, a video game publisher, developed Habitat, a more two-dimensional environment that included humanoid avatars, and people could access the game through an early online service called Quantum Link. Developers Morningstar and Farmer, who still maintain a blog about their experience, say they generally allow Habitat residents to set their own rules governing the world – as long as they couldn't hack into the system.

G These worlds differ from massive multi-player online games (MMOGs) because they don't offer battles against monsters or have an overriding mission for players. For example, a resident of the virtual world Second Life might spend time in that space accumulating virtual land, rather than striving to complete quests as they would in many popular MMOGs.

Grammar

Linking ideas: relative and participle clauses

- 1** Complete these extracts from Reading and Use of English Part 7 with a word or phrase from the list.

based explaining in which making played that where which who

- 1 Virtual worlds are online three-dimensional spaces you can interact with other people.
- 2 The origin of virtual worlds goes back to early games such as Maze War, was developed in the early 1970s.
- 3 It was one of the first games on linked computers.
- 4 The things that are important are the ways these various participants can affect one another.
- 5 Residents are dispersed throughout the virtual world, it difficult for companies to get their attention.
- 6 'Linden dollars' are a currency you can trade with real dollars.
- 7 It grabbed the attention of the media and marketers, saw it as a new way of communicating.
- 8 *Business Week* ran a story called *My Virtual Life*, breathlessly that 'big advertisers are taking notice'.
- 9 MTV created a range of virtual worlds on the content of its original television shows.

- 2** Discuss these questions on the sentences in Exercise 1.

- 1 a Which sentences contain a relative clause?
b Which of these are defining clauses (containing essential information)?
c Which are non-defining clauses (containing additional, non-essential information)?
- 2 a Which sentences contain a participle clause?
b Which of these use a present participle and which use a past participle?
c In which sentences does the participle clause replace a relative clause?
d In which sentences does the participle clause link two actions which happen at the same time?
- 3 In which of the sentences could the relative pronoun be left out? Why?

→ page 171 Language reference: Linking ideas

- 3** Complete these sentences with relative pronouns. You may also have to include a preposition.

- 1 Farmville, is a popular online game, is usually played through Facebook.
- 2 Players have a 'home' farm and several themed farms they can grow a range of crops.
- 3 The main way a player earns money is by harvesting crops or visiting neighbours.
- 4 People I know quite well spend several hours a day playing Farmville.
- 5 Anyone has experienced it knows all too well – video game addiction is real.
- 6 There are some people lives have been changed forever by their addiction to video games.
- 7 There are many adults and children video games are an escape from the pressures of real life.
- 8 A self-confessed addict, has been hooked on Second Life for years, admits it causes him problems.

Are there any sentences in which the relative pronoun can be left out?

- 4** Choose the correct participles in these sentences.

- 1 We came out of the cinema quivered / quivering with fright.
- 2 We'd seen a film based / having based on a science fiction short story.
- 3 Reading / Having read the story, I was interested to see how they would turn it into a film.
- 4 It was only the second film made / having been made by this director.
- 5 I'd read a review of the film in a magazine specialising / specialised in science fiction stories.

Linking ideas: apposition

- 5** It is often possible to link information about someone/something by putting two nouns or noun phrases next to each other, with no relative pronoun.

The next stage was when Lucas Film Games, a video game publisher, developed Habitat, a more two-dimensional environment.

Join these sentences using phrases in apposition.

- 1 *The Matrix* came out in 1999. It is a science fiction film.
- 2 Thomas Anderson is the central character. He is a computer programmer and a hacker.
- 3 The star of the film is Keanu Reeves. Keanu Reeves is a famous American actor.
- 4 The film popularised 'bullet time'. Bullet time is an effect which allows actions to be filmed at different speeds.

Reading and Use of English | Part 1

1 Work in pairs.

- 1 What is your favourite type of film?
 - 2 What is the best film you've seen in the last twelve months?
 - 3 How is going to the cinema different from watching a film on your television or computer at home?
 - 4 What do you know about Bollywood films? How are they different from Hollywood films?
- 2** Quickly read the article about Bollywood films. Does it confirm or contradict any of the ideas you have just discussed?
- 3** For questions 1–8, read the article again and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Exam advice

- First read the title and the whole text quickly to get a general idea of what it is about.
- Study the gapped sentences one by one, reading carefully before and after the gap.
- The four words you have to choose from will be similar in meaning but only one will fit correctly into the gap. You should consider dependent prepositions and other grammatical structures.
- If you are not sure which option is correct, discard the options you think are wrong and choose from the others.

4 Discuss these questions.

- 1 How would you explain the enduring popularity of musicals?
- 2 How do you feel about romantic films and fiction in general?
- 3 How important are traditional themes in films in your country?

The changing face of Bollywood

Bollywood is the name (0) to popular Mumbai-based Indian films. Bollywood films are generally musicals and contain catchy song-and-dance numbers, and a film's success often depends on the quality of such musical numbers. Indeed, a film's music is often (1) before the movie itself, as a way of generating advance publicity. Indian audiences expect value for money from their films, which must include a famous actor in the (2)

The (3) of Bollywood films have tended to be melodramatic, employing formulaic ingredients such as star-crossed lovers, angry parents, family (4) , corrupt politicians, and siblings (5) by fate. There have always been Indian films with more sophisticated stories, inside and outside the Bollywood tradition, but these often lose out at the box office to movies with more mass (6) Bollywood conventions are changing, however. Large Indian (7) in English-speaking countries and increased Western influence at home have made Bollywood films more like Hollywood films. Plots often feature westernised urbanites dating and dancing in discos, rather than the traditional (8) marriages.



- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| 0 A handed | B donated | C given | D conferred |
| 1 A emitted | B issued | C released | D announced |
| 2 A crew | B characters | C team | D cast |
| 3 A accounts | B plots | C scenes | D plays |
| 4 A feuds | B wars | C hostilities | D complaints |
| 5 A segregated | B separated | C lost | D detached |
| 6 A popularity | B appeal | C attraction | D lure |
| 7 A people | B residents | C populations | D inhabitants |
| 8 A arranged | B coordinated | C orchestrated | D set up |

Vocabulary

Money words

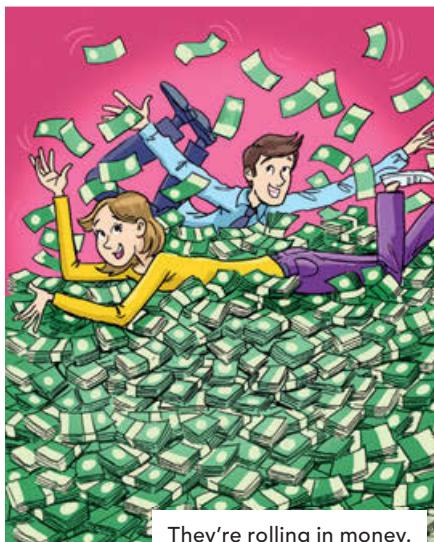
- 1 Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

borrow buy earn hire lend pay
rent sell

- We're a holiday cottage in the south of France for three weeks in the summer.
 - Thousands of people their living by and things online.
 - They're a dance band for their daughter's wedding in August.
 - I've asked my parents if they would me some money to buy a car. I'll it back when I can.
 - People say you shouldn't money from friends, but I don't agree.
- 2 Complete the questions below with ten of the verbs from the box. Then discuss the questions in pairs.

afford borrow burn buy cost cover
make meet pay raise sell shop
take out

- If you went for a job interview, how would you try to yourself?
- What would you do if you wanted to a quick buck?
- Do you believe that money can happiness?
- When you go shopping, for example for clothes, how do you – in cash or by card?
- Is there anything you can't to buy because it a fortune?
- If you were short of money, what would you do to make ends?
- Would you like to be able to a loan to buy a house or flat one day? Why (not)?
- What is the first thing you would buy if you had money to?
- How would you money for a charity you wanted to support?



They're rolling in money.



He's paid peanuts.

- 3 Complete the money idioms in these sentences by choosing the correct noun in *italics*. Then discuss in pairs what each idiom means. The idioms are in **bold**.

- They say they want to help the disabled, but they should put their **money where their mouth / pocket is**.
- You need to be a bit more careful with your money. **Money doesn't grow on bushes / trees**, you know.
- The shop wouldn't accept a cheque or a credit card. They insisted on **hard cash / money**.
- Hotels are always expensive but we had to **pay through the hand / nose** for the room we wanted.
- I always prefer to **pay my own road / way**, so you pay your bill and I'll pay mine.
- I've no idea where he gets it from, but Martin's been **spending money like air / water** recently.
- It's the local council that has to decide whether to build a new school. It holds the **purse / wallet strings**.
- We couldn't afford a new car – I'm afraid it would **break the savings / bank**.

- 4 Each of these sentences contains one or more errors made by exam candidates. Correct the mistakes.

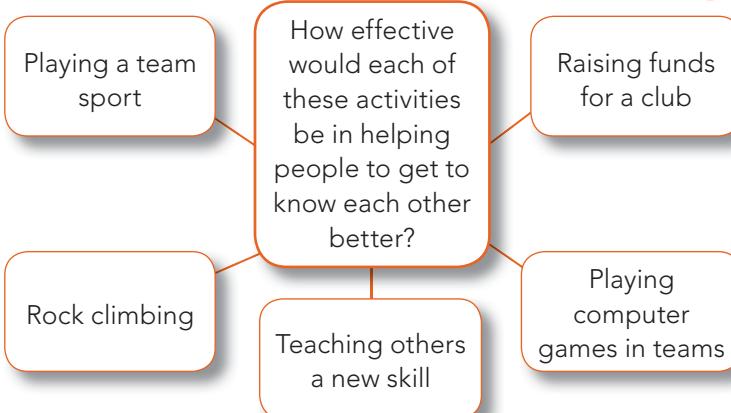
- I'm sure you'll enjoy the job – and don't forget, you'll be gaining good money.
- As you will be using your own car and staying in hotels, the company will afford all your expenses and spend you a daily meal allowance.
- You can pay your ticket here or on the bus.
- I can borrow you some money, but please give it back tomorrow.
- You can rent all the books you need from the college library – at no cost.
- Save time and money if you buy more than \$200.
- In the last month we have earned over £2,000 for charity – most of it from public donations.

Speaking | Part 4

- 1 Work in pairs. Read the examiner's instruction and the written prompts for a Part 3 task. Discuss the question with your partner.



Here are some team-building activities which have been suggested for new members of a social club. Talk to each other about how effective these activities would be in helping people to get to know each other better.



- 2 Read these Part 4 questions that might follow the Part 3 task above. Which of the six questions would you most like to answer? Which would you find the most difficult to answer? Briefly exchange ideas in pairs.

- 1 Some people say that team-building activities are a waste of time. Do you agree?
- 2 What qualities does a person need to be a good team member?
- 3 What can managers do make sure their teams of employees work well together on a day-to-day basis?
- 4 Large clubs and organisations are more likely than small ones to organise team-building activities. Why do you think this is?
- 5 What problems can arise if individuals in a large organisation feel isolated or undervalued?
- 6 Is it always best to for people to avoid conflict with others? Why (not)?

- 3 Listen to two extracts from a Part 4 exam.

- 1 Which two questions from Exercise 2 are the candidates answering?
- 2 In each dialogue, what is the first speaker's main point?
- 3 Does the second speaker agree, partly agree or disagree?
- 4 What opinion would you give?

- 4 Now take turns with a partner to answer the questions in Exercise 2. After your turn, ask your partner's opinion about the question you have answered. Use some of the words in the box.

Nouns: achievement a common goal cooperation incentive

Verbs: appreciate compete contribute cooperate share support respect

Adjectives: constructive creative productive supportive worthwhile

Exam advice

- Listen carefully to all the examiner's questions – you may be asked the same question as your partner.
- Listen to your partner's answers to questions, as you may have to respond to these.
- Try to use a range of expressions to express and justify opinions and to agree and disagree.



Writing | Part 2

An informal letter

1 Answer these questions individually. Then compare your answers with a partner.

- 1 How often do you write letters (not including emails)?
- 2 Why and when might you write a letter rather than sending a text or writing an email?

2 Read the extracts A–E from five letters. Number them 1–5 according to how formal they are (1 = very informal, 5 = very formal).

- 1 What is the purpose of the letter each extract is taken from?
- 2 What can you deduce about the writers and recipients of each letter?
- 3 What features of informal language does each extract include?

3 Rewrite these formal expressions in more informal English. The first six expressions are from extracts B and E.

- 1 We can now confirm that
- 2 your forthcoming vacation
- 3 will be debited from your credit card
- 4 the week following your departure
- 5 Please accept my apologies for this
- 6 We do make every effort
- 7 Firstly, I raised the issue of
- 8 Should you wish me to act on your behalf
- 9 There is another factor that needs to be taken into account
- 10 I am not in a position to provide advice on this matter

→ page 192 Writing reference: Emails and letters

4 Rewrite these openings to letters replying to extracts A and C. Use more appropriate language.

A Thank you for your enquiry about accommodation for five days in November. Unfortunately, our rooms are fully booked during this period and I am therefore unable to comply with your request.

C With reference to your letter of 24 May, I wish to express my appreciation of your invitation to attend the college function on 15 June and to inform you that I shall be very happy to attend.

A

... so am looking for a family of masochists to put me up for a few days. As you seemed sorry we didn't manage to meet up last time I was over, I thought I'd give you first option this time. I'll be around from 7–11 November. Don't worry if it's inconvenient, there are loads of other people I can ask, but it'd be good to see you all.

B

We can now confirm that we have taken 1,490 euros from your credit card account, that being the total cost of your forthcoming vacation. Any agreed deductions for extras, breakages, cleaning, etc. will be debited from your credit card the week following your departure.

C

Secondly, we would like to try to get everyone together before they start their summer break – we're asking all the trainees and course tutors over for a barbecue in Junko's garden on 15 June. It's a Friday evening, so hopefully people shouldn't be going to work or doing anything too serious the next day.

D

Just a short note to thank you for the music on Saturday. Everyone seemed to have an excellent time and we have had some nice emails and notes back. Everyone really liked the dancing as well – I thought it set the evening up very nicely.

E

Please accept my apologies for this. We do make every effort to pack the CDs well and always use the best available courier company. Unfortunately, the CD cases themselves are quite fragile and it only needs one employee in any of the various depots across the country to drop one of the boxes or to throw it into the back of a van and the whole batch can be damaged.



- 5** Work in pairs. Read the following writing task, then discuss and list some indoor and outdoor activities in your town that you could suggest in reply to the letter.

An Australian friend of yours is attending a language course in your town next month. This is an extract from a letter that he/she has written to you.

Classes are on weekday mornings, so my afternoons and weekends are free. It would be great if you could suggest how I could spend my free time. Perhaps you can suggest a few indoor as well as outdoor activities? Don't forget, I'm not keen on sport!

Write a **letter** in reply to your friend.

- 6** Discuss the beginning and end of your letter. Which of these ideas would you include at the beginning and which at the end?

- say you're looking forward to seeing your friend
- comment on the fact that your friend is planning to learn your language
- give some general information about your town
- suggest meeting during your friend's stay
- ask about the language course your friend is attending

- 7** Look at expressions 1–10 for making suggestions.

Which of these are followed by

- a an infinitive without *to*? b *to* + infinitive?
c the *-ing* form?

In one expression there are two possible answers.

- 1 It might be an idea ...
- 2 What would you think about ...?
- 3 Another possibility would be ...
- 4 I suggest that you should ...
- 5 What about ...?
- 6 I'd say you ought ...
- 7 You could consider ...
- 8 You might feel like ...
- 9 What I think you should do is ...
- 10 I'd say your best option is ...

- 8** Write your answer to the task in Exercise 5 in 220–260 words. Remember to use informal language.

Exam advice

Before you start to write, think carefully about

- the purpose of the letter (this will be stated in the task instruction)
- who the reader will be and what this person will expect to hear from you
- what exactly the question asks you to include in your letter
- how formal or informal the language should be (this will depend on your relationship with the reader and on the purpose of your letter).



Starting off

1 Work in pairs. How many of the following sources of information do you use regularly?

- the Internet
- newspapers
- radio
- television
- libraries

2 How has your use of these sources of information changed in recent years? How do you think it will change in the future?

3 Work in pairs. Exchange ideas with your partner.

What are your favourite sources of the following types of information? Try to remember specific examples. If you used the Internet, which websites did you visit?

- a breaking news story about a serious incident in your area
- the result of an important sporting event
- biographical information about someone you are studying or interested in
- information about the side effects of medicine that someone you know is taking
- the departure and arrival times of trains or planes

Listening | Part 3

1 You are going to listen to an interview in which you will hear the phrases in *italics* in the following questions. Before you listen, discuss the questions in pairs.

- 1 When was television *in its infancy*?
- 2 If you read an *in-depth analysis* of a news story, would you expect a detailed study or a superficial one?
- 3 If people *lap something up*, do they enjoy it or not?
- 4 How do you think *citizen journalism* differs from traditional journalism?

02 Now listen to the interview, in which the journalist Harry Cameron talks about how news reporting has developed over the last 60 years. For questions 1–6, choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which fits best according to what you hear.

- 1 How did Harry feel when he started work as a journalist?
 A important
 B honourable
 C privileged
 D respected
- 2 Why, according to Harry, has the purpose of newspapers changed?
 A Other news sources are less expensive than newspapers.
 B People don't have time to read newspapers.
 C People prefer to see filmed news reports.
 D There are other more immediately available sources of news.
- 3 According to Harry, how have the more serious newspapers adapted to the new situation?
 A They concentrate on evaluating news stories.
 B They back up their reports with detailed factual information.
 C They accompany reports with interesting photographs.
 D They keep readers up to date with fashion and sport.
- 4 What is Harry's view of citizen journalism?
 A He feels sorry for the people involved in it.
 B He resents it for professional reasons.
 C He doesn't consider it to be real journalism.
 D He is broadly in favour of it.
- 5 Harry believes that internet blogs
 A are less democratic than newspapers.
 B are likely to be more politically biased than newspapers.
 C are as trustworthy as reports written by professionals.
 D are fundamentally unreliable.
- 6 If Harry were going into journalism now, what would he want to focus on?
 A reporting events as they happen
 B evaluating events knowledgeably
 C being a reliable news source
 D reflecting readers' views

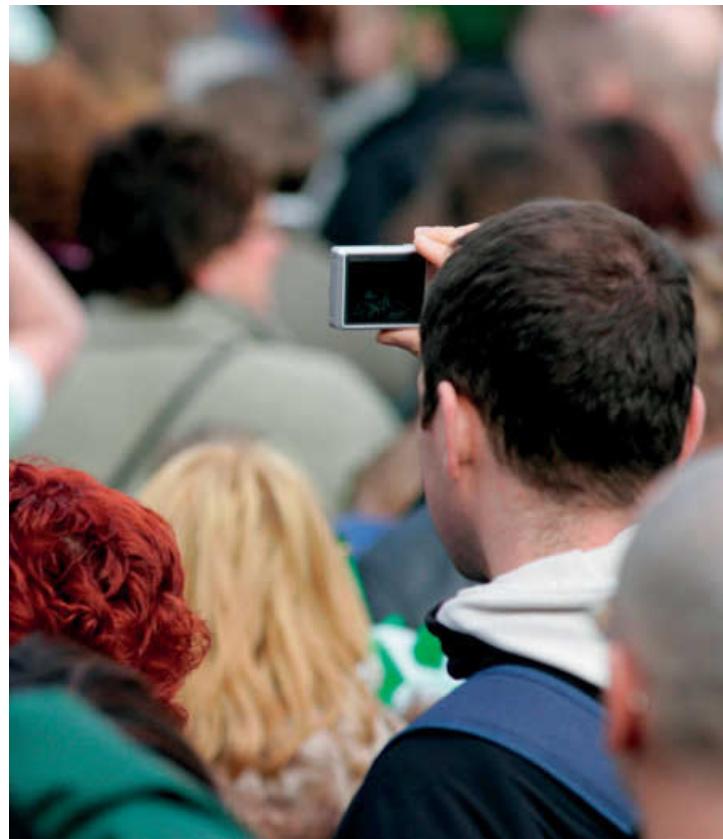
3 Use a word from list A and another from list B to make a phrase matching each definition (1–6). Then make your own sentences using these phrases.

A daily far-off in-depth junior news war
 B analysis broadcast days newspaper reporter zone

- 1 an inexperienced journalist
- 2 something you read every day
- 3 a thorough examination
- 4 a current affairs programme
- 5 an area where fighting is taking place
- 6 a period a long time ago

Exam advice

- Before you listen, read the questions and underline the main idea in each one.
- Read each option carefully and think about its meaning.
- Listen for the general idea of what each speaker is saying.
- Wait until each speaker has finished before choosing an answer.
- Listen for the same ideas to be expressed, not the same words.



Grammar

Reported speech

- 1 The following are reports of what was said during the interview in Listening Part 3. What were the speakers' actual words?
- 1 The interviewer asked Harry if he could tell her what being a journalist had been like.
 - 2 Harry said his main memory of those far-off days was the sense of pride he had felt.
 - 3 Harry explained that journalists like him had travelled the world and filed reports.
 - 4 He said he had written his report in his hotel bedroom.
 - 5 Harry said he believed that the function of newspapers had changed.
 - 6 He said that things would never be the same again.

2  03 Now listen and check your answers.

- 3 What is the difference in meaning between sentences 1 and 2?

- 1 He said he'd written an article which was going to be in the paper the following day.
- 2 He said he'd written an article which is going to be in the paper tomorrow.

What do you notice about the tenses in sentence 3?

- 3 He says he's written an article which is going to be in the paper tomorrow.

4  04 Work in pairs. You are going to listen to four short dialogues between Hazel and Tom.

Student A: Make brief notes about what Tom says.

Student B: Make brief notes about what Hazel says.



- 5 Convert your notes into reported speech sentences using some of the verbs in the box. Then compare sentences with your partner.

ask explain reply tell want to know wonder

Reading and Use of English | Part 3

- 1 Work in pairs. Add prefixes to these adjectives to make them negative.

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1 accurate | 5 possible |
| 2 important | 6 regular |
| 3 selfish | 7 similar |
| 4 legal | 8 tolerant |

Now change each negative adjective into a noun.

- 2 Add prefixes to these verbs so that they have the meanings given.

1 appear	become invisible	
2 claim	claim back	
3 inform	give the wrong information	
4 judge	judge in advance	
5 react	react more than is necessary	
6 stabilise	make something unstable	
7 state	describe something to make it less important	

Now make your answers into nouns.

- 3 Add prefixes to these nouns so that they have the meanings given.

1 biography	when a person writes about himself/herself	
2 owner	a joint owner	
3 politician	someone who was a politician in the past	
4 trust	feeling of being unable to trust someone	
5 circle	half a circle	

Now make your answers into adjectives. (One noun does not have a related adjective.)

4 Read the text about attitudes to truth in the media, and answer these questions. (Don't try to fill in the gaps at this stage.)

- 1 What does the writer accuse universities of?
- 2 What comparison does he make between television drama and news programmes?
- 5 Read the text again. For questions 1–8 use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

6 Discuss these questions in pairs.

- 1 Do you agree with the view that, from the audience's perspective, there may be 'little difference between an episode of a hospital drama and the main evening news'?
- 2 How far do you trust TV networks in your country to tell you the truth?

Exam advice

Read the whole text quickly first for a general idea of what it is about.

When looking at the gaps, decide

- what type of word you need (noun, adjective, etc.)
 - how you should change the word in capitals to form the word you need.
- These are some of the questions to ask yourself:
- Does the word need a negative prefix (*un-*, *in-*, etc.)?
 - If the word is a noun, should it be singular or plural?
 - If it is a verb, what form is needed (-ed, -ing, etc.)?

Broadcasters must find ways to regain public trust

The current problems over the truth and (0)honesty..... HONEST of television programmes are symptomatic of a deep (1) suspicion about how such values are INTELLECT judged. In universities, several generations of students in media, cultural studies and even (2) JOURNAL have been taught that there is no such thing as truth or (3) ACCURATE in television products. These are merely a construction, a 'spectacle', produced for audiences who (4) CODE and consume them according to their own tastes. There is little (5) DIFFER between an episode of a hospital drama and the main evening news. I have argued against this approach to understanding media. Yet the depth of the problem for the TV companies is apparent in that there are now (6) INSIST voices calling for the abandonment of the traditional principle of (7) PARTIAL because it is thought impossible to give an accurate account of the full range of positions in a political (8) ARGUE

Adapted from *The Guardian*



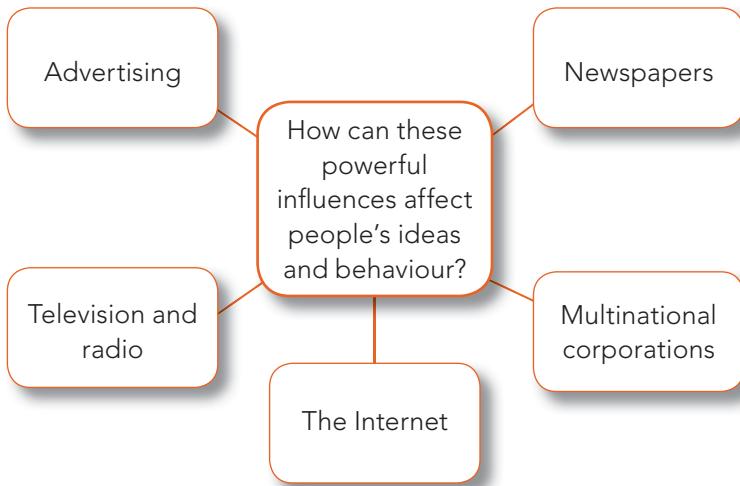
Speaking | Part 3

1 Look at the photos and discuss the following questions.

- 1 How much do you think people are affected by the influences shown in the photos?
- 2 What other powerful influences shape people's ideas? How are people affected by them?



2 Read these written prompts for a Speaking Part 3 task. Briefly consider this task and note down a few ideas.



3 **05** Listen to two candidates discussing the prompts, and answer these questions.

- 1 Which of the influences do the speakers talk about?
- 2 Do they answer the question 'How can these powerful influences affect people's ideas and behaviour?'?
- 3 Do they talk about the influences in sufficient depth?
- 4 Do they participate equally in the conversation?

4 **05** Listen again. Which of these examples of imprecise language do the speakers use? (Imprecise language is used when being accurate is impossible, unnecessary, over-formal or too direct.)

- some kind, sort of, stuff, things like that
- two or three, a bit, several, (quite) a few, a lot, lots
- nearly, fairly, pretty, quite, almost, probably
- the suffix *-ish*

Note: *-ish* can be added to words to make them less precise, e.g. green → greenish (a shade somewhere between blue and green or grey and green), thirty → thirtyish (about 30, between 27 and 33).

5 Work in pairs and do the task in Exercise 2.

- Make sure you both speak for roughly the same length of time.
- Use imprecise words and phrases from the list above where appropriate.

6 At the end of Part 3 you and your partner are asked to come to a decision. Follow the examiner's instruction below with your partner.



Now you have about a minute to decide which two of these influences have the greatest effect on people.



7 **06** Listen to the last part of the interview, where the two candidates respond to the instruction above.

- 1 Do they make the same choices as you?
- 2 How well do they interact to reach their decision?

Exam advice

The most important thing in this part of the exam is to demonstrate good communication skills. This involves

- keeping the conversation going and avoiding long pauses. It may sometimes be necessary to invite your partner to express an opinion.
- listening carefully to what your partner says and responding. Don't just say what you think.

When speaking, look at the person you are talking to.

Vocabulary

'Talking' verbs

- 1 Complete the gaps in this summary with the verbs in the box in the correct form. In some cases more than one answer is possible.

comment discuss say speak talk tell

In Part 3 of the Speaking test the examiner (1) the two candidates that they have to (2) to each other for about two minutes. In the conversation you listened to, the candidates (3) the comparative importance of a number of influences on people's ideas and behaviour. The first candidate started by (4) that TV has a huge influence on people. They went on to (5) on the influential role played by multinational corporations. During their conversation the two candidates (6) for about the same length of time.

- 2 Exam candidates sometimes make mistakes when using 'talking' verbs. Choose the correct verbs in these sentences.

- 1 Many people believe that the mass media do not always *say / tell* the truth.
- 2 When I'm in China, I can understand what people are *speaking / saying* to me, but I can hardly *speak / talk* any Chinese myself.
- 3 This morning's newspaper doesn't even *say / mention* the economic crisis.
- 4 The spokesperson for the authorities *expressed / spoke* his thanks for people's understanding.
- 5 There's an article in my newspaper which *says / writes* that people absorb information more quickly from the Internet than from printed material.
- 6 When asked about the latest rumours, the minister refused to *comment / say*.
- 7 After Ben had used Wikipedia he *said / told* everyone how great it was. He didn't *mention / tell* the fact that it had taken him an hour to find what he wanted.
- 8 If you feel strongly about something, you should *express / speak* your mind.

Reading and Use of English | Part 6



- 1 Discuss these questions in pairs.

- 1 Which reality TV shows do you watch or have you watched in the past?
- 2 Which are the best and worst reality TV shows you have seen? Give your reasons.
- 2 Which of the following reality shows would you watch?
 - people with new business ideas competing to win investment money from successful entrepreneurs
 - a dance competition featuring celebrities dancing with professional dancers
 - celebrities' attempts to survive without luxuries in a jungle environment
 - a cooking competition in which amateur cooks are judged by professionals
 - teenagers singing in front of judges to win a recording contract
 - private detectives investigating people suspected of cheating on their partners
- 3 Some people object to reality TV for ethical or moral reasons. Why is this? Discuss these ideas:
 - the way people are chosen for reality TV shows
 - the way people are treated on the shows
 - the way the programmes are edited
 - the effects on contestants of being in the media spotlight

- 4 Read texts A–D quickly. What do you understand by the following phrases?

Extract A: 1 *the cult of instant celebrity*

2 *blatant self-promotion*

3 *a dumbed-down generation*

Extract B: 4 *operating without scripts*

5 *cynically manipulated*

Extract C: 6 *social glue*

7 *'water cooler moments'*

8 *a cultural imperative*

Extract D: 9 *a meticulous selection process*

- 5 Decide what each of these sentences means. Choose either a or b.

1 *Reality shows promote the belief that we should aspire to be the reality stars we watch on our televisions.*

(Extract A)

a Reality shows suggest to viewers that the stars of their programmes are role models worth emulating.

b Reality shows want viewers to believe that they are watching real people.

2 *The unusual settings of shows like Big Brother do not reduce the educational value of observing how the contestants cope with their situation.* (Extract B)

a There is not much that viewers can learn from *Big Brother* and similar shows because contestants are dealing with such unfamiliar situations.

b Viewers can learn from watching how contestants manage, despite the fact that in *Big Brother* and similar shows they are in unfamiliar surroundings.

3 *The criticism that reality TV shows may corrupt viewers is not sustainable.* (Extract C)

a Reality TV shows can be justifiably criticised for corrupting viewers.

b It is impossible to criticise reality TV shows on the grounds that they can corrupt viewers.

4 *This situation is stage-managed by executives who make money by attracting impressionable audiences.*

(Extract D)

a TV managers manipulate this situation and make money because they are able to get naïve viewers to watch their shows.

b TV managers make money by staging shows which impress viewers.



The ethics of reality TV

Reality TV provokes a range of different reactions among commentators and viewers.

A

Although it's impossible to ignore their popularity, it seems to me that many reality shows send an unfortunate message encouraging a cult of instant celebrity. Many are built around blatant self-promotion and are based on humiliating others for the entertainment of viewers. These programmes suggest that anyone can become famous simply by 'being themselves' on TV, without working hard or displaying any talent. Children who watch these shows may come to believe that they don't need to study conscientiously at school, or train hard for a job. As one commentator points out, 'We tell kids that what matters is being a celebrity and we wonder why some behave as they do. It seems to me that this addiction to celebrity culture is creating a dumbed-down generation.' In pretending to imitate real life, reality shows promote the belief that we should aspire to be the reality stars we watch on our televisions.

B

One of the reasons so many people enjoy reality shows is that they feature real people operating without scripts. The fact that characters have been selected to encourage disagreements or tension and then cynically manipulated does not take away from the reality of the programmes; in fact it adds to it. The unusual settings of shows like *Big Brother* do not reduce the educational value of observing how the contestants cope with their situation. In fact, without such shows, most people would have little concept of how a group of strangers would be able to survive, co-operate and develop in such environments. As *Time Magazine* describes it, 'They provoke and offend, but at least they are trying to do something besides helping you get to sleep.' This insight therefore into the human condition is invaluable, and it is little surprise that so many viewers are eager to watch these programmes.

**C**

Far from discouraging hard work and education, reality TV programmes help to create a society in which we have shared experiences and a strong sense of community. Despite the fact that they do not reflect reality, they provide an important social glue. In the past, there were only a few television channels, and everybody watched the same programmes. This sense of a shared experience helped to bind people together, giving them common things to talk about at work the next day: so-called 'water cooler moments'. Reality programmes play that role in contemporary society with viewership being almost a cultural imperative, an experience shared simultaneously with friends and family. The criticism that reality TV shows may corrupt viewers is not sustainable. Just as it is possible to empathise with real-life criminals without going on to commit crimes ourselves, there is no reason why viewers should be persuaded to emulate the morality of reality TV programmes.

D

The audience appeal of reality shows is understandable and probably does nobody any serious harm, but we should not suppose that we are being shown real life. Contestants who have undergone a meticulous selection process are placed in a 'reality' they would not normally experience. This situation is then stage-managed by executives who make money by attracting impressionable audiences. In *Survivor*, for example, one of the longest-running reality shows, a group of people who did not know each other were put together on an island and then made to take part in contests. After these, some contestants were voted out. This was clearly done primarily in order to create tensions within the group, thereby adding drama and excitement to the programme. By encouraging conflict, programme makers are provoking behaviour very different from what would happen in real-life survival situations, where conflict would be avoided wherever possible.

- 6 Now do the exam task. For questions 1–4, choose from the extracts A–D. The extracts may be chosen more than once.

Which writer

shares writer C's view of the social value of reality TV?

1

expresses a different view from the others about the popularity of reality TV?

2

takes a similar view to B about the way participants are controlled in reality TV shows?

3

expresses a different opinion from the others about the authenticity of reality TV shows?

4

Exam advice

- Read the four texts and make sure you understand what they are about. Pay particular attention to any opinions and attitudes expressed. Identify any similarities or differences of opinion which are immediately obvious.
- Read the questions one at a time and identify the aspect of the topic being focused on.
- To answer the questions, you will need to keep this topic in mind and then scan the texts as often as necessary, looking for the similarities or differences of opinion. You will always have to compare all the texts with each other to find the correct answer.

- 7 Work in pairs and discuss these questions.

- 1 Do you agree that some reality TV shows are popular because contestants are humiliated?
- 2 Do you believe that reality TV shows can have an educational value?
- 3 Do you think that viewers of TV reality shows are likely to emulate contestants?
- 4 Is it right that reality shows encourage conflict between contestants?

Grammar

Transitive verbs

1 Transitive verbs must be followed by an object.

- He persuaded **me** to leave. (*Persuade* is a transitive verb which needs an object.)
- He decided to leave. (*Decide* is an intransitive verb which has no direct object.)

Which of the verbs listed need an object to complete these sentences?

1 allowed agreed warned instructed refused required arranged

He to leave at 10 o'clock.

2 told reminded convinced mentioned admitted informed recalled

She that she was leaving at 10 o'clock.

2 Many verbs can be used both transitively and intransitively, sometimes with different meanings. Discuss the differences in meaning between the verbs in **bold** in these sentences.

1 a He promised he'd be at home, but he was out when I **called**.

b I was so annoyed that I **called** him a very rude name.

2 a Tarek **runs** every day before he goes to work.

b He works in London where he **runs** a small IT company.

3 a I'm fine thanks – I can usually **manage** on my own.

b I've applied for a job **managing** a bookshop.

4 a We need to **leave** in half an hour.

b You can't take your bike. You'll have to **leave** it here.

5 a We're planning to **move** next year.

b My car won't start – could you help me **move** it please?

→ page 177 Language reference: Transitive verbs

3  Exam candidates often miss out objects after transitive verbs, especially verbs with a complex structure. Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1 I can assure that we will do everything to resolve your case as quickly as we can.

2 I'd be very grateful if you could tell where to look for the information I need.

3 Do you like my new painting? Maria gave to me.

4 We have been taught special techniques that will allow to do well in our exams.

5 I didn't know anyone at Jo's party, so she introduced to some of her friends.

6 Your new job starts on Monday, doesn't it? We all wish the best of luck.

Writing | Part 2

A proposal

1 Read this writing task. What would you propose as the content for programmes about your region?



A television station is planning a series of documentary programmes about life in your region and is inviting proposals from interested members of the public.

The series producer invites you to send a proposal outlining ideas for some of these programmes, which should be of interest to general audiences as well to people who live in the region. You should give reasons for your suggestions and say why you believe people unfamiliar with the region would find the programmes interesting.

Write your proposal.

2 Read the sample answer on page 93 and discuss these questions.

1 Has the writer followed the task instructions fully?

2 Is the style appropriately formal?

3 How could the writer sound more persuasive?

3 How could you change these sentences to make them more appropriate for a formal proposal?

1 Maybe the company could think about making a programme about wildlife in the region.

2 This might possibly include a feature on animals native to the region.

3 I should think viewers would probably find this quite interesting.

4 Most people really like watching programmes about animals.

5 Apparently lots of young people would like to watch a programme like this.

→ page 190 Writing reference: Proposals

I am sure that your decision to make a series of programmes on our region will be warmly welcomed by viewers who live here. I suggest that the series should look at the region today from the points of view of the following different groups of people.

A family

The first programme could perhaps focus on an 'ordinary' family from the region. I would suggest a young couple with two children. The programme might be able to highlight aspects of their everyday life with which many viewers can probably identify: school, travelling, shopping and preferred leisure activities could be covered. It may be important to make it clear from the outset that the series is reflecting the lifestyle of typical residents.

Students

This programme should provide the perspective of young people who have grown up in our region and who will shortly be deciding whether to stay or to move elsewhere. Participants could talk about the advantages and disadvantages of living here in comparison with other places they know. They could also be asked to say whether they intend to stay or move away after the completion of their studies.

Tourist information officer

Finally, a programme featuring a representative of the local tourist information office could inform viewers about significant historical and cultural features of the region, as well as mentioning regular events. Hopefully, this would encourage viewers to visit the region.

In my opinion, these programme proposals would be of interest to people outside our region as well as those who live here. If successful, the series may well be the beginning of a regular magazine programme.

5 Read this writing task and make notes in the plan.

A national TV channel is planning a series of documentary programmes about unusual hobbies and is looking for people and their hobbies to feature in the programmes.

The series producer invites you to send a proposal outlining ideas for two of these programmes, which should be aimed at general audiences rather than other people doing these hobbies. Your proposal should suggest hobbies of different types and give reasons why you think they would make successful TV programmes.

Write your proposal.

Plan

Para 1: Introduction:

Para 2: Heading:

First idea:

Reasons:

Para 3: Heading:

Second idea:

Reasons:

Para 4: Conclusion:



4 The following sentences contain verbs that may be useful for writing a proposal. Complete them with the correct prepositions.

- 1 It might **benefit** further investigation.
- 2 Members of the public will **contribute** the programme.
- 3 The series will **appeal** people of all ages.
- 4 They should **focus** local issues.
- 5 We should **provide** viewers situations they can **identify**
- 6 It will be interesting to see how audiences **respond** the series.
- 7 If the series **succeeds** making an impact, this could **result** a new series.

Exam advice

- Think about who will read the proposal and how formal you need your writing style to be.
- If you decide to divide the report into sections, think about what sections you need and what section headings are appropriate.
- In a proposal you are trying to persuade someone about an idea or plan you believe in, so your language should be persuasive.

Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 7

Vocabulary

- 1 Complete these sentences with the correct form of the ‘money verbs’ in the box.

afford cost earn hire make pay rent sell spend

- 1 I’d love to own a sports car, but I can’t one.
- 2 I’ll be working in Prague for two years. Hopefully we’ll a flat near the city centre.
- 3 My brother works in a fast-food restaurant. He only £120 a week.
- 4 I’ve decided to my motorbike and get a car.
- 5 We’ve a jazz band to play at the party on Saturday.
- 6 Do you know what police officers when they finish their training?
- 7 Those jeans a fortune, but it’s really the designer label you’re for.
- 8 It’s amazing how much people on birthday presents for their boyfriends or girlfriends.

- 2 For questions 1–8, read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap.

For 70 years now the radio programme *Desert Island Discs* has managed that (0) feat – to be both enduring and relevant. By choosing as (1) on the programme the biggest names of the (2) in science, business, politics, showbiz, sport and the arts, it (3) a cross-sectional snapshot of the times in which we (4) As the decades have passed, the programme has kept (5) : never frozen in time yet always, somehow, comfortingly the same.

Desert Island Discs has recently (6) its 70th birthday. Since its inception in January 1942, nearly 3,000 distinguished people from all (7) of life have been stranded on the imaginary island, accompanied only by their eight favourite records. This new book, by the programme’s (8) presenter, chronicles the story of one of British radio’s favourite programmes.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 0 A occasional | B odd | C rare | D scarce |
| 1 A visitors | B guests | C friends | D performers |
| 2 A day | B time | C generation | D date |
| 3 A shows | B displays | C represents | D presents |
| 4 A exist | B are | C live | D survive |
| 5 A pace | B step | C speed | D time |
| 6 A observed | B celebrated | C honoured | D memorised |
| 7 A ways | B types | C kinds | D walks |
| 8 A current | B existing | C living | D contemporary |

Grammar

- 3 Combine sentences in the following extracts from film reviews, using these ways of linking ideas:

- relative clauses
- participle clauses
- apposition

1 Libero

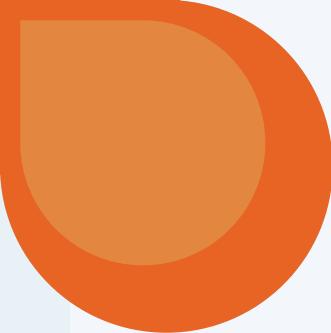
A boy tries to understand his family. He tries to stop it from breaking apart. At the same time he has to deal with his mother’s absence. He finds all this very difficult. The boy is only eleven years old.

2 Be Kind Rewind

A man unintentionally destroys every tape in a video store. The man’s name is Black. His brain becomes magnetised. The store is owned by Black’s best friend. Black and his friend feel sorry for the store’s most loyal customer. This customer is an elderly woman. She is losing her memory. The two men set out to remake the lost films. These films include *The Lion King* and *RoboCop*.

3 I Am Legend

A military scientist is left completely alone in New York. The city is deserted. A virus has wiped out the human race. The scientist is played by Will Smith. The film is based on a sci-fi novel by Richard Matheson.



Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 8

Vocabulary

1 Complete these words to match the definitions.

- 1 ex-..... (n) someone who used to work in politics.
- 2 mis..... (v) have doubts about someone's honesty
- 3 il..... (adj) against the law
- 4 dis..... (v) become invisible
- 5 auto..... (n) a life story written by the person him/herself
- 6 re..... (n) the act of claiming something back
- 7 pre..... (v) have an opinion before knowing all the facts
- 8 de..... (v) make unstable

2 Complete the table with the related words. In some cases there is more than one possible answer.

1 ethics (n)	adjective:
2 entertain (v)	noun: adjective:
3 cooperate (v)	noun: adjective:
4 production (n)	verb: adjective:
5 consider (v)	noun: adjective:
6 creative (adj)	verb: noun:

Grammar

3 Rewrite the following quotes in reported speech.

- 1 'You mustn't tell anyone what you've seen.' (Roland to Joanna)
- 2 'It was a surprise seeing Tom last week. I hadn't seen him since we were at school together.' (Clare)
- 3 'Shall I do the shopping this afternoon?' (Ben to Jerry)
- 4 'You must stop smoking if you want to get rid of your cough.' (doctor to me)
- 5 'How many languages can you speak?' (Bogdan to me)

4 Rewrite the following as direct quotes.

- 1 The police officer wanted to know what I was doing out so late.
 - 2 She asked if I had any plans for the following evening.
 - 3 I said that was the worst programme I'd ever seen.
 - 4 I promised I'd phone her as soon as I got home.
 - 5 Jerry said he hoped he'd be going there the following day.
- 5 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.
- 1 Maria said, 'I'll never do that again.'
 -
 - PROMISED
Maria do that again.
 - 2 'I think you should apply for this job,' Alexei said to me.
 -
 - ADVISED
Alexei job.
 - 3 Simon said, 'Have you ever thought of starting your own business?'
 -
 - ASKED
Simon ever thought of starting my own business.
 - 4 'Let's meet tomorrow,' said Svetlana.
 -
 - SUGGESTED
Svetlana day.
 - 5 'Don't drink if you're driving,' the police officer said to the motorist.
 -
 - WARNED
The police officer if he was driving.
 - 6 Tom and Alexis said, 'We're getting married in May.'
 -
 - ANNOUNCED
Tom and Alexis in May.

At top speed

Starting off

Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

- 1 Each of these photos shows a situation where speed is important. Why is speed important in each case?
- 2 When is it important not to hurry? If you had to choose photos of four situations where it's important not to hurry, which would you choose? Why?
- 3 Do you enjoy speed? Why (not)?



Listening | Part 1

- 1 You will hear three extracts where people talk about speed. Extract One is about trains in the 19th century. Before you listen: how do you think the invention of trains changed the way people lived?



- 2 **▶ 07** Now listen to Extract One. For questions 1 and 2 choose the answer (A, B or C) which fits best according to what you hear.

Extract One

You hear part of a panel discussion on 19th century travel.

- 1 According to the woman, people in the early 19th century were concerned about how rail travel would affect
 - the landscape.
 - the human body.
 - their way of life.
- 2 According to the man, how did rail travel change people's attitude to the natural world?
 - They felt they could dominate it.
 - They understood their need to be part of it.
 - They became more interested in painting it.
- 3 Work in pairs. The man says, 'I doubt if any other invention has had such a profound influence on the human psyche.' Do you agree?



- 4** In Extract Two you will hear two people discussing the limits to human ability in Olympic sports. Before you listen: do you think athletes will continue to break records or is there a limit to their improvement?

- 5** **D**08 Now listen to Extract Two. For questions 3 and 4 choose the answer (A, B or C) which fits best.

Extract Two

You hear two people discussing the future of Olympic sports.

- 3 The man says that in future new Olympic records will
 - A improve only slightly on previous records.
 - B become increasingly frequent as athletes improve.
 - C attract less attention from the news media.
 - 4 The two speakers agree about
 - A the effect of professionalism on sporting achievement.
 - B the need for more specialised sports equipment.
 - C the prospects for genetic engineering in sports.
- 6** Work in small groups. Do you think people should devote so much effort to breaking world records? Why (not)?
- 7** In Extract Three you will hear two scientists talking about travelling in spaceships to other stars. Before you listen,
- would you like to go on a journey like this?
 - what problems do you think this sort of journey would pose for the spaceship's crew?



- 8** **D**09 Now listen to Extract Three. For questions 5 and 6 choose the answer (A, B or C) which fits best.

Extract Three

You hear two scientists discussing travel to other planets near other stars.

- 5 What does the woman say is the main obstacle to using nuclear propulsion for spaceships?
 - A the danger to Earth
 - B international agreements
 - C the technology involved
- 6 What does the man think would be the main difficulty of using a conventional spaceship?
 - A persuading people to travel in it
 - B preventing conflict among the crew
 - C giving purpose to the crew's lives

Exam advice

- Listen to the whole piece before you choose: the answer may depend on the general idea rather than a few words.
- If you are not sure about the answer after listening the first time, try to decide which answers you think are wrong before you listen the second time.

- 9** In each of these extracts from the recordings, use a verb from the box in the correct form to form a collocation with the noun in **bold**.

break embark engage in have (x3) lose
make undergo

- 1 People's entire world view a profound transformation.
- 2 Over the next hundred years railways a radical **impact** on the countryside.
- 3 This a subtle but distinct **effect** on the way people regarded their place in the world.
- 4 I doubt if any other invention such a profound **influence** on the human psyche.
- 5 Do you think people will **interest** in Olympic events when athletes no longer records?
- 6 I can't imagine anyone such a **difference** nowadays.
- 7 Even if there were a couple of hundred people prepared to on a **journey** like this, they and their descendants would have to live together on the ship all their lives.
- 8 What **activities** would they during all this time?

Grammar

Time clauses

- 1** In each of these sentences from Listening Part 1 choose the correct alternative in *italics*.
- 1 When the steam train *was invented* / *had been invented*, it completely changed 19th century society, didn't it?
 - 2 Outlying villages which had been quiet, sleepy places before trains *arrived* / *had arrived* became busy suburbs.
 - 3 Do you think people will lose interest in Olympic events when athletes *no longer break* / *will no longer break* records?
 - 4 Newspapers and TV will always blow them out of proportion when they *occur* / *will occur*.
 - 5 The key change occurred when top sports people *had stopped* / *stopped* being amateurs and devoted themselves full time to their sport.
 - 6 I can imagine the travellers degenerating into barbarism and fighting after they *will have spent* / *have spent* several generations in space.

→ page 176 Language reference: Time clauses

- 2** Complete these sentences by putting the verbs into the correct tense, using the active or passive form.
- 1 When Fayed (retire) next year, he'll have been working for this company for forty years.
 - 2 We felt very frustrated because the project was cancelled when we (work) on it for almost three years.
 - 3 The government is going to pass a law making it illegal to smoke when you (drive).
 - 4 Lots of my friends were waiting for me when I (get) back from my trip.
 - 5 I'm not going to take my driving test until I (be) sure I can pass.
 - 6 She offered the book to several publishers before it (accept).
 - 7 We'll really celebrate when I (get) the news that I (pass) my exams.
 - 8 When Samya (write) the proposal, she checked it through, then emailed it to her boss.

- 3** For questions 1–4 complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1 Melissa will complete the report before leaving work.

UNTIL

Melissa will stay finished the report.

2 The waiters couldn't relax until there were no more customers left.

LAST

The waiters were only able to relax once left.

3 I will deal with the report immediately after my holiday.

GOT

I will deal with the report as from my holiday.

4 He did not stop at the filling station until he had almost no fuel left.

RUN

He stopped at the filling station when he fuel.



Prepositions in time expressions

- 4** Exam candidates often make mistakes with prepositions in time expressions. Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 1 Mariano likes to watch football at Friday night, but he doesn't often get the chance.
- 2 Could you give us some advice about where to go or what to do at the evening?
- 3 I was able to visit the United States for the first time of my life.
- 4 I would recommend going on that tour in the beginning of summer.
- 5 The other event of May was a swimming gala.
- 6 The games contain some violence, but in the same time you have to use your brain.

- 7 They've met in many occasions but they've never become friends.
- 8 Unfortunately, we are overloaded with printing jobs in busy times of the day, so you cannot count on your order being dealt with immediately.
- 9 We have some suggestions about what to do if the weather is bad in the day of the boat trip.
- 10 You'll have to sit an exam in the end of this course.

→ page 174 Language reference: Prepositions in time expressions

Vocabulary

action, activity, event and programme

- 1 The words *action, activity, event* and *programme* each have two or three meanings. Match the four words with their definitions (a–i) from the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*.

1 action 2 activity 3 event 4 programme

- a a broadcast on television or radio
- b a particular thing that happens, especially something important or unusual
- c something intentionally done to deal with a problem or difficulty
- d a situation in which a lot of things are happening or people are moving around
- e a physical movement
- f a plan of activities to be done or things to be achieved
- g a thin book or piece of paper giving information about a play or musical or sports event, usually bought at the theatre or place where the event happens
- h one of a set of races or competitions
- i something that is done for enjoyment, especially something organised such as a sport or hobby

- 2 Complete these sentences from Listening Part 1 with *action, event, programme* or *activity* in the correct form. Then decide which definition (a–i) in Exercise 1 corresponds with the word in each sentence.

- 1 They began to believe they were no longer totally at the mercy of natural
- 2 They could take to harness these phenomena.
- 3 Will people lose interest in Olympic when athletes no longer break records?
- 4 There are treaties which prohibit nuclear explosions from being used in space
- 5 What would they engage in during all this time?

- 3 For questions 1–12, write *action, event, programme* or *activity* in each gap. Most of the sentences are from the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*.

- 1 After weeks of frenetic , the job was finally finished.
- 2 I looked in the to find out the actor's name.
- 3 It only needs a small wrist to start the process.
- 4 Our special guest on the tonight is Daniel Day Lewis.
- 5 She wrote a strong letter to the paper complaining about the council's in closing the town centre to traffic during the festival.
- 6 Susannah's party was the social of the year.



- 7 Tennis is a very relaxing spare-time
- 8 The school offers an exciting and varied of social events.
- 9 The women's 200-metre will be followed by the men's 100 metres.
- 10 There was a sudden flurry of when the director walked in.
- 11 This problem calls for swift from the government.
- 12 We had expected to arrive an hour late, but in the we were early.



- 4 Look back at Exercise 3 and note any collocations you can find with *action, event, programme* or *activity*, for example, *frenetic activity*.

Reading and Use of English | Part 7

1 Work in pairs. You are going to read an article about a very fast car. Before you read:

- 1 How important are cars in your life?
- 2 What things do/would you consider when choosing a car?

2 Six paragraphs have been removed from the article below. Read the article (but not the paragraphs which have been removed).

- Note down in a few words what each paragraph in the article is about.
- Underline any words and phrases that link the text together, which will help you to place the missing paragraphs when you read them.

Bugatti Veyron

by Jeremy Clarkson

Utterly, stunningly, jaw-droppingly brilliant

When you push a car past 300 km/h, the world actually becomes blurred, like an early Queen pop video. The speed causes a terrifying vibration that rattles your optic nerves, causing double vision. This is not good when you're covering 90 metres a second. Happily, stopping distances become irrelevant because you won't see the obstacle in the first place. By the time you know it was there, you'll have gone through the windscreen.

1

But once you go past 320 km/h, the biggest problem is the air. At 160 km/h it's relaxed. At 240 km/h it's a breeze. But at 320 km/h it has sufficient power to lift a jumbo jet off the ground. So getting a car to behave itself in conditions like these is tough.

2

You might point out at this juncture that the McLaren Formula One car can top 390 km/h, but at that speed it is pretty much out of control. And anyway the Bugatti is way, way faster than anything else the roads have seen, but when you look at the history of its development you'll discover it's rather more than just a car.

3

His engineers were horrified. But they set to work anyway, mating two Audi V8s to create an 8-litre W16 engine with four turbochargers. Needless to say, the end result produced about as much power as the Earth's core, which is fine. Then things got tricky because the power had to be harnessed.

4

When this had been done, the Veyron was shipped to Sauber's F1 wind tunnel where it quickly became apparent that while the magic 1000 bhp* figure had been achieved, they were miles off the target top speed of 400 km/h. The body of the car just wasn't aerodynamic enough. The bods at Sauber threw up their hands, saying they only had experience of aerodynamics up to maybe 360 km/h, which is the effective top speed in Formula One. Beyond this point Bugatti was on its own.

5

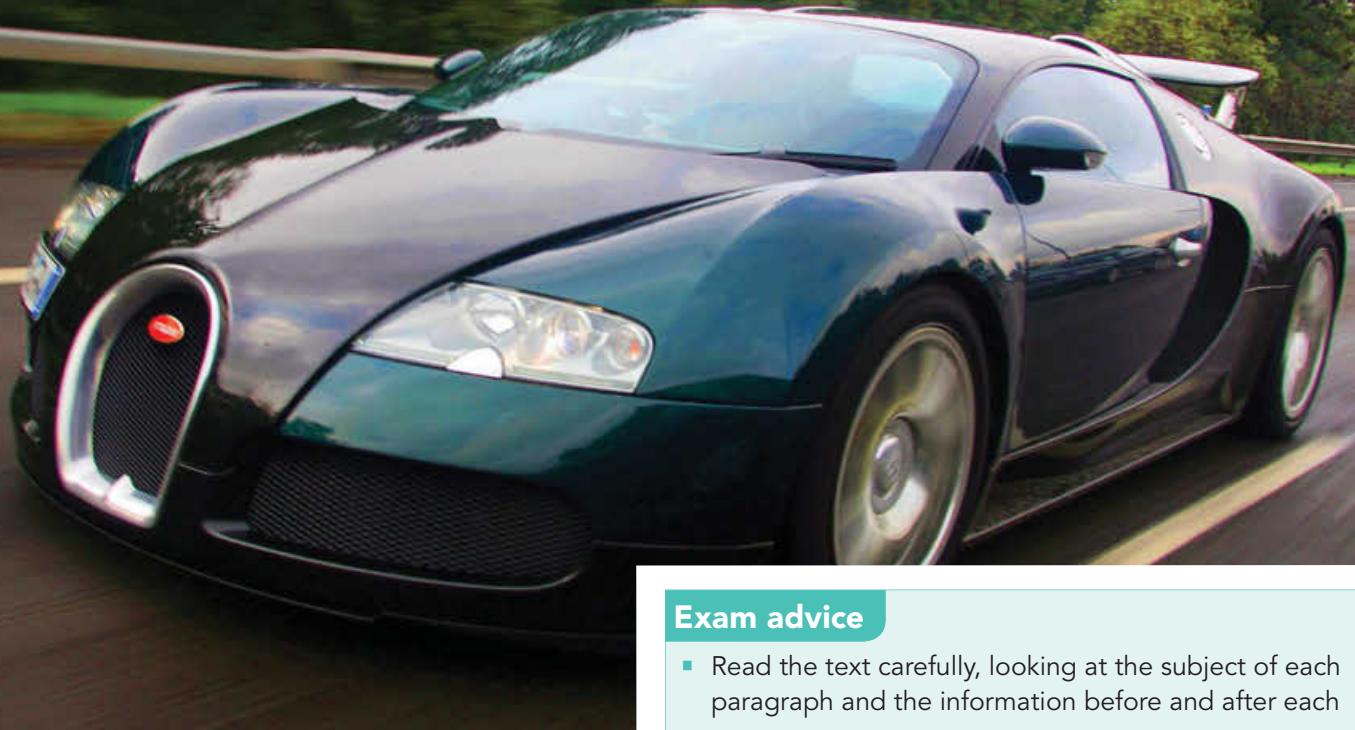
After some public failures, fires and accidents, they hit on the idea of a car that automatically changes shape depending on what speed you're going. And that means you can top 400 km/h. That's 113m a second.

6

I didn't care. On a recent drive across Europe I desperately wanted to reach the top speed but I ran out of road when the needle hit 386 km/h. Where, astonishingly, it felt totally and utterly rock steady. It felt sublime. From behind the wheel of a Veyron, France is the size of a small coconut. I cannot tell you how good this car is. I just don't have the vocabulary.

From *The Times*

*Brake horsepower – a measure of the power of a vehicle's engine



Exam advice

- Read the text carefully, looking at the subject of each paragraph and the information before and after each gap.
- Work methodically through the paragraphs, reading them and placing them one by one.
- Pay attention to words and phrases in the missing paragraphs which may refer to something in the text.
- When you have finished, quickly read the text again to check your answers.

3 Choose from the paragraphs A–G the one which fits each gap (1–6). There is one extra paragraph which you do not need to use.

A At those speeds the front of the car starts to lift. As a result you start to lose your steering, so you can't even steer round whatever it is you can't see because of the vibrations. Make no mistake, 320 km/h is at the limit of what man can do right now. Which is why the new Bugatti Veyron is special. Because it can do 406 km/h.

B For this, Volkswagen went to Ricardo, a British company that makes gearboxes for various Formula One teams. 'It was hard,' said one of the engineers. 'The gearbox in an F1 car only has to last a few hours, but the Veyron's has to last 10 or 20 years.'

C It has always been thus. When Louis Rigolly broke the 160 km/h barrier in 1904, the vibration would have been terrifying. And I dare say that driving a Jaguar E-type at 240 km/h in 1966 must have been a bit sporty as well.

D It all started when Ferdinand Piëch, the former boss of Volkswagen, bought Bugatti and had someone design a concept car. 'This,' he said, 'is what the next Bugatti will look like. And it will have an engine that develops 1000 horsepower and it will be capable of 400 km/h.'

E Somehow they had to find an extra 30 km/h, but each extra 1km/h increase in speed requires an extra 8bhp from the power plant. An extra 30 km/h then would need an extra 240 bhp. That was not possible.

F This car cannot be judged in the same way that we judge other cars. It meets noise and emission regulations and it can be driven by someone whose only qualification is an ability to reverse round corners and do an emergency stop. So technically it is a car. And yet it just isn't.

G You might want to ponder that for a moment. Covering the length of a football pitch, in a second, in a car. If you stamp on the middle pedal hard, you will pull up from 400 km/h in just 10 sec. Sounds good, but in those 10 sec you'll have covered 500 metres. That's five football pitches to stop.

4 Work in pairs.

- 1 Would you like to drive a car like this? Why (not)?
- 2 Should roads have speed limits and should cars be built that can break speed limits? Why (not)?

Speaking | Part 2

- 1 Work in pairs. Look at the photos and the examiner's instructions. Which of these phrases would you associate with each photo?

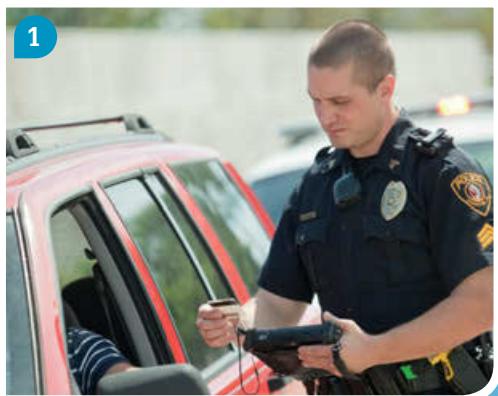
clear up leaves cover large areas
 deal with infringements find suitable pastures
 give somebody a fine have a criminal record
 keep public spaces tidy protect from predators
 round up the flock traffic/parking offences
 check identity conserve energy



Here are your pictures. They show people using different machines or devices. I'd like you to compare two of the pictures and say what problems the people might have with their jobs and how the machines or devices might help the people to do their jobs better.



- What problems might the people have in their jobs?
- How might the machines or devices help these people to do their work better?



1



2

- 2 Now take turns to do the task in Exercise 1.

- 3 10 Listen to Anna and Daniel doing the same speaking task. Which of these does Anna do? Write Yes or No.

- 1 Although she's not sure, she guesses what the policeman's device is.
- 2 She explains what the device is and what it can be used for.
- 3 She suggests just one way in which the policeman could be using the device.
- 4 She knows exactly what to call the man in the second picture.
- 5 She corrects herself when she realises she hasn't used the best word for something.
- 6 She tries to use phrases she's not sure about in order to express herself more clearly.
- 7 She deals with all parts of the task.

- 4 10 Complete each of these phrases by writing two words in each space. Then check your answers by listening again.

- 1 ... using what I think a tablet computer ...
- 2 The other picture shows – you call the person? – a cowboy or a shepherd, I'm not sure.
- 3 He's rounding up his herd, his flock of sheep.
- 4 He can check information in – the phrase? – in real time.
- 5 By using a – I'm not the name of the vehicle, is it a quad bike? – he doesn't have to walk or use a horse all day.

- 5 In which sentence(s) in Exercise 4 does Anna

- a correct herself?
- b say she's guessing what something is?
- c say she's not sure what the correct word is?

3



6 Work in pairs. Look at the six photos. Which of these phrases would you associate with each photo?

backbreaking work become disorientated
 combat the cold deep in the woods deep-sea diver
 deep underground handed down from father to son
 hard physical labour the heat and noise lack of oxygen
 lose your way plough a field skilled craftsmanship
 take pride in your work take strict safety precautions
 underwater archaeology

7 Work in pairs.

► 11 Student A: Look at photos 1–3 in Set A, listen to the examiner's instructions and do the task.

Set A

- Why might the people have chosen to do these activities in such remote places?
- What might be the dangers of doing each of them?



► 12 Student B: When Student A has finished, look at photos 4–6 in Set B, listen to the examiner's instructions and do the task.

Set B

- Why might the people be doing these activities in a traditional way?
- How difficult might it be to do these activities?



Exam advice

- Be ready to speculate or guess about what the photos show.
- If you notice you've made a mistake, correct it – don't pretend it hasn't happened!
- If you don't know a word, don't avoid the problem. Explain the idea using other words.

Reading and Use of English | Part 4

1 Correct the mistakes in these Part 4 answers.

1 You will get home from work to find I have cooked supper.

TIME

I will have supper cooked bythe time you will get..... home from work.

2 I am driving faster than ever before.

AS

It's the first time Idrive so fast..... as this.

3 They tested the car on a race track when they had solved the problem.

TRIED

With ...solving the problem, they tried.... the car on a race track.

2 For questions 1–6, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

1 It's pointless to go to the station by taxi in such heavy traffic.

POINT

The traffic is so heavy thata taxi to the station.

2 Karl didn't consult anyone before starting the project.

AHEAD

Karl wentconsulting anyone.

3 The accident was caused by ice on the road.

BLAME

Ice on the roadthe accident.

4 We had no idea the journey would take nearly so long.

FAR

The journeywe expected.

5 We didn't get to the party until all the food had been eaten.

TIME

There was no foodto the party.

6 Our view of the world has certainly been affected by new technology.

IMPACT

New technology has certainlywe view the world.

Exam advice

Read the original sentence, the word given and the sentence with the gap. Think about

- whether you need an expression, e.g. *it's not worth*
- whether you need a phrasal verb, e.g. *turn out*
- what grammar you will need, e.g. do you need to change a verb from active to passive, put something into reported speech, use a verb + *-ing*?

Writing | Part 1

An essay

1 Read the writing task and underline the key points.

Your class has participated in a discussion on the following proposition: *Technological progress makes us live faster, but it also means we have less time for the important things in life, such as relationships.*

You have made the notes below.

Some areas to cover

- entertainment
- working life
- health

Some opinions expressed during the discussion:

'In the past, large amounts of time were spent on chores.'

'Our great-grandparents could not have imagined the opportunities open to us today.'

'Technology allows us to communicate with more people.'

Write an essay on the proposition above. Discuss **two** of the areas in your notes, **expressing your own opinions** and **giving reasons** to support them.

You may, if you wish, make use of the opinions expressed during the discussion, but you should use your own words as far as possible.

2 Work in small groups. Discuss these questions and note down your opinions and ideas.

- 1 In what ways does technological progress make us live faster? Think of examples.
- 2 Do you agree that we have less time for the important things in life, such as relationships? Why (not)?

3 Work in pairs.

- 1 Read the essay below without paying attention to the gaps. Which ideas and examples were also mentioned during your discussion?
- 2 Which opinions from the essay task did the writer use? Did she express them using the same words or her own words?
- 3 Do you agree with the writer's conclusions? Why (not)?

Technological progress

Many people worry that we no longer have time for the important things in life, such as relationships and thinking about ourselves and our place in the universe. This may be true¹ but I think that in broad terms this argument is flawed.

In my great-grandparents' time technology was slower than it is at present. Most people travelled to work on foot or by public transport and may perhaps have had more time to think about things when they were travelling. They did not have the distractions of television, the Internet or all the other technological marvels which compete for our attention today.², they probably spent more time together in conversation.

³, I doubt if their relationships or the quality of their lives were really better.⁴, they had to work much longer hours, both in their jobs and in routine household tasks, because labour-saving technological devices did not exist.⁵, they did not have the financial resources or the technology to enjoy their leisure time like we do now. While they were perhaps not so stressed,⁶, they could not learn, travel and relate to people from all over the world with the ease that we do.

⁷, I do not agree that we have less time for the important things in life.⁸, I believe we have far greater opportunities to take advantage of the enormous variety of good things life has to offer.

4 Complete the essay by writing a phrase from the box in each of the gaps.

as a result however in conclusion to some extent what is more in contrast to ourselves in general on the contrary

5 Work in pairs. Which paragraph in the essay

- 1 explains in what ways the statement is not true?
- 2 explains to what extent the statement is true?
- 3 summarises the writer's argument?
- 4 tells us what point of view the writer is going to argue?

→ page 186 Writing reference: Essays

6 Read this writing task. How far do you agree with the proposition? Note down your ideas and opinions.

Your class has participated in a discussion on the following proposition: *People in the modern world have become too reliant on information technology.* You have made the notes below.

Some areas to cover

- working life
- studying
- leisure time

Some opinions expressed during the discussion:

'Most people spend too long using social media instead of seeing real people.'

'Instead of thinking about things carefully, most people just look for quick solutions on the Internet.'

'Information technology allows us to deal with so many things more quickly and efficiently.'

Write an essay on the proposition above. Discuss **two** of the areas in your notes, **expressing your own opinions** and **giving reasons** to support them.

You may, if you wish, make use of the opinions expressed during the discussion, but you should use your own words as far as possible.

7 Write an essay plan with a similar structure to the sample essay in Exercise 3. Note down the ideas and opinions you will express in each paragraph.

8 Write your essay.

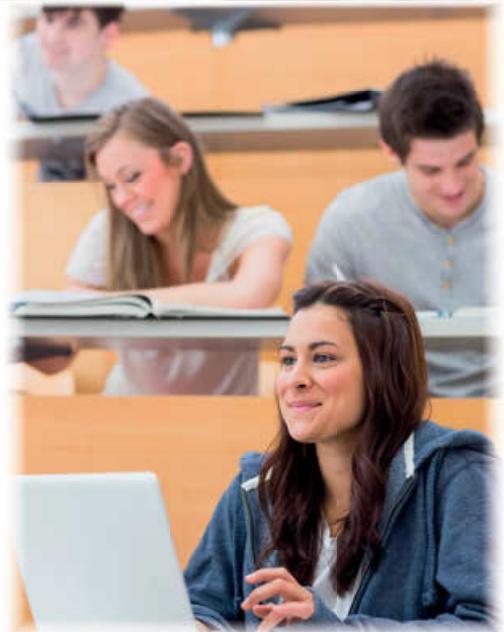
Exam advice

- Use a formal, academic style when you write an essay.
- Write a structured argument and link your ideas with phrases such as *for example*, *in conclusion*, *in contrast*.
- Show that you are aware of counter-arguments.
- Make sure that your opinion on the subject is clearly expressed.

Starting off

1 Work in pairs.

- 1 Look at the photos of different educational establishments. How many of these have you attended? Which did you enjoy most? Why?
- 2 Tell each other about your education to date. What do/ did you most like and dislike about the process?
- 3 In some countries, children start school at the age of four, while in others the age is seven. When did you start? What do you think is the most appropriate age?
- 4 What do you think is the optimum number of students in a class at primary, secondary and higher education levels?



2 How far do you agree or disagree with these opinions about education?

Tick the boxes (1 = strongly agree; 5 = strongly disagree).

	1	2	3	4	5
a Parents should have the choice of sending children to school or educating them themselves at home.					
b An education system which does not teach young people how to think for themselves is a failure.					
c My country's education systems encourage conformity and discourage originality and creativity.					
d A teacher's main job is to help pupils or students to pass examinations.					
e The main purpose of education is to equip young people with the practical skills they need for work.					
f The purpose of a university education is to produce future generations of leaders.					

3 Compare ideas with your partner and discuss any points of disagreement.

Listening | Part 2

1 Work in pairs.

- 1 Would you like to study abroad? Why (not)?
- 2 Which country/countries would you choose? Why?
- 3 What difficulties might you experience?
- 4 What difficulties might a foreign student experience in your country?
- 5 How do you think a period of study abroad would change you?

- 2** You will hear a British student talking about her daily life in Abu Dhabi, where she is currently spending a year studying. Which of these aspects of her life there do you think she might comment on?

climate food accommodation clothes language
transport lessons teaching staff exams social life

- 3**  **13** Listen to the recording to find out if any of your ideas are mentioned.

- 4** Now read the sentences below. Can you guess what word or phrase is missing from each sentence?

The speaker chose to study Arabic because one of the teachers had a (1) for the subject.

The language spoken in the city where she is studying is a (2) which people understand across the region.

The fact that students were a (3) who were not married meant that they were not allowed to stay at the first hotel.

One member of the group returned home soon after arriving because he was suffering from (4)

The (5) is located in a shopping area.

In the (6) they do with their teacher Ingy, the students learn how to shop for food.

Arabic pronunciation is not easy for the speaker because the back (7) has to be used to produce some sounds.

The speaker and her friends spend their weekends at a (8) where they can swim and lie by the pool.



- 5**  **13** Listen to the recording again. For questions 1–8 in Exercise 4 complete the sentences with a word or short phrase.

Exam advice

- Read the gapped sentences before you listen. This will show you how the recording is organised and give you an idea of the topic. The gaps in the sentences should provide a clear idea of what information you are listening for.
- Fill in the gaps with the actual words you hear, without changing them in any way.
- Check that your completed sentences are grammatically correct.
- Answer every question even if you are not sure.

6 Work in pairs.

- 1 Imagine you had the chance to study any language in the world.
 - Which language would you choose?
 - Where would you choose to learn it?
- 2 Do you think single-sex groups learn better than mixed-sex groups?
- 3 How influential do you think teachers are in students' choice of subjects?

Reading and Use of English | Part 1

- 1 You are going to read a short article describing the importance of training in the workplace. Before you read, do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

How much do you remember about Use of English Part 1? Circle the correct alternative in each of these sentences.

- 1 In Use of English Part 1 there is a text with *eight / ten* gaps.
- 2 For each gap you are given a choice of *three / four* possible answers.
- 3 You should read the text *before / after* reading the options.

- 2 Write your own definitions for these phrases, which appear in the article.

lifelong learning retraining
upgrade (your) skills

- 3 Work in pairs. Compare your definitions, then discuss these questions.

- 1 Why do some adults want to learn something new?
- 2 How is learning as an adult different from learning as a younger person?
- 3 Why do you think the idea of lifelong learning has become so popular in recent years?

- 4 Read the article *Why do we need lifelong learning?*. Does the writer mention any of the ideas you discussed?

- 5 Read the article again. For questions 1–8, decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).



Why do we need lifelong learning?

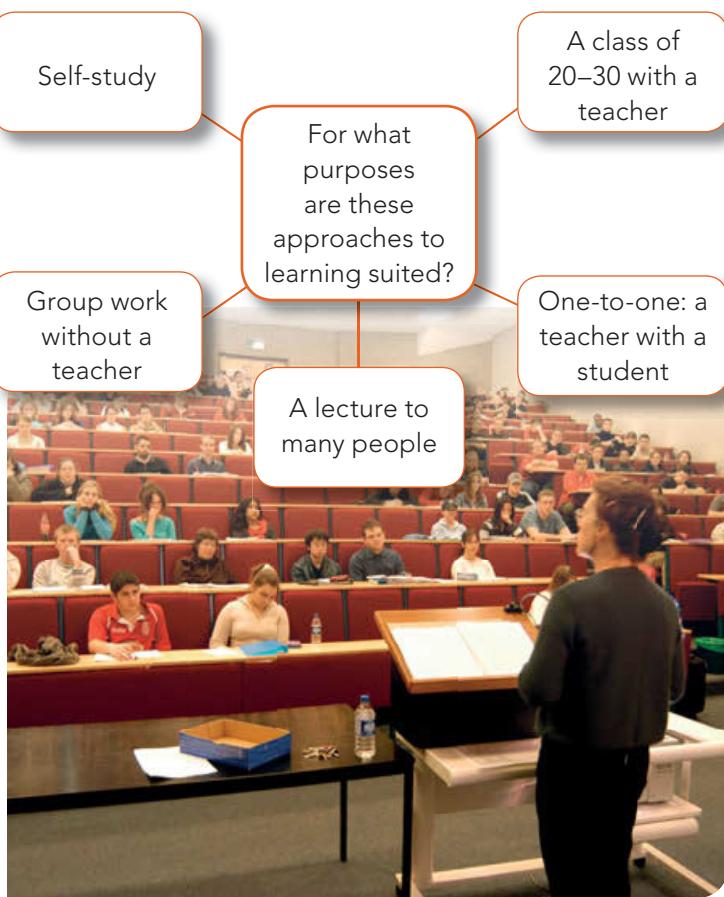
Incentives play an important (0) in our decisions to learn. As we age, the outcomes of (1) in learning are not the same as when we were younger. The type of work-related learning we do also changes as we get older. Most workers over 45 participate in learning (2) directly related to their function. By contrast, young workers are more likely to regard training as an (3) in their future careers.

Organisations want to continually renew their skills base and until recently have (4) this largely through a steady inflow of newly qualified young people onto the labour (5) Traditionally, we have had a mix of those young people, who bring new skills to the workplace, and a proportion of older workers, who (6) their experience. We are now seeing a decreasing proportion of young people entering the workforce and an increase in the proportion of older people. So unless we change the (7) of our learning across life, we will see a (8) in these new skills in the working population.

0 A focus	B game	C role	D feature
1 A participation	B joining	C attendance	D activity
2 A actions	B activities	C acts	D modules
3 A interest	B investment	C investigation	D inspiration
4 A affected	B fulfilled	C achieved	D succeeded
5 A workforce	B employment	C staff	D market
6 A donate	B supply	C contribute	D sell
7 A way	B method	C means	D nature
8 A decline	B cutback	C fall	D lessening

Speaking | Part 4

- 1 Work in pairs. Discuss these written prompts for a Speaking Part 3 task.



- 2 Questions 1–6 below are some possible Part 4 questions which might follow on from the written prompts you have been discussing. Which questions

- a ask you to choose between two options?
- b ask for an explanation of an established fact?
- c ask whether you agree with something or not?
- d ask for a number of different ideas?

- 1 Why do you think lectures are a more common as a form of teaching in universities than in schools?
- 2 What are the advantages and disadvantages of one-to-one teaching from a student's point of view?
- 3 Some people think that individual study is the least effective way of learning. Do you share this view? Why (not)?
- 4 Do you think project work is an approach more suited to older or younger students? Why?
- 5 Which do you think is more important from a student's point of view: a good teacher or a small class? Why?
- 6 Do you think that exams are the best and fairest means of assessing students? Why (not)?



- 3 How would you answer questions 1–6 in Exercise 2? Make brief notes.

- 4 Listen to two exam candidates discussing two of these questions. Which questions do they discuss? Do they express any ideas that are similar to yours?

- 5 Look at the following words and phrases from the recording. Which ones could you use to answer questions 1–6 in Exercise 2?

academic study class teaching individual student
learning style pair or group work primary school
programme of study range of abilities
secondary school

give clear instructions manage one's own learning
work independently

effective (in)formal motivated motivating
time-consuming

- 6 Work in pairs. Answer the questions in Exercise 2, taking turns to start the discussion. Use some of the language from Exercise 5 in your discussion.

Exam advice

- Listen very carefully to the question you are asked, but also to your partner because you may be asked to respond to something he/she says.
- Express your opinions clearly and be prepared to justify or explain what you say, or to suggest a range of possible ideas to answer the question.
- Remember that fluency is important, so make sure you give full answers.

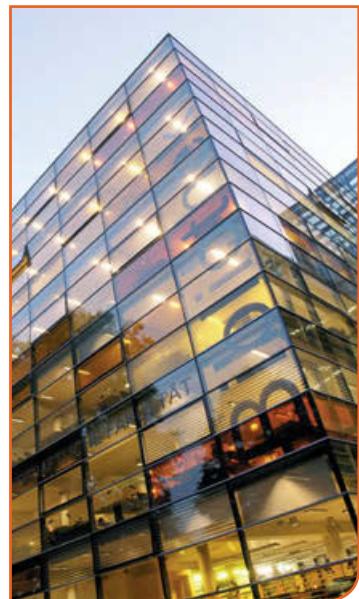
Reading and Use of English | Part 8

1 Imagine you are about to apply for a university course. Which of these factors would be most important to you in choosing which course to apply for?

- the location of the university
- the quality of teaching
- the reputation of the university
- the cost of tuition
- the number of students in each class/lecture
- the quality of student accommodation
- the help and support provided for applicants
- the atmosphere on the university campus
- the opportunities for socialising
- the non-academic facilities, e.g. for sports, entertainment, shopping

2 Which of the universities shown in the photos most appeals to you? Why? Compare your answers to this and Exercise 1 with other students.

3 You are going to read comments from five students explaining why they chose their university. First read questions 1–10 and underline the key ideas.



Which student

chose a university which sold itself more convincingly than others he/she had seen?

1

feels as if he/she really belongs to the university he/she chose?

2

is doing a degree course which precedes a course of professional training?

3

is hoping to pass on knowledge to others?

4

chose not to live in student accommodation even though he/she was impressed by it?

5

initially thought that the location of the campus was a negative feature?

6

was impressed by the teachers' enthusiasm for their subjects?

7

was very impressed by how knowledgeable the people he/she met on open day were?

8

was won over by the friendly welcome he/she received?

9

will leave university with a dual qualification?

10

4 Now read the texts. For questions 1–10, choose from the texts (A–E). The texts may be chosen more than once.

5 Work in small groups.

- 1 Discuss what measures could be taken to improve education in your country. Think about all levels, from nursery school to university.
- 2 Make a list of five suggestions to present to the rest of the class.

Exam advice

- The questions or statements precede the text(s) in this part of the exam. Study these carefully before you read the text(s).
- Read the text(s) carefully, looking for the information referred to in the ten questions or statements.
- Many of the sections may say similar things, so you will have to read carefully to decide which section answers the question exactly.

Choosing a university

Unit 10



A JASON

I decided right from the word go that I wanted to be about an hour away from home – close, but not too close. As luck would have it, my first open day was at this university – and I knew immediately that it would take a lot of beating. It was the whole package. Everyone I spoke to about the course was very clued up about their subjects, and seemed genuinely interested in teaching students, something that wasn't true everywhere. Although I liked the compact campus, the fact that the university is a fair way from the town centre put me off a bit to start with, because it meant I couldn't pop into town to do my shopping during my breaks, but I've got used to that.



D KAZUMI

My main reason for coming here was the Human Rights course. When I was at school I couldn't decide whether I wanted to be a doctor or a lawyer, but having decided to be a lawyer, I then had to choose which first degree I should take before starting law school in a different city. I've always wanted to help people and I figured that taking Human Rights would allow me to learn about how I can make a real difference in the world. The course lecturers were inspirational and passionate about their subjects – this has been evident in all of their lectures. I also decided to come here because it is a remarkable city. I had been here before and just fell in love with the city and its culture.



B MARIA

When the time came to select the university I wanted to go to, I was in a bit of a quandary. I'd spent weeks poring over the glossy brochures and I had eventually narrowed down my options to just three possibilities, but I still could not decide between them. So it was time to schedule campus tours to find out how the reality measured up to the hype. Every campus was different and of course they all had their advantages, but this place instantly appealed to me. It's difficult to put my finger on exactly why but for one thing, as soon as I arrived, I was struck by the smiles and greetings everyone gave me. I knew that this place had everything I wanted: a wide range of subjects, opportunities to become involved in student life, and staff who would have my best interests at heart. What I value most here is the feeling that I am part of a supportive community.



E VLADIMIR

The main reason I chose this university was its Engineering course. I am one of those people who just love maths, and I have always known that maths would be part of my career. I was torn between two possibilities: I could become an engineer and apply maths at a practical level, using it to solve problems and hopefully to change the world one day. Or I could combine my love of maths with my desire to help others by becoming a maths teacher. That way I knew I'd be changing the world one student at a time.

I needn't have worried because in the end I didn't have to choose! I got everything I wanted thanks to this course, which will qualify me to be a high school teacher while gaining a general engineering degree at the same time. So I'll be able to start teaching as soon as I qualify.



C OSVALDO

One of the reasons I chose this university was because of the effort that they put into organising the open day. The course representatives, including lecturers and current students, went to great lengths to provide an honest and enthusiastic overview of their courses and of life in the city. This was in marked contrast to other universities I visited which, although considered more prestigious, seemed content to let their reputation do the talking and put little effort into making us feel welcome or valued.

The location of the main campus, in the centre of a city with a thriving student population, was point two in this university's favour. Although I chose not to live on campus, the rooms there seemed comfortable and very reasonably priced.

Grammar

Expressing ability, possibility and obligation

1 Discuss these questions about extracts a–g from Reading and Use of English Part 8.

- 1 Which extracts express ability, which possibility and which obligation?
- 2 Do the extracts refer to the past, the present or the future?
 - a It meant I couldn't pop into town to do my shopping.
 - b I had narrowed down my options to just three possibilities, but I still could not decide between them.
 - c I then had to choose which first degree I should take before starting law school.
 - d I could become an engineer and apply maths at a practical level.
 - e I needn't have worried ...
 - f ... because in the end I didn't have to choose!
 - g I'll be able to start teaching as soon as I qualify.

2 Read these pairs of sentences and decide if both in each pair are correct. If both are correct, discuss the difference in meaning between them.

- 1 a I have to finish this essay, so I can't go out.
b I must finish this essay. I really want to do well.
- 2 a I didn't need to catch a taxi home from the airport.
My brother picked me up.
b I needn't have caught a taxi home from the airport.
My brother would have picked me up.
- 3 a You don't have to go to the lecture this afternoon.
It's optional.
b You mustn't go to the lecture this afternoon. It's only for first-year students.
- 4 a After a lot of effort, I could finally start the car engine.
b After a lot of effort, I finally managed to start the car engine.
- 5 a He can stay for up to 90 days with this kind of visa if he wants to.
b He could stay for up to 90 days with this kind of visa if he wanted to.
- 6 a In the future, we might not study in classrooms with other students.
b In the future, we could not study in classrooms with other students.

→ page 168 Language reference: Expressing ability, possibility and obligation

3  Exam candidates often make mistakes with modal verbs. Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences below.

- 1 He must have correct his work before he gave it to the teacher.
- 2 The students at the back of the lecture hall became frustrated because they can't hear very well.
- 3 I think they might lie to you when you bought the TV last week.
- 4 I'm happy to tell you that we could offer you a place on the degree course.
- 5 Could you tell me the name of the manager, so I would be able to contact him in the future?
- 6 If we afford the fees, our daughter will apply to this college.

4 Work in pairs. Tell each other about the following.

- things you can do that you're proud of
- something you couldn't do for a long time but eventually managed to do
- something you'd like to be able to do
- things you have to / don't have to do as part of your job or studies
- something you needn't have worried about
- something you really must do in the next few days



Vocabulary

chance, occasion, opportunity and possibility

1 Read these definitions. Then circle the correct alternatives in *italics* in the sentences below.

occasion

a particular time when something happens

My sister's wedding was a very special occasion.

Collocations

Adjectives *formal, historic, memorable, rare, solemn, special, unique*

Verbs *mark an occasion, rise to the occasion*

Use *on one occasion, the occasion when + clause*

opportunity

a situation in which it is possible to do something you want to do

I'm going to work in Hong Kong for a year. It's a great opportunity.

Collocations

Adjectives *equal, excellent, golden, perfect, tremendous, welcome*

Verbs *have, lose, miss, seize, take + the opportunity, opportunity + arise/occur*

Use *the opportunity to do something, the opportunity for + noun*

possibility

a situation where something may or may not happen

There's a definite possibility of a strike by train drivers next week.

Collocations

Adjectives *definite, distinct, real, remote, serious, slight, strong*

Verbs *face, accept, rule out, recognise, ignore + the possibility*

Use *the possibility of doing something [not possibility to do], the possibility that + clause*

- 1 Schools try to ensure that all students have an equal opportunity / possibility to succeed.
- 2 On several occasions / opportunities recently the university has made changes to the syllabus without consulting students.
- 3 If you study abroad, you should take every occasion / opportunity to learn the language.
- 4 There's a strong opportunity / possibility that you will win one of the three available scholarships.
- 5 Our graduation ceremony next week will be a very special opportunity / occasion.
- 6 According to the weather forecast, there's a distinct possibility / occasion of rain tomorrow.

2 **Chance** can mean *possibility* or *opportunity*, but is generally used less formally. Read these definitions and complete the sentences below with *chance*, *occasion*, *opportunity* or *possibility*. Sometimes two answers are possible.

chance

1 an occasion which allows something to be done; an opportunity

I'm afraid I didn't get the chance to tell him the good news.

Collocations

Adjectives *good, ideal, last, second, unexpected*

Verbs *get, have, deserve, welcome, give someone, take, turn down + the chance*

Use *the chance to do something*

2 likelihood; the level of possibility that something will happen

There's an outside chance that I'll have to go to Japan next week.

Collocations

Adjectives *fair, outside, realistic, reasonable, slim*

Verbs *be in with a chance / stand a chance of + -ing*

Use *the chance of doing something, there's a chance that + clause, by any chance, on the off chance, No chance!*

- 1 If you don't do well in your exams, you'll have the to retake them next summer.
- 2 Our education system is based on the principle of equal
- 3 Have you ever considered the of training to be a teacher?
- 4 If you go on working hard, you stand a good of getting into Harvard.
- 5 Your exams start on Monday, so this weekend is the last you'll have to revise.
- 6 I think there's a real that I'll get the grades I need.
- 7 We're having a party to celebrate the end of our exams – it'll be a great
- 8 Is there any that you could help me with my homework?
- 3 Complete these sentences with your own words, then compare ideas with a partner.
 - 1 I hope one day I'll have the opportunity ...
 - 2 Next year there's a possibility that I'll ...
 - 3 Unfortunately, I have very little chance of ever ...
 - 4 I hope the occasion never arises when I ...

Writing | Part 2

A report

1 Read the writing task and consider the facilities in a school or college that you know. How would you rate them, from your point of view as a student? Think about the following areas listed below and give each one a star rating (★★★ = excellent, ★★ = adequate, ★ = inadequate).

- classrooms
- study areas
- technological equipment
- food and drink
- leisure or sports facilities
- car parking

A committee is looking into ways of improving facilities in your place of study. The committee chairperson has asked you to write a report on the current situation and make suggestions for improvements. Address the interests of these three groups of people:

- students
- staff members: teachers and administrative staff
- visitors: prospective future students and others.

Write your report in 220–260 words.



2 Work in pairs and compare your ratings, giving reasons. Where you agree about facilities that are not adequate, discuss ways in which they could be improved.

3 Read this sample report without paying attention to the missing headings. Does the writer make any points that are similar to ones you and your partner have made?

Report on improving college facilities

(1)

The purpose of this report is to suggest ways in which college facilities could be improved for students, staff and visitors. The report is based on comments from these three groups and on my own observations.

(2)

Both students and staff commented on the need for increased provision of computers. Students would welcome more study areas equipped with computers, while staff felt strongly that they would also be able to work more efficiently if they had their own computer programmes.

(3)

Staff expressed the view that the cost of food in the canteen was unnecessarily high and recommended a reduction. Students did not mention price, but would appreciate a wider choice of food.

(4)

Dissatisfaction with car parking facilities was expressed by staff and visitors. Staff would like reserved spaces away from other parking areas, while visitors would be grateful for extra spaces to be made available to them, especially on certain weekday mornings. Visitors also said they would like key places, like the main reception, to be more clearly signposted from parking areas.

(5)

Students suggested that the gym and other sports facilities should be enlarged to take account of the increase in student numbers in recent years.

(6)

I would recommend implementing all the suggestions listed above with the exception of providing more car parking spaces. It is clear from past experience that demand for parking is never satisfied. I would suggest urging drivers to make alternative travel arrangements.



- 4** Choose the correct alternative in each of these statements about headings in a report.
- Headings need / don't need to be brief.
 - They are / are not usually in the form of a full sentence.
 - They should cover all the ideas / the main topic in the paragraph that follows.
- Now think of suitable headings for the sample report.
- 5** Discuss these questions.
- Apart from the title, how can you tell that the sample text is a report?
 - What structures are used with the verbs *recommend* and *suggest*?
 - What reporting verbs are used instead of *said*?
 - What verbs and phrases are used to mean *would like*?

6 Look at these phrases and think of more formal equivalents, which you might want to use in your report.

- families students stay with
- learning with the help of a computer
- mix with people
- more chance to speak
- pick up (a language)
- teachers who know what they're doing
- the number of students in a class
- things to do in your free time
- ways of teaching
- working on your own

→ page 191 Writing reference: Reports

7 Read the writing task below.

- Who will read the report you write?
- How many sections will you include in your report?
- What headings will you give these sections?

Numbers of foreign students attending a language school in your town have been falling recently and a governors' committee has been established to increase future numbers.

The school principal has asked you to write a report for this committee on the current situation and to recommend how more students could be attracted to the school. Your report should address the following:

- what attracts foreigners to your town
- new teaching methods and facilities that could be offered
- how leisure facilities and opportunities for socialising could be improved.

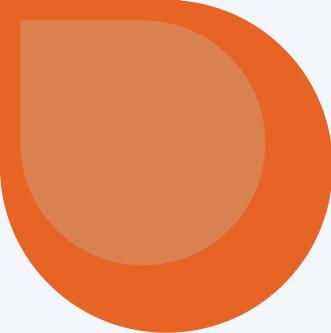
Write your **report** in 220-260 words.

8 Write your report, making use of the following:

- the verbs *suggest* and *recommend*
- a variety of reporting verbs
- a variety of words and phrases meaning the same as *would like*.

Exam advice

- Read the instructions carefully to identify who will read the report and what its purpose is.
- Deal with all the information in the input material.
- Give factual information and, if required, make recommendations.
- Organise your report clearly. You may want to divide it into sections with headings.



Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 9

Vocabulary

- 1 Complete the sentences below by writing the correct word, *action*, *activity*, *event* or *programme*, in the gaps.

- 1 The stadium is a hive of , with workers hurrying to get it finished before the games.
- 2 The authorities have asked the police to take against anyone caught scrawling graffiti on the town hall.
- 3 The sporting I most enjoy doing is sailing.
- 4 Can you look on the to see when the interval is?
- 5 For me, one of the most exciting and historic of the last century was the fall of the Berlin Wall.
- 6 The final of this weekend's festival of Irish culture will be a traditional folk dance.
- 7 Thanks to prompt by the fire service, the school fire was prevented from spreading to the neighbouring houses.
- 8 The government plans to unveil its electoral later today.

- 2 For questions 1–8 read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Commuters on bikes

Cyclists who commute readily make the (0) *admission*..... that part of the reason for riding a bike is to beat the traffic. There is a thrill in weaving around (1) stationary cars. Also, without licence plates any traffic (2) they commit is virtually untraceable. 'It's really exciting to look at your speedometer and see that you're going at 30 miles an hour,' said one (3) in our survey. Many cyclists now record their (4) journeys to work with a camera mounted on their helmet and post them online to show the trip in (5) detail. There are now cyclists who also record (6) or dangerous driving and post it online to shame the drivers.

What the speed of bikes and their mass (7) have done is foster an attitude of moral (8) : that because cyclists are so vulnerable, it is everyone else who should be on the lookout for them.

ADMIT
APPEAR
OFFEND
INTERVIEW
DAY
GRAPH
CONSIDER
AVAILABLE
SUPERIOR

Grammar

- 3 Circle the correct alternative in *italics* in each of the following sentences.

- 1 Sonia will call you as soon as she *will finish* / *has finished* lunch.
- 2 I'll do the cooking tonight when everyone else *works* / *is working*.
- 3 It wasn't until the match *was* / *had been* over that he realised he'd strained a muscle.
- 4 I haven't seen him at all since he *is working* / *has been working* there.
- 5 In future, please don't call me while *I will have* / *I'm having* my supper.
- 6 Rory learnt to speak Arabic perfectly when he *was working* / *had worked* in Cairo.
- 7 As soon as the teacher *has arrived* / *arrived*, we started work.
- 8 Tracey and Pierre performed together in perfect harmony and while she *played* / *was playing* the piano, he sang in a high tenor voice.

Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 10

Vocabulary

- 1 Circle the correct alternatives in *italics* in each of these sentences.
- 1 The system aims to give everyone *an equal / a same* opportunity at the beginning of their lives.
 - 2 Friday is the *last / late* chance we'll have to enter the competition.
 - 3 The swearing-in of the first woman president was a *historic / historical* occasion.
 - 4 There's a *slight / little* possibility that I won't be back in time for tomorrow's meeting.
 - 5 Don't *lose / miss* this *gold / golden* opportunity to win a two-week holiday in the south of France.
 - 6 There seems to be a *factual / real* possibility that the party will lose at the next election.
 - 7 The funeral of the firefighters who died in the blaze was a very *depressed / solemn* occasion.
 - 8 In my opinion, everyone deserves a *next / second* chance in life.
- 2 For questions 1–8, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. There is an example at the beginning.

Adult learners have many (0) *characteristics* that distinguish them from school or college learners. Firstly, they come to courses with experiences and (1) in diverse areas. They often prefer practical learning (2) that enable them to draw on the skills and experience they have acquired. In the main, adults have (3) aims and have (4) insights into what is likely to be successful. In addition to this, they are (5) able to relate new facts to past experiences and enjoy having their talents explored in (6) situations. Adults have established opinions and beliefs, which have been formed over time through their experience of families, work, community, or politics.

A (7) of adults also have intrinsic motivation and their effort increases because of their desire to learn. They are also motivated by the (8) of the material to be addressed, and learn better when material is related to their own needs and interests.

CHARACTER
KNOW
ACT
REAL
VALUE
READY
LEARN
MAJOR
RELEVANT

Grammar

- 3 Complete these sentences with the correct form of *must, need* or *have to*. In some cases more than one answer is possible.
- 1 My new job starts next Monday. Hopefully, I work such long hours as I do now.
 - 2 I make sure I wake up in time for my first lecture. Yesterday, I didn't have any lectures, so I get up at all.
 - 3 Our lecturers have told us that we send them our assignments by email, otherwise they won't mark them. This means we have our own email.
 - 4 Take it easy! Today's lecture's been cancelled, so you hurry.
 - 5 You smoke in here. Didn't you see the sign? If you want a cigarette, you go outside.
 - 6 I get some cash out before the weekend – otherwise I'm going to run out.
- 4 Four of these sentences have mistakes with modal verbs. Correct the mistakes.
- 1 It's a complicated route – I hope I could find my way back.
 - 2 You can find all the information you'll ever need on Wikipedia.
 - 3 We're delighted to inform you that we could offer you the post of manager.
 - 4 At the fourth attempt I could pass my driving test. The first three times, I failed spectacularly.
 - 5 If you were a fast reader, you could be able to finish that novel in one evening.

Starting off

- 1 Work in pairs. The photos show different types of travel experience. Choose two of the photos and think of vocabulary, phrases, expressions and topics which are relevant to the photos.

Example

Photo 1: hardship, proving themselves, a voyage into the unknown, rapids, waterfalls, mosquitoes, exploration, chilly, remote wilderness, inhospitable countryside

- 2 Write two questions asking for someone's opinions on topics arising from the photos you chose.

Example

Some people think you can learn a lot about yourself from travel involving hardship. Do you agree?

- 3 Ask several different people in the class the questions you have written.
 4 When you have finished, work with your original partner and compare the answers you heard.



Listening | Part 1

- 1** Before you start Listening Part 1, do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Circle the correct option in *italics* for each of the statements below.

In Listening Part 1

- 1 you hear *three / five* different extracts
- 2 the extracts are on the *same theme / different themes*
- 3 you must choose A, B or C / A, B, C or D and you hear each piece *once / twice*
- 4 before you listen, you should *read the questions / read the questions and underline the key ideas*
- 5 you should *listen to the whole extract before making your choices / make your choices as you listen.*

- 2** You will hear three different extracts. Before you listen, underline the key idea in each question.

Extract one

You hear a conversation between a man and a woman who are travelling on a river.

- 1 What complaint does the man make about the journey?
 - A He would prefer something more exciting.
 - B He would like protection from insects.
 - C He would prefer healthier surroundings.
- 2 How does the woman react to what the man says?
 - A She takes offence at being criticised.
 - B She suggests alternative activities.
 - C She reprimands him for his attitude.



5



6

Extract Two

You hear a woman and a man planning a sponsored walk.

- 3 The man insists the journey should go ahead because
 - A they will not be affected by bad weather.
 - B they have plenty of time to complete it.
 - C they have promised that they would do it.
- 4 What do they agree will happen if they don't reach their objective?
 - A They will suffer economically.
 - B They will be less well regarded.
 - C They will have to try again later.

Extract Three

You hear a conversation between a man and a woman who have both visited the same country.

- 5 The man thinks travellers gain more from their visit to the country if they
 - A avoid hasty judgments about what they encounter.
 - B are ready to try new experiences when they arise.
 - C prepare for potential problems in advance.
- 6 How does the woman feel about her journey now?
 - A relieved that she completed it safely
 - B surprised by the conditions she encountered
 - C grateful to her travelling companions
- 3 **► 15** Listen and for questions 1–6, choose the answer (A, B or C) which fits best according to what you hear.
- 4 Work in pairs. What's the hardest journey you've ever made?

Vocabulary

Phrasal verbs

- 1** **15** Listen again to the recording for Listening Part 1 and match these phrasal verbs with their definitions from the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*.

- 1 count on something
 - 2 sign up (for something)
 - 3 let someone down
 - 4 put something off
 - 5 set off (on something)
 - 6 go through with something
 - 7 never live something down
 - 8 pay up
 - 9 come up
- a do something unpleasant or difficult that has already been agreed or promised
 - b agree to become involved in an organised activity
 - c be unable to stop feeling embarrassed about something you have done
 - d decide or arrange to delay an event or activity until a later time or date
 - e disappoint someone by failing to do what you agreed to do or were expected to do
 - f expect something to happen and make plans based on it
 - g give someone the money that you owe them
 - h happen, usually unexpectedly
 - i start a journey

- 2** Complete these sentences by writing one of the phrasal verbs in the correct form in each gap.

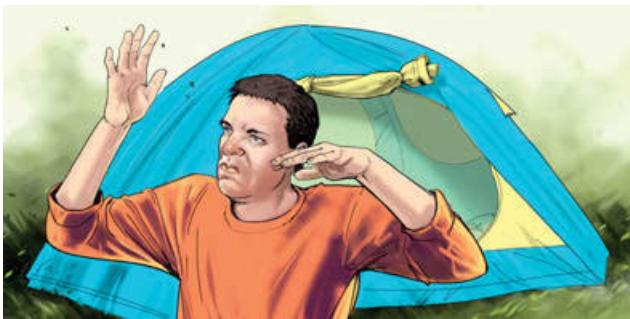
- 1 All sorts of unexpected things can if you travel without a detailed programme or plan.
- 2 I've to help with the sponsored walk on Sunday and I hope I haven't taken on too much.
- 3 Marie made some rather foolish remarks and now she feels she'll
- 4 Martina didn't want to her friends by not turning up to their party.
- 5 Sasha the start of the climb till he'd got over the injury to his ankle.
- 6 Unless you , I won't have enough money to go on holiday this year.
- 7 We were late and that's why we were late arriving.
- 8 You'll need to take some waterproof clothes because you can't the weather being good at this time of year.
- 9 He threatened to leave the expedition, but I never expected him to it.

Grammar

Conditionals

- 1** Work in pairs. Look at the ten sentences a–j from Listening Part 1. Which sentences refer to

- 1 past time?
- 2 past and present time?
- 3 just present time?
- 4 future time?
- 5 any time because the speaker is making a general point?



- a If I'd known about the mosquitoes, I'd never have signed up for this.
- b If only you would put on some repellent!
- c If you would please just stop moaning for a while, perhaps we could start enjoying ourselves a bit.
- d Even if we had stayed at home, it would be better because I would be relaxing in front of the telly right now instead of paddling up this miserable river.
- e So, what will we do if the weather breaks?
- f Look, if things start looking really bad, we can always put the walk off for a while and set off a bit later.
- g If we don't do it, we'll never live it down.
- h Still, I guess they'd pay up anyway even if we didn't make it, wouldn't they?
- i If you leave yourself open to whatever comes up, it can be very rewarding.
- j It could all have been quite dull otherwise, you know.

- 2** Read these sentences and answer the questions about them.

Even if we had stayed at home, it would be better because I would be relaxing in front of the telly right now instead of paddling up this miserable river.

- 1** Why is the underlined verb in the continuous?

If it hadn't been snowing while we were waiting for the bus, we wouldn't have got so cold.

- 2** Do the verbs in this sentence refer to present or past time?
- 3** Why does the speaker say 'hadn't been snowing', not 'hadn't snowed'?

Terry wouldn't have insisted on climbing to the top of the mountain if he wasn't so stubborn.

- 4 Which underlined verb refers to past time?
- 5 How would the meaning change if we said, 'If he hadn't been so stubborn.'?

→ page 165 Language reference: Conditionals

- 3 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form. You will need to decide on the correct conditional form and whether the verb should be simple or continuous.

- 1 If you (not leave) the map at home, we (not wander) around this forest right now, looking for somewhere to spend the night.
- 2 Innsbruck is a lovely city and if I (not rush) to catch a train just now, I (be) happy to show you around a bit.
- 3 Kamal always thinks he knows best, and if he (not be) such an obstinate man, we (probably reach) the hotel by now instead of being stuck in this traffic jam.
- 4 'What do you do when you fall ill on holiday?'
'Well, it hasn't happened to me yet, but I guess I (try) to find a local doctor who spoke some English. If I (be) seriously ill, I (have) to get help from the consulate.'
- 5 If I (be) you, I (carry) my money in a money belt.
- 6 It was your own fault. The accident (not happen) if you (concentrate) properly at the time.
- 7 Karen is an intrepid traveller and I don't imagine she (ever abandon) a journey unless she (travel) somewhere really unpleasant or dangerous.
- 8 If you (like) to come with me, I (show) you to your room.



- 4 These sentences each contain one mistake made by exam candidates. Correct the mistakes.

- 1 If you eat so much chocolate, you wouldn't enjoy the delicious cake I've made.
- 2 I would be grateful if you send me a reply at your earliest convenience.
- 3 If you do not give me a refund, I am obliged to write to the local council.
- 4 If you had followed all my instructions, you would now stand in front of the cathedral.
- 5 In my country few people smoke, so if I were you, I won't smoke at all.
- 6 If I was able to travel back in history and I had the chance to choose where exactly to go, then I would have travelled four centuries into the past.

- 5 For questions 1–6, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

- 1 As long as I know you'll support me, I won't worry about money.
COUNT
Provided I support me, I won't worry about money.
- 2 I don't think we'll miss the train if we leave home on time.
LONG
We should manage to catch the train off from home on time.
- 3 Martin is only working late tonight because he has to finish an urgent job.
UNLESS
Martin would not he had to finish an urgent job.
- 4 Ellie was given a trophy by her school because she had worked so hard.
PRESENTED
Ellie's school a trophy if she had not worked so hard.
- 5 Could you please cancel my appointment?
GRATEFUL
I cancel my appointment.
- 6 If it had not been for some unexpected difficulties, we would not be feeling so stressed.
COME
If some unexpected difficulties , we would not be feeling so stressed.

Reading and Use of English | Part 5

- 1** Before starting Reading and Use of English Part 5, do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Say if the following statements are true (T) or false (F). If a statement is false, rewrite it to make it true.

In Reading and Use of English Part 5

- 1 there are six questions and you have to choose the best option: A, B, C or D
- 2 you should read the questions before reading the text
- 3 the questions are answered in random order in the text
- 4 you should read the options after reading the section of text that is relevant to each question.

- 2** Work in pairs. You will read an extract from a book by Paul Theroux about a journey he made through Africa. Before you read, look at the photos here and on the next page.

- 1 Which aspects of your daily life and routine would you like to escape from by making a journey?
 - 2 What things do you think a man in his 60s would want to escape from? Why? Do you think they are the same or different from the things young people want to escape from when they travel?
- 3** Read the text quickly. Why did the writer choose to travel in Africa again?



Disappearing into Africa



I wanted the pleasure of being in Africa again. Feeling that the place was so large it contained many untold tales and some hope and comedy and sweetness too, I aimed to reinsert myself in the bundu, as we used to call the bush, and to wander the antique hinterland. There I had lived and worked, happily, almost forty years ago, in the heart of the greenest continent.

- 10** In those old undramatic days of my school teaching in the bundu, folks lived their lives on bush paths at the end of unpaved roads of red clay, in villages of grass-roofed huts. They had a new national flag, they had just gotten the vote, some had bikes, many talked about buying their first pair of shoes. They were hopeful, and so was I, a schoolteacher living near a settlement of mud huts among dusty trees and parched fields – children shrieking at play; and women bent double – most with infants slung on their backs – hoeing the corn and beans; and the men sitting in the shade.
- 20** The Swahili word safari means ‘journey’, it has nothing to do with animals, someone ‘on safari’ is just away and unobtainable and out of touch. Out of touch in Africa was where I wanted to be. The wish to disappear sends many travellers away. If you are thoroughly sick of being kept waiting at home or at work, travel is perfect: let other people wait for a change. Travel is a sort of revenge for having been put on hold, or having to leave messages on answering machines, not knowing your party’s extension, being kept waiting all your working life – the homebound writer’s irritants. But also being kept waiting is the human condition.

Travel in the African bush can also be a sort of revenge on mobile phones and email, on telephones and the daily paper, on the creepier aspects of globalisation that allow anyone who chooses to get their insinuating hands on you. I desired to be unobtainable. I was going to Africa for the best of reasons – in a spirit of discovery; and for the pettiest – simply to disappear, to light out, with a suggestion of I dare you to try to find me.



Home had become a routine, and routines make time pass quickly. I was a sitting duck in this predictable routine: people knew when to call me, they knew when I would be at my desk. I was in such regular touch it was like having a job, a mode of life I hated. I was sick of being called up and importuned, asked for favors, hit up for money. You stick around too long and people begin to impose their own deadlines on you.

Everyone always available at any time in the totally accessible world seemed to me pure horror. It made me want to find a place that was not accessible at all ... 50 no phones, no Internet, not even mail delivery, the wonderful old world of being out of touch; in short, of being far away.

All I had to do was remove myself. I loved not having to ask permission, and in fact in my domestic life things had begun to get a little predictable, too – Mr Paul at home every evening when Mrs Paul came home from work. ‘I made spaghetti sauce ... I seared some tuna ... I’m scrubbing some potatoes ...’ The writer in his apron, perspiring over his béchamel sauce, always within 60 earshot of the telephone. You have to pick it up because it is ringing in your ear.

A morbid aspect of my departure for Africa was that people began offering condolences. Say you’re leaving for a dangerous place and your friends call sympathetically, as though you’ve caught a serious illness that might prove fatal. Yet I found these messages unexpectedly stimulating, a heartening preview of what my own demise would be like. Lots of tears! Lots of mourners! But also, undoubtedly, many 70 people boasting solemnly, ‘I told him not to do it. I was one of the last people to talk to him.’

From *Dark Star Safari* by Paul Theroux

4 For questions 1–6, choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

- 1** What did Paul expect from his journey?
 - A to have a variety of enjoyable experiences
 - B to see how Africa had changed
 - C to meet some old friends
 - D to see impressive scenery
- 2** Forty years ago, how did Paul feel about the future of the country where he was living?
 - A Little was likely to change.
 - B People’s aspirations were too limited.
 - C Women would do most of the work.
 - D Things were likely to improve.
- 3** In paragraph 3, what reason does Paul give for wanting to travel to Africa?
 - A He wanted people to be unable to contact him.
 - B He wanted a change of activity.
 - C His health was suffering from staying at home.
 - D He had been waiting to return to Africa for many years.
- 4** Paul says ‘I was a sitting duck’ in paragraph 5 to show that
 - A he was bored.
 - B he was easy to find.
 - C he had a fixed lifestyle.
 - D he was always lending money.
- 5** Paul mentions his cooking activities
 - A to show he can look after himself.
 - B to explain why the phone was within earshot.
 - C to show how he was a good husband.
 - D to show why he felt trapped.
- 6** In the final paragraph, what is Paul’s reaction to his friends’ messages?
 - A sadness about leaving them
 - B surprise at their excitement
 - C pleasure at their concern
 - D annoyance at their seriousness

5 Work in small groups.

- 1 Would you be happy to be out of touch on a journey?
- 2 What can be the benefits/drawbacks of travelling to a place with a very different culture from your own?

Vocabulary

at, in and on to express location

1 Complete the sentences below with *at*, *in* or *on*. Then check your answers by looking again at the text in Reading and Use of English Part 5.

- 1 I wanted the pleasure of being Africa again.
 - 2 There I had lived and worked, the heart of the greenest continent.
 - 3 Folks lived their lives bush paths the end of unpaved roads of red clay, villages of grass-roofed huts.
 - 4 ... women bent double – most with infants slung their backs.
 - 5 If you are thoroughly sick of being kept waiting home or work, travel is perfect.
 - 6 People knew when to call me, they knew when I would be my desk.
 - 7 Everyone always available at any time the totally accessible world seemed to me pure horror.
- 2** Work in pairs. Which preposition, *at*, *in* or *on*, is used to talk about the following? Find examples for each rule in Exercise 1.
- a a position which is thought of as a point, not an area *at* (3, 6)
 - b a position in contact with a surface
 - c a position along a border or boundary (e.g. the coast, the ocean) or along something which connects two places (e.g. a road, a river)
 - d a position within a larger area or space

► page 163 Language reference: *at, in and on to express location*

3  Each of these sentences contains a mistake with prepositions made by exam candidates. Correct the mistakes.

- 1 I come from Mendoza, a town of Argentina.
- 2 I'd like to introduce you to my boss, whose office is at the 5th floor.
- 3 Portugal is one of the most beautiful countries of the world.
- 4 Public phones are available at almost every large square.
- 5 She spends far too long talking at her mobile phone.
- 6 There's a garage at the left and I live just two doors along from it.
- 7 We waited at a queue for more than twenty minutes.
- 8 You will find a youth hostel in almost every island.
- 9 You'll find a large shopping centre at the outskirts of the city.
- 10 She decided to go and live for a year to Italy.

Reading and Use of English | Part 2

1 Before doing Reading and Use of English Part 2, answer the questions in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Work in pairs. How much do you remember about Reading and Use of English Part 2? Discuss these questions.

- 1 How many questions are there in this part?
- 2 What should you do before you start filling the gaps?
- 3 If you can't think of a word for a gap, what should you do?
- 4 How important is correct spelling?
- 5 What should you do when you have finished?

2 Work in pairs. Some people suggest that in the future virtual travel using computer and internet technology may replace real travel.

- 1 What advantages would virtual travel have over real travel?
- 2 Would you prefer it?
- 3 You will read a short article about two people who were searching for an island. Read the article quickly, without paying attention to the gaps, to find out how they found the island.

Island wanted

A few years ago, Ben Keene and Mark James launched Tribewanted (0) in a torrent of media coverage. (1) they had had was a simple idea with potentially enormous consequences for tourism: the creation of an eco-friendly sustainable community existing simultaneously in the virtual world of the Internet and (2) an actual desert island.

How do you go (3) finding an island? Where (4) would you look but on the Internet? Ben and Mark could have bought islands anywhere in the world (5) that they had been able to pay the typical starting price of one million dollars. They were not having much luck (6) their searches finally led them to a specialist island broker who pointed them towards Vorovoro, off the wild north coast of Fiji. With just (7) money on Ben's credit card for two return tickets, they decided to have a look. No (8) had they seen it than they decided to buy it.

Adapted from *The Guardian*

4 Work in pairs. For questions 1–8, read the article again and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).

5 Work in pairs.

- 1 Would you be interested in spending time on a small Pacific island? Why (not)?
- 2 What do you think is meant by eco-tourism and why is it important?

6 Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

Paradise found

My atlas index shows eight entries for ‘Paradise’. There is (0)one..... missing, though: Paraíso in the Dominican Republic. (1)you look carefully at a detailed map of the country, you are unlikely to notice its name there, because this particular paradise with its stunning beaches, situated (2)a virgin coastline of jungle-clad mountains, has so (3)escaped the indexers, as well as most of the four million tourists who visit the island annually. As the majority head for the resorts of the east and north coasts, they miss (4)entirely on the gorgeous southwestern triangle that dips deep into the Caribbean and embraces Paraíso. And it is incredible (5)they miss! The resort offers the (6)enchanting combination of scenery, wildlife and good food you can imagine and this bounty has (7)only inspired a handful of independent lodges but also earned the region its status (8)the Dominican Republic’s only biosphere reserve, which is not a bad setting for Paraíso.

Adapted from *The Independent*



Speaking | Part 1

1 Work in pairs. Which of the questions below could you answer using conditional verb forms?

- 1 If you could travel anywhere in the world, where would you choose to go? Why?
- 2 If some friends from abroad were visiting your region, which places would you take them to see? Why?
- 3 What things do you most enjoy doing when travelling on holiday? Why?
- 4 Do you find it’s useful that you can speak English when you travel? Why?
- 5 What’s the best time of year for people to visit your country? Why?
- 6 Would you enjoy going on an adventurous, possibly dangerous journey? Why (not)?
- 7 What is the most interesting place you have ever travelled to? Why?
- 8 If you could choose something completely different from your usual type of holiday, what would you choose? Why?
- 9 Would you enjoy working with tourists? Why?
- 10 Would you prefer to spend a year travelling or to spend a year working? Why?

2 **16** Listen to three people, Laura, Daniel and Marta, answering questions from the list 1–10 above.

- 1 Which question is each of them answering?
- 2 Which speakers use conditional forms in their answers?
- 3 Do they use conditional verb forms all the time? Why (not)?
- 4 Who sounds most enthusiastic in their answer? What words do they use which show enthusiasm? What other way do they have of showing enthusiasm?
- 5 Do the speakers repeat the words of the questions, or do they express the ideas using their own vocabulary? Why is this a good idea in the exam?

3 Take turns to ask each other the questions in Exercise 1.

Student A: Ask your partner questions 1, 3, 5, 7 and 9.

Student B: Ask your partner questions 2, 4, 6, 8 and 10.

Exam advice

- Before going to the Speaking test, make sure you can speak about your work, your studies, your family, the area where you live and your free-time interests.
- Expand your answers with reasons, examples and extra information.

Writing | Part 2

A review

- 1** Read this writing task and underline the points you must deal with in your answer.

You see the announcement below on a website called travelfortravellers.com.

HOTELS NEAR ME

We'd like to know what local people think of different hotels in their area, so we're opening a section written by local people to help visitors to choose the hotel which suits them best.

Send us a review which recommends two hotels in your area for two different types of visitor and says what sort of visitor each hotel would suit and why.

Write your review in 220–260 words.

- 2** Work in pairs. Make notes on the following points.

- the two types of visitor you could write for
- what things each type of visitor would want to know about when reading a review

- 3** Discuss: Which of these do you think would be the best plan for the review?

Plan A

Para 1: Introduction: why different types of hotel suit different visitors

Paras 2 and 3: Features of hotel 1

Paras 4 and 5: Features of hotel 2

Para 6: Conclusion: the type of visitor each hotel would suit and why

Plan B

Para 1: Introduction: the range of hotels available in your area, which two you have chosen to review and why

Para 2: Comparison of rooms and prices in each hotel

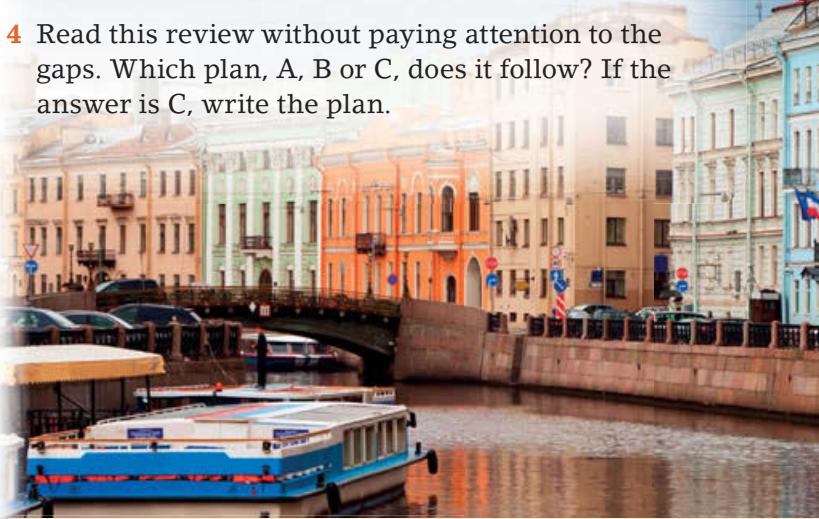
Paras 3 and 4: Comparison of other features in each hotel, e.g. business facilities, restaurant, gym

Para 5: Conclusion: the type of visitor each hotel would suit and why

Plan C

If you don't like either Plan A or Plan B, discuss and write your own plan for the review.

- 4** Read this review without paying attention to the gaps. Which plan, A, B or C, does it follow? If the answer is C, write the plan.



Two hotels in St Petersburg

St Petersburg is an important business as well as tourist destination.¹....., business people often don't like sharing their hotels with tour groups and require different facilities.²....., holidaymakers want a break from the serious atmosphere of a business hotel. Each of the hotels I recommend caters for a different type of visitor.

Situated on Nevski Prospect not far from the Hermitage Museum, Nevinski Hostel is a compact, moderately-priced hotel which would suit backpackers and tourists on a tight budget. The rooms are clean and airy.³..... quite basic, with twin beds and en-suite bathrooms.

Nevski Prospect is the main shopping street, so it wouldn't suit light sleepers⁴..... you should expect some noise⁵..... from the constant





traffic and perhaps from other boisterous guests. Unfortunately, the hotel lacks a restaurant, so you'll have to find your own breakfast in one of the many cafés nearby. However, the staff are friendly and helpful.
6..... the hotel has bicycles available for its guests to explore this beautiful city at their leisure.

Peter the Great Hotel is an elegant, moderately-sized business hotel situated in a converted neoclassical palace not far from the statue of the Bronze Horseman, with fabulous views across the Neva River.
7..... its five stars indicate, the hotel offers luxurious, spacious rooms at a price. It contains a range of well-equipped conference rooms
8..... a gourmet restaurant allowing business people to entertain clients in style. The management and staff are competent and professional, as you'd expect, and will organise trips and events to make your stay
9..... productive but pleasurable too.

Whichever hotel you stay at, St Petersburg won't fail to delight you.

5 Complete the review in Exercise 4 by writing one of these linking words/phrases in each gap.

an added attraction is that as (x2)
both equally however not only
though together with

6 Read the review again and note down adjectives used to describe

- 1 the hotels in general
- 2 the rooms
- 3 the staff.

7 Work in pairs.

- 1 How would you describe the style of the review? Choose a, b or c and give reasons for your choice.
 - a very colloquial and informal
 - b informative, but with some informal features; it addresses the reader personally
 - c formal and academic
- 2 The style in which the exam task is written often indicates the style in which the answer can be written. Which two style features of the task in Exercise 1 are also used in the sample review?

8 Prepare to write your own review.

- Make any changes you want to your plan in Exercise 3.
- Consider whether you want to use any of the adjectives you noted in Exercise 6.
- Underline any other words and phrases you would like to use from Exercises 4 and 5.

9 Write your review.

→ page 189 Writing reference: Reviews

Exam advice

You will often have to compare two things in your review.

- Think about your target readers and what information they need.
- Write a plan thinking about each of the things you want to describe and in what order.
- Decide what recommendation(s) you are going to make and include them in your answer.

Starting off

1 Work in pairs. Look at the newspaper headlines and photos, and discuss these questions.

- 1 Which headlines do the two photographs illustrate?
- 2 What environmental issues do the headlines relate to?
- 3 Which headlines suggest an optimistic view of the future?



A China to build wind power complex

B U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service to Consider Black-footed Albatross for Protection

C Pollutant linked to bronchitis in toddlers

D Britons top table of carbon emissions from planes

E Is the bio fuel dream over?

F Arctic Melt Opens Northwest Passage

- 2 Which environmental issue do you consider to be the most important at the present time, in your country or internationally? When you have decided, write a headline to draw attention to this issue.

Listening | Part 2

- 1 Before you start Listening Part 2, do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Say if the following statements are true (T) or false (F). If a statement is false, rewrite it to make it true.

In Listening Part 2

- 1 you have to complete six sentences
- 2 no more than two words will be missing from each sentence
- 3 the sentences are not identical to sentences on the recording
- 4 you should read the gapped sentences after you have listened
- 5 if you are not sure of an answer, leave it blank.

- 2 You are going to listen to a radio talk about the effects of climate change on the Inuit people of the Arctic. Before you listen, look at the photo on page 129 and discuss these questions.

- 1 What natural resources do you think the Inuit have traditionally depended on?
- 2 How do you think climate change is affecting the Inuit?
- 3 What information would you like to find out about the Inuit people?



- 3** **17** Listen to the brief introduction to the talk about the Inuit people. What information does the speaker give about the natural resources you discussed in Exercise 2?
- 4** **18** Now listen to a professor of anthropology talking about problems facing the Inuit people. For questions 1–8, complete the sentences with a short word or phrase.

Professor Moore believes that the majority of (1) are likely to be familiar with the concept of global warming.

The Inuit are alarmed by the damage which is occurring to their (2), which is characterised by such phenomena as melting ice sheets.

A ring around the moon was one of the (3) which the Inuit people used to rely on.

Elderly Inuit people give (4) of wildlife suffering as a result of climate change.

The belief of the Inuit people that the Arctic is melting is now supported by (5)

Warning signs include the erosion of (6) and the disappearance of lakes.

George Hobson believes the Inuit people have survived because they have a (7) of their environment.

The elderly Inuit woman believes that her people may be unable to (8) to what is happening to the environment.

5 Discuss these questions.

- 1 Are there other groups of people who are suffering directly from climate change? What can be done to help groups like this?
- 2 What 'traditional knowledge' is associated with your culture? How do people view this knowledge today?

Vocabulary

Prepositions following verbs

- 1** Circle the correct prepositions in *italics* in these sentences.
- 1 The daily weather markers *on* / *for* which they have relied for thousands of years are becoming less predictable.
 - 2 The Inuit elders and hunters who depend *of* / *on* the land are also disturbed.
 - 3 These feelings are not simply based *on* / *to* Inuit superstition.
 - 4 Scientists are now paying attention to what the Inuit are reporting, and are incorporating it *into* / *on* their research
 - 5 They have adapted *for* / *to* the cold climate.
 - 6 She doesn't try to blame anyone *for* / *on* the change in her environment.
- 2** Exam candidates sometimes use the wrong prepositions after verbs. Correct the mistakes in these sentences.
- 1 Many people firmly believe *to* the traditional wisdom of their ancestors.
 - 2 It is difficult to concentrate *in* your work if there is loud music *playing*.
 - 3 I recently participated *on* a charity event at my college.
 - 4 The company is insisting *in* the use of low-energy light bulbs in their offices.
 - 5 The government will double the amount it spends *in* the environment.
 - 6 Every flight you take contributes *with* global warming.
 - 7 Many TV documentaries are now focusing *in* environmental issues.
 - 8 The new energy-saving laws apply *for* all factories and offices.

page 167 Language reference: Dependent prepositions

Reading and Use of English | Part 7

1 Do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Circle the correct alternative in *italics* for each of the statements below.

In Reading and Use of English Part 7

- 1 the text has *six / seven* gaps where missing paragraphs belong
- 2 there *is one / are* two extra paragraph(s) that you do not need to use
- 3 you should start this task by reading the *gapped text / missing paragraphs*
- 4 you should concentrate on the *structure of the text / finding words common to the gapped text and the missing paragraphs*.

2 You are going to read an article about a speaking parrot. Before you read, discuss these questions.

- a How do you think parrots learn to speak?
- b When a parrot speaks, do you think it understands what it is saying?
- c Which other animals could be taught to speak, do you think?

3 Read the main part of the article (but not the missing paragraphs A–G).

- 1 How does the article answer the three questions you have been discussing?
- 2 What do the photos show?
- 4 Now choose from the paragraphs A–G the one which fits each gap in the text. There is one extra paragraph which you do not need to use.



Alex the African Grey

Science's best-known parrot dies, aged 31

THE last time Irene Pepperberg saw Alex, she said goodnight as usual. ‘You be good,’ said Alex. ‘I love you.’ ‘I love you, too.’ ‘You’ll be in tomorrow?’ ‘Yes, I’ll be in tomorrow.’ But sadly, Alex, whose name is supposedly an acronym of Avian Learning Experiment, died in his cage that night. This brought to an end a life spent learning complex tasks which, it had originally been thought, only primates could master.

1

Even then, the researchers remained human-centric. Their assumption was that chimpanzees might be able to understand and use human sign language because they are humanity’s nearest living relatives. It took a brilliant insight to turn this human-centricity on its head and look at the capabilities of a species only distantly related to humanity, but which can, nevertheless, speak the words people speak: the parrot.

2

Dr Pepperberg and Alex last shared a common ancestor more than 300 million years ago. But Alex, unlike a chimpanzee, learned to speak words easily. The question was, was Alex merely ‘parroting’ Dr Pepperberg? Or would that pejorative term have to be redefined? Do parrots actually understand what they are saying?

3

The reason why primates have evolved intelligence, according to Dr Humphrey, is that they generally live in groups. And, just as group living promotes intelligence, so intelligence allows larger groups to function, providing a spur for the evolution of yet more intelligence. If Dr Humphrey is right, only social animals can be intelligent – and so far this has been borne out.

4

An additional relevant factor is that, like primates, parrots live long enough to make the time-consuming process of learning worthwhile. Alex lived to the age of 31. Combined with his ability to speak, or at least ‘vocalise’ words, Alex looked a promising experimental subject.

5

By the end of this process, Alex had the intelligence of a five-year-old child and had not reached his full potential. He had a vocabulary of 150 words. He knew the names of 50 objects and could describe their colours and shapes. He could answer questions about objects' properties, even when he had not seen that particular combination of properties before. He could ask for things, and would reject a proffered item and ask again if it was not what he wanted. He understood the concepts of 'bigger', 'smaller', 'same' and 'different'. And he could count up to six, including the number zero. He even knew when and how to apologise if he annoyed Dr Pepperberg or her colleagues.

6

There are still a few researchers who think Alex's skills were the result of rote learning rather than abstract thought. Alex, though, convinced most in the field that birds as well as mammals can evolve complex and sophisticated cognition, and communicate the results to others.

Adapted from *The Economist*

A And so it proved. Using a training technique now employed on children with learning difficulties, Dr Pepperberg and her collaborators at the University of Arizona began teaching Alex how to describe things, how to make his desires known, and even how to ask questions.

B And the fact that there were a lot of collaborators, even strangers, involved in the project was crucial. Researchers in this area live in perpetual fear of the 'Clever Hans' effect. This is named after a horse that seemed to be able to count, but was actually reacting to unconscious cues from his trainer. Alex would talk to and perform for anyone, not just Dr Pepperberg.

C Dr Pepperberg's reason for suspecting that they might – and thus her second reason for picking a parrot – was that in the mid-1970s evolutionary explanations for behaviour were coming back into vogue. A British researcher called Nicholas Humphrey had proposed that intelligence evolves in response to the social environment rather than the natural one. The more complex the society an animal lives in, the more intelligence it needs to prosper.



D Early studies had concluded that linguistic ability in apes was virtually non-existent. But researchers had made the elementary error of trying to teach their anthropoid subjects to speak. Chimpanzee vocal cords are simply not up to this, and it was not until someone had the idea of teaching chimps sign language that any progress was made.

E However, not all animals which live in groups can be classified in this way. Flocks of, say, starlings or herds of wildebeest do not count as real societies, just protective groupings. But parrots such as Alex live in societies in the wild, in the way that monkeys and apes do, and thus, Dr Pepperberg reasoned, Alex might have evolved advanced cognitive abilities.

F The dictionary definition of *to parrot* is to repeat exactly what someone says without understanding it. It is used about politicians who simply repeat the party line, or schoolchildren who learn facts by heart. Dr Pepperberg's experiments with Alex have helped to demonstrate the validity of this usage.

G This novel approach came to Dr Pepperberg, a theoretical chemist, in 1977. To follow it up, she went to a pet shop and bought an African Grey parrot, which was then just a year old. Thus began one of the best-known double acts in the field of animal-behaviour science.

Grammar

Nouns and articles

1 Work in pairs. Find the following in the text below.

- 1 two singular countable nouns
- 2 three plural countable nouns
- 3 three uncountable nouns
- 4 two of these three uncountable nouns that could be countable in other contexts
- 5 two proper nouns (names), apart from Baobab



Baobab trees, which are found in Africa, are frequently compared with elephants because their bark resembles the skin of an elephant. They consist of the most bulky, twisted tissue of any plant on Earth. The most ancient are believed to be 1,000 years old.

2 Many words have different meanings depending on whether they are countable or uncountable. What is the difference in meaning between these pairs of sentences?

- 1 a I like coffee.
b I'd like a coffee.
- 2 a I can't see – my hair is in my eyes.
b I've got a hair in my eye.
- 3 a Most English cheese is hard.
b There are more than 1,000 British cheeses.
- 4 a Anna lost a lot of weight when she was ill
b Lifting weights strengthens your muscles.
- 5 a Car windscreens are made from toughened glass.
b I only wear glasses for reading.
- 6 a He has no experience of living in a cold climate.
b But he has read about the experiences of other people.
- 7 a Exercise is good for you.
b We've got four exercises to do for homework.

→ page 166 Language reference: Countable and uncountable nouns

3 Circle the correct articles in these extracts from Reading and Use of English Part 7 (\emptyset = no article). Then check your answers by looking back at the text.

- 1 A / The last time Irene Pepperberg saw Alex, she said goodnight as usual.
- 2 It took a / the brilliant insight to turn this human-centrism on its head.
- 3 This novel approach came to Dr Pepperberg, a / \emptyset theoretical chemist, in 1977.
- 4 But Alex, unlike a / \emptyset chimpanzee, learned to speak words easily.
- 5 \emptyset / The birds as well as \emptyset / the mammals can evolve \emptyset / a complex and sophisticated cognition.
- 6 Dr Pepperberg and her collaborators at a / the University of Arizona began teaching Alex.
- 7 She went to a / \emptyset pet shop and bought an African Grey parrot, which was then just a / the year old.
- 8 ... the capabilities of a species only distantly related to humanity: a / the parrot.
- 9 Thus began one of a / the best-known double acts in the field of animal-behaviour science.
- 10 Researchers in this area live in \emptyset / a perpetual fear of the 'Clever Hans' effect. This was named after a / the horse that seemed to be able to count.

4 Now match each use of *a/an*, *the* and \emptyset in Exercise 3 with one of these rules for the use of articles.

- 1 Use the definite article (*the*)
 - a when there is only one of something/someone
 - b with superlative adjectives and *first*, *last*, *only*, *same*
 - c to refer to something/someone that has been mentioned before or that the reader already knows about
 - d to refer to all the members of a group or species.
- 2 Use the indefinite article (*a/an*)
 - a to refer to something/someone for the first time
 - b in place of the number one
 - c to refer to something/someone which is not specific (i.e. it doesn't matter which one)
 - d to refer to someone's job.
- 3 Use no article (\emptyset)
 - a with uncountable nouns which refer to something general
 - b with plural countable nouns which refer to something general.

→ page 163 Language reference: Articles

- 5 Complete this text with the correct article: *a/an*, *the* or no article (*Ø*). For some gaps, more than one answer is possible.



(1) South China tiger population was estimated to number 4,000 individuals in (2) early 1950s, but over (3) following 30 years, approximately 3,000 tigers were killed as the subspecies was officially hunted as (4) pest. Although (5) Chinese government banned (6) hunting in 1979, and declared the tiger's survival (7) conservation priority, by 1996 (8) surviving population was estimated to be less than (9) hundred individuals. And, as no tiger has been sighted in (10) wild for more than 25 years, (11) scientists believe that it is 'functionally extinct'. It is thought that even if (12) few individuals remain, the existing protected areas or (13) habitat are not sufficiently large or undisturbed to sustain (14) viable tiger population.

- 6 The following sentences contain mistakes with articles made by exam candidates. There may be more than one mistake in each sentence. Find and correct the mistakes.

- 1 Make sure you wear suit and tie if it's formal occasion.
- 2 You should get job even though you haven't got high-level qualifications.
- 3 This report aims to describe advantages and disadvantages of green taxes.
- 4 Students can access Internet in their classrooms.
- 5 Society needs to provide affordable accommodation for homeless.
- 6 A most important thing is to get people talking about the issues.

- 7 Tokyo is a capital of Japan.
- 8 Nowadays the technology is everywhere.
- 9 I have basic knowledge of French, German and Spanish.
- 10 Even though he hasn't got the degree, he should find the work in the IT.

- 7 Work in pairs. First discuss why the words in **bold** are used in the following sentences, and then talk about the subjects themselves.

- The first thing you remember
- The most frightening or **the** most exciting thing that has happened to you
- A job you'd like to do
- **The** advantages and disadvantages of being single (or married)

Vocabulary

Word formation

- 1 What are the noun forms for each of these verbs from the article about Alex the parrot?

apologise communicate conclude convince
describe perform propose prosper suspect

- 2 What are the verbs related to these nouns from the article?

assumption behaviour combination evolution
explanation progress response

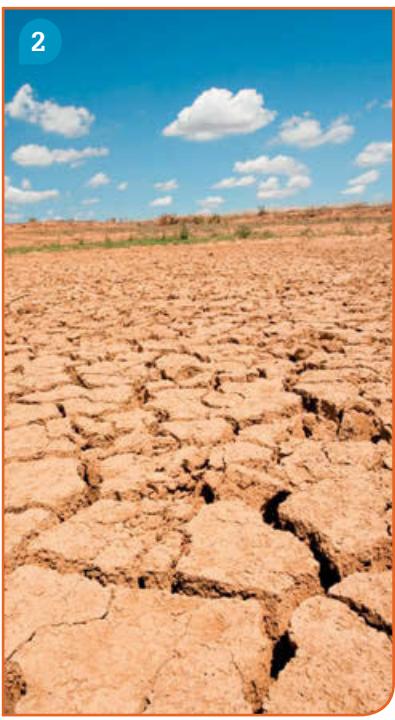
- 3 Some words, like *progress* and *suspect*, can be nouns or verbs.

- If they are used as verbs, the stress is on the second syllable: *Some researchers sus'pect that Alex's abilities are no more than a circus trick.*
- If they are used as nouns, the stress is on the first syllable: *Investigating the case of the strange phone message, police consider a parrot to be the prime 'suspect.*

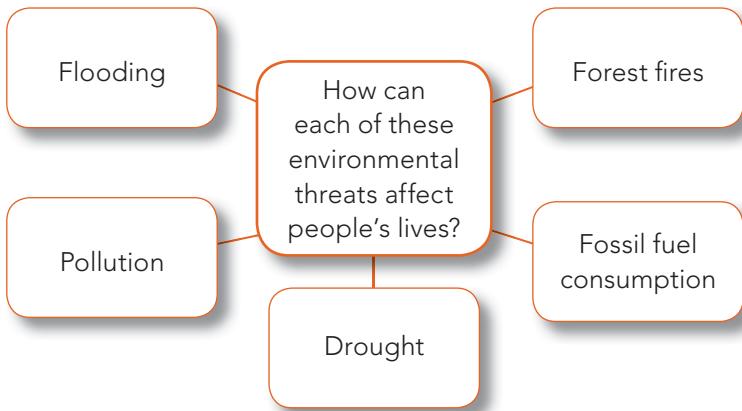
Make pairs of sentences using these words as verbs and nouns. Then say or read your sentences to a partner, putting the stress in the right place.

contest convict increase insult export present
produce progress protest rebel refuse reject

→ page 181 Language reference: Word formation



- 3 Read these Part 3 written prompts and spend a few moments thinking about possible answers.



Speaking | Part 3

- 1 Do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Circle the correct alternative in *italics*.

In Speaking Part 3

- 1 you speak to *your partner / the examiner*
- 2 you will be given a set of *pictures / written prompts* to talk about
- 3 you and your partner will be expected to talk for *three / four minutes*
- 4 communication skills are *more / less important* than expressing correct opinions
- 5 you *must / need not* agree with your partner.

- 2 Look at the three photos showing environmental problems. Discuss these questions.

- 1 What problems do the photos show? Make a two-word phrase for each photo by choosing words from this list.

air clearance conditions consumption damage
drought fires flood forest fossil fuel pollution
rainforest

- 2 Use the remaining words in the list to make phrases for three other environmental problems.
3 To what extent are humans to blame for the problems?

- 4 19 Listen to two candidates discussing the prompts in Exercise 3.

- 1 How well do they describe how the five threats can affect people's lives?
- 2 How could their discussion be improved?

- 5 20 Now listen to the examiner's final instruction in Part 3 and the discussion that follows. Do the candidates reach agreement?

- 6 Work in pairs. Discuss the prompts in Exercise 3.

- Try to describe clearly how the threats can affect people's lives.
- Include some of the compound nouns in the list below in your discussions.

- fire risk fire damage insurance costs
- desert region water shortage crop failure
- rainforest farmland cash crops
- exhaust fumes vehicle emissions factory chimneys breathing difficulties
- flood water(s) flood defences river banks
- oil rig fuel consumption fuel shortage(s)
- Finally, try to reach agreement about which environmental problem poses the greatest threat.

Reading and Use of English

Part 3

- 1** Make as many words as you can from the 'root' words in the box.

able friend help know live move
nation sense

Example

able: ability, inability, disability, enable, disable, unable, disabled, ably

- 2** Each of these sentences contain at least one word with an incorrect suffix or prefix. Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Some people find it impossible to sleep if they drink coffee late at night.
- 2 Demonstrators are trying to unstabilise the government's environmental policies.
- 3 I've got terrible backache – that chair was so uncomfortable.
- 4 Be caring with that parcel – the present inside is breakable.
- 5 Poor service in the restaurant was the main cause of our unsatisfaction.
- 6 Paul's such a creative person – he's always full of innovatant ideas.
- 7 Stop trying to distract me. Can't you see I'm busy?
- 8 It's not that I disbelieve you, but I hope you know what you're doing – not all mushrooms are edable.

- 3** Read the text *Species loss accelerating*. For questions 1–8, use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Exam advice

- Remember that changing the word given could mean using a prefix or a suffix or both. You may have to make a word with a negative meaning.
- Check the spelling of the words you form.
- Finally, read through the complete text to make sure that it makes sense and is grammatically correct.



Species loss accelerating

An international report has shown that human (0) are destroying three animal or plant species every hour. This equals 150 species a day, and between 18,000 and 55,000 species a year. The main (1) of the report is that we must slow down the worst spate of extinctions since the (2) of the dinosaurs 65 million years ago.

Scientists and (3) have identified various threats to (4) and plants as diverse as right whales, Iberian lynxes, wild potatoes and peanuts. Global warming is adding to existing threats such as land (5) for farms or cities, pollution, and rising human populations. To deal with these challenges, we need to move rapidly, and with more (6) at all levels – global, (7) and local.

Many experts believe that the world will fail to meet the target, set by political leaders some years ago, of a major (8) in the rate of loss by next year. Rates of species loss are currently rising by more than a thousand times natural rates.

(0) ACT (1) FIND (2) APPEAR (3) ENVIRONMENT (4) CREATE (5) CLEAR (6) DETERMINE (7) NATION (8) REDUCE
--

- 4** Discuss these questions in pairs or groups.

- 1 What other species of plants or animals are in danger of becoming extinct?
- 2 What can international organisations, national governments and individuals do to slow down the rate at which species are becoming extinct?

Writing | Part 2

A proposal

1 Do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Say if the following statements about proposals are true (T) or false (F). If a statement is false, rewrite it to make it true.

- 1 Proposals are normally written for personal friends.
- 2 Proposals should include suggestions or recommendations.
- 3 Factual information need not be included.
- 4 You may use headings in a proposal.
- 5 You should always write a proposal using formal language.

2 Work in pairs. Read this Part 2 writing task and then follow the instructions below.

You see this announcement from an environmental agency in a local newspaper.

We are running a campaign to persuade organisations in our town to use resources more carefully and to reduce waste. The agency invites you to submit a proposal outlining the current situation in an organisation that you know well and to suggest ways in which this situation could be improved. We will provide financial support for approved proposals.

Write your **proposal** in 220–260 words.

- 1 Think about an organisation you know well. It could be a club, college, office or shop. What kind of resources is this organisation currently wasting? Think of materials, such as paper, and less visible resources, such as electricity.
- 2 Make a list of things that individual members of this organisation could do to reduce waste. Start with simple things that everyone can do, like turning lights off at night, and then go on to more radical actions, like working from home on one day a week.
- 3 Read the sample proposal and discuss these questions.
 - 1 Has the writer dealt fully with all parts of the task? Is there factual information as well as suggestions?
 - 2 Is the proposal clearly organised?



Introduction

The purpose of this proposal is to suggest ways in which my college could use resources more carefully and reduce wastage. I will suggest a range of measures to achieve this.

Paper

The college currently uses twice as much printing paper as it did two years ago. This is despite the fact that information is stored on computers. Any unnecessary use of paper affects the environment in two ways: firstly by using valuable resources, and secondly by posing a waste disposal problem. I suggest that in future no documents should be printed unless there is a good reason for doing so, and students should be required to submit assignments electronically.

Electricity

Currently, many lights, heaters and computers are not turned off when no one is in the building. Televisions and other electrical equipment are left on stand-by overnight, adding to the college's energy consumption. Students and staff should be reminded to turn off all lights and equipment when they are not needed.

Travel

It is well known that some students are making unnecessary journeys to college by car or motorbike. This adds to our energy consumption. I recommend that students should be advised not to come to the college unless they have classes, and public transport or bicycles should be used where this is possible. In addition to this, staff might consider working from home on at least one day per week.

Conclusion

I believe that if all the suggested measures were implemented, the college would be able to reduce wastage by at least 20% every year.

4 What do the words and phrases in *italics* refer to in these extracts from the sample proposal?

- 1 The college currently uses twice as much printing paper as *it* did two years ago.
- 2 *This* is despite the fact that information is stored on computers.
- 3 I suggest that in future no documents should be printed unless there is a good reason for *doing so*.
- 4 Students and staff should be reminded to turn off all lights and equipment when *they* are not needed.
- 5 *This* adds to our energy consumption.
- 6 Students should be advised not to come to the college unless *they* have classes.
- 7 Public transport or bicycles should be used where *this* is possible.

Why are reference words like these used?

5 Work in pairs.

- 1 Identify all the passive verbs in the sample proposal.
- 2 Discuss why the passive has been used in preference to the active.
- 3 Which of the following sentences could be rewritten using passive verbs?
 - a We need to encourage people to use the recycling bins.
 - b If they replaced the air conditioning system, they would waste less electricity.
 - c The problem has become worse over the past year.
 - d The builders should have insulated the roof when they constructed the building.
 - e I believe all residents will agree with this proposal.
 - f At present no one is taking the problem seriously enough.
 - g Engineers have been developing more efficient forms of solar heating.
- 4 Rewrite the sentences you have identified and say why the others cannot be changed.



6 Read this writing task and follow the steps below.

You see this announcement on the notice board of your local council.

The Environmental Planning Committee is organising a campaign to make our town more 'green'. You are invited to submit a proposal related to your neighbourhood. Present some factual information about the area, pointing out any relevant environmental issues, and suggest practical measures which individuals and families could take to make the neighbourhood more green.

Write your proposal in 220–260 words.

- 1 Underline the key ideas in the task.
- 2 Write brief notes under these headings:
 - Facts about the current situation
 - Suggestions for improvements (number these in order of priority)
- 3 Make a paragraph plan and think of suitable headings.
- 4 Write your proposal, using passive verbs where appropriate and any phrases from the following list that may be useful.

buy local produce dispose of rubbish responsibly
recycle waste save energy share car journeys
switch to natural energy use public transport

→ page 190 Writing reference: Proposals



Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 11

Vocabulary

- 1 Complete each sentence with the correct form of one of the phrasal verbs from the box.

call off call up drop out pay up put off sign up

- 1 Helen has a bit of free time and has decided to for a cookery course.
 - 2 I tried to Francesca , but she'd got her phone turned off.
 - 3 The conference has been because not enough people are interested in attending.
 - 4 Paul was supposed to come travelling with us but he had to at the last minute.
 - 5 Mikhail has had to his holiday till next month because he has too much work on at the moment.
 - 6 They owe us a lot of money and unless they soon, we'll take them to court.
- 2 Complete each of the sentences below with a phrase or expression from the box.

get your hands on kept waiting nothing to do with
out of touch sick and tired of the whole point of
without a trace

- 1 What I call real travelling has the holiday trips that most tourists tend to go on.
- 2 With smart phones and internet cafés, there's no excuse for being when travelling nowadays.
- 3 I'm a busy man and I hate being by people who are late.
- 4 I'm people phoning me to sell me things and interrupting my work.
- 5 If you travel with a group, you miss travelling, which is to have completely new experiences and meet completely new people.
- 6 He disappeared somewhere in the Pacific, some weeks after setting off in a small boat to sail round the world.
- 7 If you can a good grammar book, it should help you a lot with your exam preparation.

- 3 Complete these sentences by writing *at*, *in* or *on* in each of the gaps.

- 1 I'll be waiting the news stand when you arrive.
- 2 Did you see Ferenc the conference?
- 3 Samya is her third year university.
- 4 Don't interrupt me while I'm the phone!
- 5 We do all our shopping that big new shopping centre the outskirts of town.
- 6 I'd love to spend my holidays a Pacific island!

Grammar

- 4 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

- 1 Dieter missed the plane because he overslept.
WOULD
If Dieter had missed the plane.
- 2 Nelson didn't get the job because when he came to his job interview, he arrived late.
TIME
If Nelson his job interview, he would have got the job.
- 3 Eva couldn't apply for the job in IT because she knows that her computer skills aren't good enough.
BETTER
Eva knows that if her computer skills for the job in IT.
- 4 Could you please refund my money as soon as possible?
GRATEFUL
I would refund my money as soon as possible.
- 5 We would have gone swimming if Bruno hadn't advised us not to.
FOR
If it , we would have gone swimming.
- 6 I am only participating in this activity because my teacher asked me to.
PART
I this activity if my teacher had not asked me to.

Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 12

Vocabulary

- 1 Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the gap in each of these sentences.

- 1 I don't know why everyone's being so towards me. I've done nothing wrong. FRIEND
- 2 Global warming is one of the world's most serious problems. ENVIRONMENT
- 3 It can be difficult for people with certain to find a job. ABLE
- 4 She has an extensive of French history. KNOW
- 5 You can tell from his that he spends a lot of money on clothes. APPEAR
- 6 In this job you have to be original and to think CREATE
- 7 I hope my solicitor will be able to my legal situation. CLEAR
- 8 Yesterday there was a sudden downward in share prices. MOVE

- 2 Two of these sentences are correct, but the others contain mistakes with prepositions. Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Over a hundred thousand people participated with yesterday's marathon.
- 2 Whether we go skiing or not depends to the weather and the state of the snow.
- 3 Do you have anything useful to contribute in our discussion?
- 4 This morning's lecture will focus on Picasso's early work.
- 5 You needn't fill in that section of the form – it doesn't apply for you.
- 6 If the CD doesn't play properly, I'd take it back to the shop and insist for a refund.
- 7 Can you turn the TV down? I can't concentrate to what you're saying.
- 8 Do you believe in supernatural phenomena?

Grammar

- 3 Complete this text with *a/an*, *the* or *Ø* (no article).

For some years, (1) global warming, which is the gradual heating of (2) Earth, was (3) topic of heated debate in (4) scientific community, but today the consensus among (5) researchers is that (6) phenomenon is real and is caused by (7) human activity, primarily (8) burning of fossil fuels that pump (9) carbon dioxide and (10) other greenhouse gases into (11) atmosphere. Scientists have found that the number and severity of (12) extreme weather events, which include high or low temperatures and intense storms, are (13) effective measure of (14) climate change and global warming. Indeed it is now agreed that global warming will have (15) far-reaching and, in many cases, devastating consequences for (16) planet.

- 4 Read the text below and think of the word that best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap.

What is biofuel?

A biofuel is a hydrocarbon (0) that is made by or from a living organism that humans can use (1) power something. This definition of a biofuel is rather formal. (2) practice, any hydrocarbon fuel that is produced from organic matter in a short period of time is considered a biofuel. This contrasts (3) fossil fuels, which take millions of years to form, and with other types of fuel which are (4) based on hydrocarbons – nuclear fission, for instance.

What makes biofuels tricky to understand is that they (5) not be made by a living organism. Biofuels can also be made through chemical reactions, carried (6) in a laboratory or industrial setting that uses organic matter to make fuel. (7) only real requirements for a biofuel are that the starting material must be CO₂ that was fixed by a living organism and the final fuel product must be produced quickly (8) than over millions of years.

Starting off



1 Work in pairs. Use words from the box to describe the health advantages and disadvantages of the following.

- 1 doing sport or other physical activities
- 2 having childhood vaccinations
- 3 living in a rural area
- 4 living in a city

ache allergy blister bruise contagious disease
fracture immunity infection muscles sprain sting
venomous

2 Discuss these questions.

- Which do you think has a greater influence on someone's health, their lifestyle or their genes?
- What do you do to make sure you stay healthy and fit?

Listening | Part 3

1 Before starting Listening Part 3, do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Circle the correct alternative in *italics* for each of the statements below.

In Listening Part 3

- 1 you will hear a *monologue / conversation*
- 2 the recording lasts approximately *two / four* minutes
- 3 you have to answer *six / eight* multiple-choice questions
- 4 there are *three / four* alternative answers for each question
- 5 the correct alternative will express *the same ideas / use the same words* as the recording.
- 6 you should read the questions *before / after* you listen for the first time
- 7 you should choose an answer *while the speaker is talking / after the speaker has finished talking.*



2 Work in pairs. You are going to hear a radio phone-in programme on the subject of allergies. Before you listen, discuss questions 1–3 using these words and phrases: *allergen, asthma, immune system, pollen*.

- 1 Do you think more people suffer from allergies now than in the past?
 - 2 What percentage of the population do you think has an allergy?
 - 3 What aspects of modern life can increase the chance of people suffering from allergies?
- 3** Listen to the recording and check your answers to the questions in Exercise 2.

4 Now read these questions. How many can you already answer?

- 1 Which of these explanations for the possible increase in allergies does the programme presenter mention in her introduction?
 - A People are exposed to more pollen and other substances causing allergies than in the past.
 - B People's resistance to substances which cause allergies is lower than in the past.
 - C New allergy-causing substances are being released into the atmosphere.
 - D Higher levels of stress have made people more prone to allergies.
- 2 Which of these questions does the first caller, Tim, want to know the answer to?
 - A What is the cause of his allergy?
 - B Why is he allergic to grass and pollen?
 - C Will he ever be free of the allergy?
 - D How can he improve his condition?
- 3 According to the doctor,
 - A allergies are most likely to affect the very young.
 - B allergies often start between the ages of thirteen and twenty.
 - C allergies can start at any age.
 - D some elderly people are immune to allergies.
- 4 Arabella, the caller from Amsterdam,
 - A thinks she may have passed on her allergy to her children.
 - B asks how she can minimise the risk of her children having allergies.
 - C wants to know whether her peanut allergy will persist.
 - D wants to know if her allergy can be inherited.
- 5 According to the doctor, if one parent has a particular allergy, that child
 - A will probably have the same allergy.
 - B has no higher risk than any other child of developing that allergy.
 - C could develop a different allergy.
 - D is at a slightly higher risk of developing an allergy than any other child.
- 6 According to the doctor, some people believe that the main reason more young children are suffering from asthma is because
 - A modern buildings are centrally heated or air-conditioned.
 - B of toxic emissions from cars and other vehicles.
 - C they spend too much time in hygienic environments.
 - D of medicines used to treat illnesses.

5  21 Listen to the recording again. For questions 1–6 choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which fits best according to what you hear.

6 Work in pairs.

- 1 Would you be prepared to do without air conditioning and central heating if you were sure that this would lead to a reduction in allergies?
- 2 Do you agree that our modern culture is obsessive about cleanliness?

Vocabulary

Prepositions following adjectives

1 Complete these extracts from Listening Part 3 with the correct prepositions.

- 1 These days we're all too familiar the word **allergy**.
- 2 I'm allergic pollen from grass and certain trees.
- 3 Vaccinations may make children less resistant allergens.
- 4 We are getting better diagnosing and treating some allergies.
- 5 Some experts believe that in this modern age we're obsessed cleanliness.

2  Exam candidates often make mistakes with prepositions after adjectives. Seven of the following sentences contain mistakes and one is correct. Correct the mistakes.

- 1 We sincerely apologise and hope this 10% discount will be acceptable by you.
- 2 Drivers exceeding the speed limit are responsible for 90% of accidents in the city.
- 3 I am delighted for your invitation and look forward to seeing you at the event.
- 4 Living on the outskirts of the city is very convenient to the motorway system.
- 5 Teachers should try to be sensitive for the needs of their students.
- 6 That part of the stadium is closed for visitors – it's for athletes only.
- 7 She is someone who isn't aware with what is going on in the news.
- 8 I hope you will be capable to putting your plans into practice.

 page 167 Language reference: Dependent prepositions

Grammar

Ways of contrasting ideas

- 1** In these extracts from Listening Part 3, underline words and phrases used to point out a contrast between two facts or ideas.

- 1 Someone who was allergic to eggs would find it fairly easy to avoid eating anything containing eggs, whereas you would find it impossible to avoid all contact with pollen.
 - 2 I have to be really careful about foods which contain peanuts, but what I'd like to know is ...
 - 3 In the case of your child, this would rise to 20%. However, if the child's father also had an allergy, this risk would increase to 40%.
 - 4 Even though we are getting better at diagnosing and treating some allergies, there is a year-on-year increase in the number of patients with asthma.
 - 5 Some experts believe we're obsessed with cleanliness, while others believe that vaccinations to protect our children may actually weaken their immune system.
- 2** Work in pairs. Discuss these questions about the words/phrases you have underlined in Exercise 1.
- 1 Which words or phrases contrast facts or ideas in a single sentence?
 - 2 Of these, which words or phrases must be placed between the two clauses?
 - 3 Which word is an adverb which contrasts facts or ideas in separate sentences?
 - 4 What other contrasting words and phrases do you know?
 - 5 Which words or phrases could replace whereas and even though in sentences 1 and 4?

→ page 180 Language reference: Ways of contrasting ideas

- 3** Complete the following sentences using words from the box.

although but even though however whereas

- 1 I recognised you as soon as I saw you, we'd never met before.
- 2 Some people seem to enjoy cold, rainy weather, I'm not one of them.
- 3 Adults can be slow to learn new skills, children pick things up very quickly.
- 4 We thought the case was over, new evidence has just come to light.
- 5 I've been here twice before, I'd forgotten where the post office was.

- 4** We can also use *despite / in spite of (the fact that)* to express contrast. Which two sentences in Exercise 3 can you change to use one of these, and what other changes would you have to make?

- 5**  Exam candidates sometimes make mistakes in their use of link words for contrast. Find and correct the mistakes in each of these sentences. (There are several possible ways of correcting them.)

- 1 Despite you are not a mechanic, you should learn to understand how cars work.
- 2 There are several kinds of snacks you can have between 9.00 am and 6.00 pm, however hot meals are limited to lunchtime.
- 3 However he was usually a very efficient teacher, he wasn't available when I needed this information.
- 4 I appreciate being asked to give this talk again. Though I would like to suggest ways of improving this year's event.
- 5 We used to have only a few TV channels, where nowadays we have many more choices.
- 6 While he left school at the age of sixteen, he went on to become one of the most famous politicians of his generation.

- 6** Complete these sentences with your own endings.

- 1 I don't mind going to the dentist, but ...
- 2 I realise that it's very important to keep fit. However, ...
- 3 Whereas most people I know go to the gym at least twice a week, I ...
- 4 Even though many people eat better food than they did a hundred years ago, ...

Speaking | Part 2

- 1** Do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Say if the following statements are true (T) or false (F). If a statement is false, rewrite it to make it true.

In Speaking Part 2

- 1 you have to speak about three photos
- 2 you have to answer three questions about the photos
- 3 each candidate has to speak for one minute
- 4 you should not try to describe the photos in detail
- 5 you have to answer a question on your partner's photos
- 6 if you notice that you've made a mistake, don't correct it.

2 Work in pairs. Look at the six photos and discuss these questions.

- 1 What do all six photos have in common?
- 2 Which of these activities are popular with people in your country? How would you explain this?

3 Work in pairs. Read the examiner's instruction for the photos in Set A.



Here are your pictures. They show people involved in physical activities. I'd like you to compare two of the activities, and say how effective the activities are as a means of keeping fit, and why they are so popular.



Student A: Talk about two photos for one minute, with Student B listening.

Student B: You then answer this question: *Which groups of people get the most benefit from activities like these?*

Set A

- How effective are these activities as a means of keeping fit?
- Why are the activities so popular?



4 Now read this instruction for the photos in Set B.



Here are your pictures. They show people involved in demanding physical activities. I'd like you to compare two of the activities, and say what qualities a person needs to succeed in them, and why people want to participate in them.



Student B: Talk about two photos for one minute, with Student A listening.

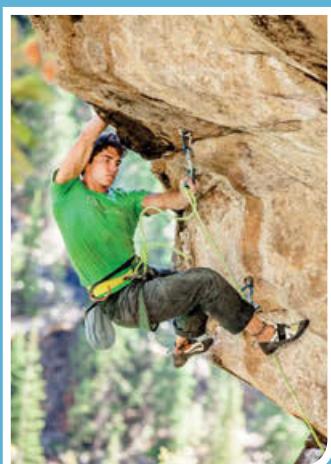
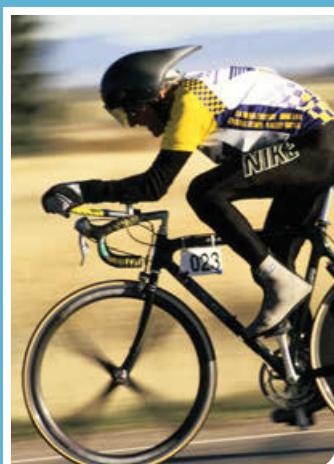
Student A: You then answer this question: *How are activities like these different from sports like football or basketball?*

5 Listen to two candidates doing the tasks.

- 1 Which candidate does the task more successfully?
- 2 What advice would you give each candidate to help them do better next time?

Set B

- What qualities does a person need to succeed in these activities?
- Why do people want to participate in them?



Reading and Use of English | Part 8

- 1** Before starting the reading task, do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Circle the correct alternative in *italics* for each of the statements below.

In Reading and Use of English Part 8

- 1 there are *ten / fifteen* questions or statements
- 2 the questions or statements come *before / after* the texts
- 3 you should read the *text(s) / questions or statements* first
- 4 you have to match *all / some* of the questions/statesments with the texts
- 5 the texts are *likely / unlikely* to contain similar information.

- 2** Look at the photos of sports and discuss these questions in pairs.

- 1 Do you know the names of these sports? What similar sports do you know?
- 2 What kinds of sports are they? For teams or individuals? For men, women or both? Where are they played?
- 3 What are the most popular sports in your country? Who plays them? Are they mainly amateur or professional?



- 3** Read questions 1–10 below and underline the key idea in each one.

Which sport

allows players to hit a ball with equipment and parts of their body? **1**

is based on a traditional native sport? **2**

allows players to use their bodies to obstruct their opponents? **3**

makes the wearing of protective equipment optional? **4**

disapproves of players looking at what they are doing? **5**

often receives funding from business? **6**

is not played all the year round? **7**

is played mainly for pleasure and relaxation? **8**

has a ball which is designed to be picked up easily? **9**

involves contestants holding on to part of each other's clothing? **10**

- 4** Now quickly read through the texts about national sports. Are any of the five sports described similar to the ones in the photos you discussed?

- 5** Read the texts again. For questions 1–10 above, choose the correct sport (A–E). Sports may be chosen more than once.



Unusual national sports

A Glíma is by far the oldest form of wrestling in Iceland. The most widespread version of the sport is Brokartök glíma, in which two wrestlers attempt to trip and throw each other by grasping a belt worn around their opponent's waist and thighs. To win, a wrestler must make his opponent touch the ground with a part of his body between the elbow and the knee. Wrestlers have to stand straight and are not allowed to fall on their opponents or to push them down by force. Most importantly, when they are fighting they should always look over each other's shoulders, because it is considered more gentlemanly to wrestle by touch and feel than by sight. This form of glíma has always been a friendly recreational sport, but there are other versions which are played much more violently.

B Hurling is an outdoor sport played mainly in Ireland. Players use an axe-shaped wooden stick, called a hurley, to hit a small ball between the other team's goalposts, either over or under the crossbar. Fewer points are scored if the ball goes over the crossbar. The ball can be caught in the hand and carried for no more than four steps, or hit in the air or on the ground with the stick. It can also be kicked or slapped with an open hand. A player who wants to carry the ball further than three steps has to bounce or balance it on the end of the stick. No special clothing or padding is worn by players, but a plastic helmet with a faceguard is recommended.

C The official national sport of Argentina is **Pato**, a game which is played on horseback and combines elements of two other sports: polo and basketball. The sport, which is thought to have begun over four hundred years ago, consists of two teams of four members each. Teams fight for possession of a ball which has six conveniently sized handles, and score by throwing the ball through vertically positioned rings, located at the top of three-metre-high poles. A closed net, extending downwards, holds the ball after goals are scored. The winning team is the one with the most goals scored after six periods of eight minutes. The word *pato* is the Spanish for *duck*, as in the past, instead of using a ball, a live duck was used inside a basket.

D Lacrosse is an outdoor team sport in which players use netted sticks to pass and catch a hard rubber ball. The aim is to score goals by propelling the ball into the opponent's goal. The team which scores more goals wins. Lacrosse is Canada's national summer sport and is also becoming more and more popular in the USA. Each team is composed of ten players: three attackers, three midfielders, three defenders and one goaltender. In men's lacrosse, players wear protective equipment on their heads, shoulders, arms and hands, as body-checking is an integral part of the men's game and stick-checks to the arms and hands are considered legal.

E Tejo is a Colombian sport in which players hurl a metallic plate weighing around two kilograms through the air to try to hit a clay-filled box with gunpowder in the middle. When the disc hits this target, there is a loud explosion. Whichever team causes more explosions wins. Turmeque, a much more ancient version of the sport, has been played for over 500 years by the indigenous groups living in the different parts of Colombia. The modern game itself is no different from this, except that today players use a metal disc rather than one made of gold or stone. Nowadays in Colombia it is very common to find professional tejo teams in the major cities and towns. Most teams are sponsored by local companies.

6 Which words or phrases in the texts gave you the information you needed to answer the questions?

Example

- 1 *equipment: wooden stick (hurley), parts of the body: foot (kicked), hand (slapped with the open hand)*

7 Work in pairs. Which of the five sports you have read about would you like to try? Are there any you would refuse to play? Give your reasons.

Grammar

The language of comparison

1 Complete these extracts from Reading and Use of English Part 8. Then check your answers in the texts.

- 1 Glíma is by form of wrestling in Iceland.
- 2 , when they are fighting, they should always look over each other's shoulders,
- 3 It is considered to wrestle by touch and feel than by sight.
- 4 There are other versions (of glíma) which are played
- 5 are scored if the ball goes over the crossbar.
- 6 The ball can be caught in the hand and carried for four steps,
- 7 A player who wants to carry the ball three steps has to bounce or balance it on the end of stick.
- 8 The winning team is the one with goals scored after six periods of eight minutes.
- 9 Lacrosse is also becoming popular in the USA.
- 10 The team which scores goals wins.
- 11 Turmeque, a version of the sport, ...
- 12 The modern game itself is from this.

2 Answer these questions about the language of comparison used in the extracts above.

- 1 What kinds of words can follow *more* and *most*?
- 2 *More* has two opposites: *less* and *fewer*. How are these words used differently? What kinds of words can follow each?
- 3 Look at the negative comparison in sentence 6. Can you think of a way of rephrasing it?
- 4 What does the phrase *by far* add to the meaning of a superlative adjective? Compare these sentences:
He's the brightest student in the class.
He's by far the brightest student in the class.
- 5 How can we add *very* to qualify *different* in this sentence?
The modern game is no different from this.
- 6 What is the opposite of *much* in this sentence?
*I'm feeling **much** better now.*

→ page 171 Language reference: The language of comparison

3 Rewrite these sentences, using the words in brackets.

- 1 Many people don't earn as much money as they did five years ago. (*less*)
- 2 Finding a new job was easier than I expected it to be. (*difficult*)
- 3 I've never seen a funnier film than that. (*funniest*)
- 4 There aren't as many unemployed people today as there were ten years ago. (*fewer*)
- 5 Working conditions are worse than they used to be. (*good*)
- 6 Petrol is become increasingly expensive. (*more and*)

4  Exam candidates sometimes make mistakes in their use of comparative words. Find and correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 1 I think a female boss is far much understanding than a male boss.
- 2 Actually, eating junk food is even worst for your health than smoking.
- 3 The other actor wasn't as handsome like James.
- 4 I noticed that there were less angry people than there had been a year ago.
- 5 Easily the harder thing about football for me is the training I have to do.
- 6 If you travel at night, you'll find there is fewer traffic on the roads.
- 7 This will make the problem of obesity difficult even more.
- 8 If you learn English, you will have much fewer problems when you travel abroad.

5 Compare the food in these photos in different ways, using words from the box.

Nouns: a balanced diet calories cholesterol fat
fibre minerals protein seafood vitamins

Adjectives: appetising fattening greasy
(un)healthy low-fat oily tasty

Verbs: diet lose weight



Reading and Use of English

Part 3

1 Do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Answer the following questions on Reading and Use of English Part 3.

- 1 How many gaps are there in the text?
- 2 How many words can you write for each gap?
- 3 Should you look for a different grammatical form of the given word in capitals?
- 4 If you need a negative form of the given word, how can you change it?
- 5 How important is spelling?
- 6 What should you do when you have answered the questions?

2 Some of the given words in Part 3 tasks are root words to which you have to add a prefix or a suffix or both, e.g. *APPEAR* → *appearance, disappear, disappearance*. But you have to make more complex changes to other root words, e.g. *DESTROY* → *destruction, destructive, indestructible*.

Complete this table with words related to the root verbs 1–9. Often more than one word is possible.

verb	noun	adjective	adverb
1 destroy	destruction destroyer	destructive indestructible	destructively
2 intend			
3 apply			
4 explode			
5 advise			
6 know			
7 repeat			
8 include			
9 describe			

3 For questions 1–8, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the same line. There is an example at the beginning.



Why I run

I started running when I was thirteen. I was (0) intoxicated with a beginner's enthusiasm: the special thrill of physical exertion, and a feeling that my body had (1) energy. I tried to maximise every moment on that first run and then had to hobble around for a week, almost (2) of moving. But once the (3) diminished I was back out there, running again. I was hooked.

IMMEDIATE

LIMIT

CAPABLE

SORE

As with the acquisition of any skill, there were various stages of (4) , competence and (5) Now that I've been running for over 25 years, and have spent a great deal of time helping others incorporate running into their lives, I see a similar pattern of (6) in just about all runners. Progress is a matter of maturing and knowing yourself; one stage leads (7) to the next.

INVOLVE
SATISFY

EVOLVE

LOGIC

Not everyone has the same aspirations. But understanding the experience common to most veteran runners will (8) you to maximise the gains of your running future.

ABLE

Adapted from *The Five Stages of a Runner*

4 Discuss these questions in pairs or groups.

- 1 How much exercise do you do a day or a week? What kind of exercise do you do?
- 2 What is your main reason for exercising? Do you enjoy it?
- 3 If you were told you needed to do more regular exercise, what would you do?

Writing | Part 2

A letter

1 Do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

How much do you remember about Writing Part 2? Complete the following sentences by writing a word or a number.

- 1 You have a choice of tasks.
- 2 The task may be an email or letter, a , a report or a proposal.
- 3 In order to write in the correct style, it is important to remember who the is.
- 4 You should write 220–..... words for this part.
- 5 When you are writing a report or a proposal you can divide what you write into and put a above each one.
- 6 When you are writing a proposal, you are trying to someone to act on your ideas or suggestions.

2 Read this writing task and make brief notes on the three bulleted points as if you were going to write this letter.

You belong to a small sports club and have been asked by other members to write a letter of complaint to the club manager. Your letter should include the following:

- why club members are not satisfied with the club and the way it is organised
- how the club could be improved
- what may happen if improvements are not made

Write your letter.

3 Read Marek's letter, without paying attention to the alternatives in *italics*. Does the letter cover all parts of the task?

- 4 Work in pairs. Look at the structure of the letter. What is the topic of each paragraph?
- 5 A letter like this should be written in a style which is not too informal. Circle the appropriate words and phrases in *italics* in Marek's letter.



Dear Sir,

I am writing on behalf of a number of members of the sports club who are ¹*concerned about / fed up with* the club and ²*the way it is being run / how you run it*.

It has been clear to us for ³*quite a while / some time* that we have a membership problem. The club, which I visit regularly, has been ⁴*noticeably less busy / pretty empty* in recent months. In the view of members, there are two possible explanations for this decline. ⁵*For a start, / Firstly*, we believe that some members are joining other clubs with more state-of-the-art facilities. Secondly, the cost of membership at the club appears to be high compared with other clubs ⁶*in the area / round here*.

As to what action can be taken, our main suggestions are for all the club's gym equipment to be replaced and for management to ⁷*change / adjust* the cost of membership. While the charge for adult members could remain the same, reduced fees could be ⁸*brought in / introduced* for ⁹*old people / retired people*. There could also be a new family rate to encourage parents to come with their children. We also believe that the tennis courts should be resurfaced, because they have been neglected for several years. They are now not fit for purpose.

We believe that if these improvements are not made soon, more members will vote with their feet and move to other clubs on a permanent basis. We trust that you will ¹⁰*think about / consider* our ideas and we would be grateful if you could look into making the improvements we have suggested ¹¹*as soon as possible / very soon*.

Yours faithfully,

Marek Novák

6 What is the meaning of the expressions in **bold** in these extracts?

- 1 I am writing **on behalf** of a number of members
- 2 clubs with more **state-of-the-art** facilities
- 3 The tennis courts are now **not fit for purpose**.
- 4 more members will **vote with their feet**

7 Find phrases that are used in Marek's letter to introduce

- explanations for the decline in membership
- suggestions for solving the problem.

8 Read the following writing task and discuss questions 1–3 below.

It has recently been announced that your area will receive funding for a range of new sports and fitness facilities for young people. Your council is inviting residents from the area to write letters suggesting how the funds should best be spent. Your letter should explain:

- why this funding is to be welcomed
- what facilities should be provided
- how the new facilities will make a difference to young people in the area.

Write your **letter**.

- 1 When you see the phrase 'young people', what age range do you think of?
 - 2 What facilities are currently available for this age group in your area?
 - 3 What facilities are missing? Assuming that there is not enough money for every possible improvement, make a list of the top three new facilities in order of importance.
- 9 Before you start your letter, make a paragraph plan. Then write your letter using appropriate language. Use some of the language for explanations and suggestions from Exercise 7.

→ page 192 Writing reference: Emails and letters



Starting off

1 Work in pairs.

- 1 Why do people migrate? Think of as many reasons as you can.
- 2 Would you like to migrate? If so, why and where? If not, why not?

2 23 You are going to hear six people who have migrated talking about their experiences. Listen and match each person with the aspect of migration (A–H) that they mention. (There are two aspects you do not need.)

Speaker 1 Speaker 4

Speaker 2 Speaker 5

Speaker 3 Speaker 6

- A I migrated to fulfil my ambitions.
- B I encountered some negative attitudes to start with.
- C I've felt homesick since I left.
- D I find it difficult to stay in one place for long.
- E I moved because of a relationship.
- F I wanted a better environment for my children.
- G I was fed up with the weather.
- H I'm surprised how well my life has turned out.

3 Work in small groups.

- 1 Do you know anyone whose reasons for emigrating or experiences of emigrating are similar to the ones you've just heard?
- 2 How can emigration benefit
 - the country people emigrate from?
 - the country people immigrate to?



Grammar

Comment adverbials and intensifying adverbs

- 1 Look at this extract from Starting off. Which word or phrase in each sentence shows the speaker's attitude or opinion about what he says?

You see, unfortunately I'm one of those typical expatriates who spends two years working in this country and three years working in that. I don't think I could ever go back to my home country because, quite honestly, I just wouldn't fit in.



► page 165 Language reference: Comment adverbials

- 2 Rewrite each sentence below, replacing the underlined words with a comment adverbial from the box in each gap.

apparently fortunately generally speaking kindly
obviously personally to be honest undoubtedly

- 1 It's lucky that she has a very supportive family.
....., she has a very supportive family.
- 2 I'm absolutely certain that he's the best player.
He's the best player.
- 3 Most of the time the weather here is pleasant.
....., the weather here is pleasant.
- 4 I'm telling you the truth when I say that I found the journey very uncomfortable.
....., I found the journey very uncomfortable.
- 5 From what I've heard, Bill is thinking of emigrating to Canada.
....., Bill is thinking of emigrating to Canada.
- 6 Anaya's parents have invited me to stay with them, which is very kind of them.
Anaya's parents have invited me to stay with them.
- 7 It's clear that he wasn't happy with the way he was treated.
....., he wasn't happy with the way he was treated.
- 8 To give you my opinion, I wouldn't buy that car.
....., I wouldn't buy that car.

- 3 ► 23 Listen again to the speakers in Starting off.

absolutely completely incredibly totally utterly

- a Complete the sentences below by writing an intensifying adverb from the box in each gap.
- b Say which other adverbs in the box could also be used for each gap.
- c Decide how adding an intensifying adverb affects each sentence.

- 1 We were fed up with the crime and feeling of insecurity that surrounded us.
- 2 I was astonished to find that many people looked down on me when I first arrived.
- 3 I just found the short grey days and the continual rain depressing.
- 4 I'd be out of touch.
- 5 I've been lucky, though.

- 4 Complete these sentences by choosing the alternatives in *italics* which form a collocation. There may be one or two correct answers to each question.

The Japanese drummers' performance was (1) *extremely / utterly / absolutely* amazing. We'd never seen anything like it. The audience was (2) *absolutely / completely / totally* delighted and applauded for about ten minutes.

For immigrants, finding somewhere to live and work is (3) *totally / incredibly / perfectly* simple and presents no problem. The difficulty is integrating into the community because local people are (4) *absolutely / utterly / completely* indifferent to foreigners, so many of them end up feeling (5) *extremely / incredibly / perfectly* depressed.

Temperatures often rise above 40° C in the summer, so this heat is (6) *perfectly / incredibly / absolutely* normal. Many newcomers to this part of the world feel (7) *totally / extremely / utterly* exhausted by the end of the day unless they have air conditioning.

You'll need to work hard to learn the language because it's (8) *utterly / incredibly / totally* hard. However, if you persist, you'll find it isn't (9) *extremely / absolutely / incredibly* impossible and you will make progress.

Listening | Part 4

- 1 You will hear five short extracts in which people are talking about migrants and migration. Before you listen, do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Say if the following statements are true (T) or false (F). If a statement is false, rewrite it to make it true.

In Listening Part 4

- 1 you have to do two tasks
- 2 you hear five different speakers and you have to choose from seven options
- 3 you hear the piece twice; you should do the first task the first time you listen and the second task the second time you listen
- 4 you may hear the answer to Task Two before the answer to Task One.



- 2 Listen and complete the two tasks.

TASK ONE

For questions 1–5, choose from the list (A–H) the aspect of migration that each speaker is referring to.

- A loss of local culture
- B integration in schools
- C changing eating habits
- D finding accommodation
- E mixed marriages
- F communication problems
- G sending money home
- H starting a business

- | | |
|-----------|------------------------|
| Speaker 1 | <input type="text"/> 1 |
| Speaker 2 | <input type="text"/> 2 |
| Speaker 3 | <input type="text"/> 3 |
| Speaker 4 | <input type="text"/> 4 |
| Speaker 5 | <input type="text"/> 5 |

TASK TWO

For questions 6–10, choose from the list (A–H) the thing which has impressed each speaker the most.

- A Employment is created.
- B Families are divided.
- C The quality of life improves.
- D The cost of living rises.
- E Standards are raised.
- F Local people lose their jobs.
- G Local people learn something new.
- H Attitudes are more diverse.

- | | |
|-----------|-------------------------|
| Speaker 1 | <input type="text"/> 6 |
| Speaker 2 | <input type="text"/> 7 |
| Speaker 3 | <input type="text"/> 8 |
| Speaker 4 | <input type="text"/> 9 |
| Speaker 5 | <input type="text"/> 10 |

- 3 Work in small groups. Take turns to summarise what one of the speakers said. Each student should choose a different speaker.

- Before you speak, spend a minute or two thinking about what you are going to say.
- Try to use some of the comment adverbials from Grammar Exercise 2 on page 151 when you speak.

Vocabulary

learn, find out and know; provide, offer and give

- 1 Exam candidates often confuse *learn*, *find out* and *know*. Match the words with their definitions from the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*.

1 know 2 find out 3 learn

- a to get information about something because you want to know more about it, or to acquire a fact or piece of information for the first time
- b to get knowledge or skill in a new subject or activity
- c to have the information in your mind

- 2 *Provide*, *offer* and *give* often have very similar meanings. However, sometimes their meanings are slightly different. When their meanings are different, which word, *provide* or *offer*, means

- 1 to give someone something they need?
- 2 to ask someone if they would like to have something or if they would like you to do something?

3  Complete each of these sentences written by exam candidates with *learn, find out, know, provide, offer or give* in the correct form.

- 1 I phoned a taxi company to the average rate from the airport to the city centre.
- 2 We will overnight accommodation if you miss the last train.
- 3 You should go to the information desk to where to pick up your luggage.
- 4 While studying English, you also about their customs and traditions.
- 5 I've checked the timetable to the time of the next train to Łódź.
- 6 The government should make an effort to more facilities in rural areas.
- 7 During the lecture, we how Turkish people lived in the past.
- 8 Comfy Catering Services aims to good food for students at low cost.
- 9 We feel that the authorities should be prepared to a solution to those parents who require one.
- 10 Studying at the Ace School in London will you the opportunity to make new friends and meet people.
- 11 I'm writing to complain about the service you during our stay in your hotel last weekend.
- 12 This watch is important to me because my parents it to me for my 18th birthday.



Reading and Use of English | Part 6

1 Do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Answer these questions about Reading and Use of English Part 6.

- 1 How many texts does it contain and how many questions must you answer?
- 2 Should you read the questions before or after you read the texts for the first time? Why?
- 3 What does this part test your ability to do?

2 Work in small groups. You will read four extracts about immigration and cities. Before you read, discuss these questions.

- 1 How important is each of the areas below in ensuring successful integration of new immigrants?
 - language
 - employment
 - dress
 - adopting the host culture
- 2 What other areas do you think are important?

3 Read extracts A–D and answer these questions.

- 1 According to A, how have attitudes and policies to do with immigration changed recently?
 - 2 According to B, how are cities defined and where in a city does successful integration occur?
 - 3 According to C, what should local government's role be in encouraging integration?
 - 4 According to D, what are the advantages and dangers of cultural diversity?
- 4** Academic texts may contain ideas expressed in complex ways. Decide what each of these sentences means. Choose either a or b.
- 1 *Successful integration is no coincidence.* (Extract A)
 - a Integration can only be successful if it is planned.
 - b Successful integration is the result of unlikely events happening at the same time.
 - 2 *Cities and towns were starting to think differently about immigration.* (Extract A)
 - a Cities and towns were changing their immigration policies.
 - b Cities and towns no longer wished to accept new immigrants.
 - 3 *The untapped potential of immigrants ... had long been overlooked.* (Extract A)
 - a People ignored immigrants because they were considered to be a nuisance.
 - b The authorities did not realise that there were immigrants whose skills were not being used.
 - 4 *There is now global competition for information technology professionals, creative artists and highly skilled individuals upon whom to place our hopes for future prosperity.* (Extract A)
 - a Skilled and creative people are taking part in a worldwide competition to win jobs.
 - b Countries depend on skilled people for their future wealth and therefore compete to attract them.
 - 5 *More humans than ever now live outside their country of birth.* (Extract B)
 - a The majority of people now emigrate.
 - b There are more emigrants in the world than ever before.
 - 6 *The well-being of cities depends on whether they can create an inclusive public culture.* (Extract B)
 - a Cities will only prosper if they have a culture which encourages all inhabitants to participate.
 - b Cities with museums, art galleries and theatres are healthier places to live.

7 Past experience demonstrates that cultural diversity in itself is not a sufficient condition to bring about the sustained inclusion of the different groups that populate a city. (Extract D)

- a We know from past experience that a policy of cultural diversity in a city will not always be successful over a long period of time.
 - b We know from past experience that different cultural groups do not always wish to form part of a diverse culture and may wish to leave the city.
- 8** Managing cultural exchanges among people and organisations, and dealing directly with inequities and discrimination are challenges that cities must face if they are to be socially inclusive and culturally diverse. (Extract D)
- a Unless cities are socially inclusive and culturally diverse, they won't be able to manage their cultural exchanges or deal directly with inequities or discrimination.
 - b Unless cities manage cultural exchanges among people and organisations, and deal directly with inequities and discrimination, cities will not be socially inclusive or culturally diverse.

5 Now do the exam task. For questions 1–4, choose from the extracts A–D. The extracts may be chosen more than once.

Which extract

shares C's view on the relationship between employment and integration? 1

expresses a different view from the others regarding the possible outcome of immigration? 2

shares B's view concerning the role of public space in integration? 3

expresses a more specific view than the others of the type of people who might immigrate? 4

6 Work in groups.

- 1 Which of these statements do you agree with more?

Particular cities thrive because they exemplify cultural diversity.

Immigrants are attracted to particular cities because they are thriving.
- 2 The second paragraph of extract A appears to advocate a selective immigration policy. Do you think countries should select who they allow to immigrate?

Cities and immigration

Cities attract immigrants and need to ensure their successful integration.

A “We are rich and happy because we have so many immigrants,” explained Wolfgang Schuster, Mayor of Stuttgart. This came as a surprise to the jury of Germany’s first national competition on local integration policy. The competition “Successful integration is no coincidence – Strategies for community policy” showed that cities and towns were starting to think differently about immigration. Previously, integration and migration had been viewed as a nuisance, a peripheral issue, and, above all, as a problem. The untapped potential of immigrants and their economic and strategic significance had long been overlooked.

Following a phase of restrictive migration policy in many countries, the last few decades have seen more open immigration policies that focus on skilled labour. There is now global competition for information technology professionals, creative artists and highly skilled individuals upon whom to place our hopes for future prosperity. “Brain gain” rather than “brain drain” is the driving force in today’s migration policies.

B “We are living in “the Age of Migration.” More humans than ever now live outside their country of birth. More countries than ever are now major senders or receivers of migration flows. And whatever part of the world migrants move to, they overwhelmingly settle in cities.

Cities have always been composed of diverse populations with the interaction between different ethnic groups forming the essence of big city life for 3,000 years. By definition, cities are places that attract outsiders, and which constitute a meeting place between different cultures. On what terms do these different cultures converge in the modern city? The answer is that the well-being of cities now depends on whether they can create an inclusive public culture. Such successful integration may well begin on the street, as accepting diversity implies sharing public space.



C Successful cities are ones which value diversity and where local governments encourage conditions in which immigrants and all residents thrive. Thus as service providers, local governments are responsible for areas that affect our daily lives, such as schools, emergency services, swimming pools and soccer fields, parks and streets, while as democratic institutions, they draw on community input and create opportunities for all residents to participate in transparent and accountable decision-making.

Local governments also drive economic development to ensure that the city prospers. As major employers, they can institute good practices by hiring immigrants and managing a diverse workforce. As major buyers of goods and services, they can ensure that immigrant-owned or immigrant-friendly businesses have a fair chance to compete for public contracts. In these ways, local governments contribute to labour market integration and the success of local businesses across all sectors of the population.

D It has long been recognised that urban areas, especially large cities, are places where cultural diversity flourishes. Cities like New York, Paris, London and Amsterdam, which receive migrants from all over the world, exemplify the cultural, social, and religious diversity that many believe is a fundamental characteristic of places that will thrive –economically and socially – in an era of global interdependence.

Past experience demonstrates, however, that cultural diversity in itself is not a sufficient condition to bring about the sustained inclusion of the different groups that populate a city. The collapse into inter-ethnic conflict of some once relatively harmonious multicultural cities highlights the fragility of cultural diversity. Managing cultural exchanges among people and organisations, and dealing directly with inequities and discrimination are challenges that cities must face if they are to be socially inclusive and culturally diverse.

Speaking | Part 4

1 Do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

Circle the correct alternative in *italics* in these sentences.

- 1 Speaking Part 4 lasts for about *three / five* minutes.
- 2 You are asked to give your opinions on *subjects connected with the same theme as Speaking Part 3 / a new theme*.
- 3 You and your partner are each asked *different questions / are expected to discuss your ideas about the same questions*.
- 4 You should give a *brief answer / quite a long answer*.



2 Work in pairs. Which of the phrases in the box could you use when answering each of the questions below? (You can use some of the phrases with more than one answer.)

cover people's basic needs create cultural diversity
encourage tolerance towards other ways of life
help them integrate live side by side
open up people's minds provide housing
make the transition to a new society
make society a richer place
people from different backgrounds with different outlooks

- 1 What are the benefits of a multicultural society?
- 2 Should people who go to live in another country adopt the culture of that country? Why (not)?
- 3 How can governments help immigrants?

3 **25** Now check your answers by listening to Laura and Daniel.

4 26 Complete these extracts from Laura and Daniel's answers by writing a modal verb (*can*, *may*, *should*, etc.) in each gap. Then check your answers by listening to the extracts.

- 1 I think it open up people's minds to other experiences that they not be able to have otherwise.
- 2 I personally think it make society itself richer by having diversity within it.
- 3 I think people be allowed to have some of the elements of their own culture as long as they're not detrimental to the good of the majority.
- 4 What they to do is provide lots of information at the beginning so that people make the transition to a new society.
- 5 Housing is something I think they be providing.
- 6 Work in pairs. Discuss your answers to the three questions in Exercise 2. Try to use some of the phrases from the box in Exercise 2 when you speak.
- 7 Work in pairs to discuss these questions.
 - 1 Many companies expect their employees to be ready to move to different places and countries to work. Do you think everyone should be ready to move for their job? Why (not)?
 - 2 How has your country changed in recent years as a result of immigration or emigration?
 - 3 Some people suggest that immigrants should be obliged to learn the language of the country they go to. Do you agree?

Grammar

Cleft sentences for emphasis

1 Rewrite each of the sentences below beginning with the words given.

- 1 It was the climate I couldn't stand any longer.
I couldn't ...
- 2 What impressed me most was seeing their new in-laws learning how to cook new dishes.
I was most impressed ...
- 3 It's being away from your children and family that must be the worst thing.
The worst thing ...
- 4 What we've ended up with is quite a cultural mix in our office.
We've ended up ...
- 5 It's their ability to work hard that absolutely amazes me.
I am ...

→ page 165 Language reference: Cleft sentences for emphasis



2 Express the ideas below in a more emphatic way by using cleft sentences starting with the words given.

- 1 I believe that young people benefit from living and working abroad. What I believe ...
- 2 Many people move overseas because they don't like the climate in their own country. It's because ...
- 3 Living in a multicultural society enriches our lives. What enriches ...
- 4 I feel lonely living away from my family. It's living ...
- 5 He doesn't do anything except listen to music in his room. All he does ...
- 6 Franz learnt to speak the language perfectly by living in the country. It was ...
- 7 A good education teaches tolerance. What a good education ...
- 8 I just want to be able to visit my family again. All I want ...

Reading and Use of English | Part 4

1 Do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

How much do you remember about Reading and Use of English Part 4? Complete the following sentences by writing one word from the list below in each space.

word contractions change same number
given three six

- There are (1) questions.
- You have to write between (2) and six words in each space, using the (3) given.
- (4) count as two words.
- You must not (5) the word given.

Read the question and decide what grammar and vocabulary you need. When you have finished, read your answer and check that

- it means the (6) as the original sentence
- you have used the correct (7) of words
- you haven't changed the word (8)

- 2** For the Part 4 question below, which is the correct answer: a, b, c or d? Why are the other answers incorrect?

Boris should have contacted us the moment he arrived.
TOUCH

Boris was supposed as soon as he arrived.

- a getting in touch with us
- b to get in touch with us
- c to have got in touch with us
- d to have made contact with us

- 3** For questions 1–4, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given. .

- 1 Could you remind me to phone Charlie on Friday?

GRATEFUL

I'd me to phone Charlie on Friday.

Clue: There are two parts to this answer: a request and an indirect question.

- 2 Mario managed to complete the project without any help.

ALL

Mario succeeded himself.

Clue: Use an expression which means 'alone'.

- 3 You won't get into the national team unless you try much harder.

MAKE

You'll have if you're going to get into the national team.

Clue: What noun can we use with 'make' to mean 'try hard'?

- 4 Fatima still hasn't decided if she'll study in New Zealand next year.

MIND

Fatima hasn't to study in New Zealand next year.

Clue: What expression with 'mind' means 'to decide'?



4 Now do this Part 4 task without clues.



- 1 It's possible that the heavy traffic is delaying Katya.

HOLDING

What may the heavy traffic.

- 2 I wasn't sure who was to blame for the accident.

FAULT

I couldn't tell was.

- 3 After Ranjit had discovered the truth, he reported the facts to the police.

OUT

Having , Ranjit reported the facts to the police.

- 4 Franz didn't get to the office until lunchtime.

NOT

It Karl got to the office.

- 5 Many people were discouraged from emigrating by the idea of crossing the Atlantic.

OFF

What the idea of crossing the Atlantic.

- 6 Many of the emigrants first saw the sea on the day they set sail to America.

TIME

For many emigrants, the day they set sail to America was the sea.



Writing | Part 1

An essay

- 1** Do the exercise in the Exam round-up box.

Exam round-up

How much do you remember about how to approach Writing Part 1? Put the following advice in the correct order (1–8).

- a Check what you have written, looking for specific mistakes you know you make.
- b Organise your notes into a paragraph-by-paragraph plan, including some of the vocabulary you'd like to use.
- c Read all the questions and choose the one you think you can do best. 1
- d Brainstorm ideas and make rough notes.
- e Identify the reader, decide what would be a suitable style and what effect you want to produce on the reader.
- f Analyse the question, underlining the things you must deal with and identifying your objectives in writing.
- g Write your answer (220–260 words) following your plan.
- h Take about 45 minutes to do the whole task. 8

- 2** Read the essay task below and underline the key points.

Your class has watched a television documentary about the benefits of helping immigrants to integrate into their local communities. You have made the notes below.

Areas covered

- Language
- Culture
- Work

Some opinions expressed in the documentary:

'Immigrants should pass a language exam before being allowed to live in the country.'

'Local culture is enriched by the diversity immigrants bring.'

'We learn new ways of doing things by working alongside people from other backgrounds.'

Write an essay discussing **two** of the areas in your notes. You should **explain why the areas are important** and **provide reasons** in support of your answer.

You may, if you wish, make use of the opinions expressed in the documentary, but you should use your own words as far as possible.

- 3** Work in small groups. Expand the opinions expressed during the documentary by
- adding reasons and examples
 - saying whether you agree or disagree with each opinion and giving your reasons
 - expressing a counter-argument (which you may or may not agree with).

- 4** Write a plan for your essay based on ideas which arose during your discussion in Exercise 3. When you have finished, work in pairs and compare your plans.

- 5** Read this sample essay without paying attention to the gaps. Which ideas expressed in the essay were mentioned while you did Exercise 3?

The world we live in is becoming increasingly globalised¹..... large numbers of people move abroad in search of a better life.
²....., people increasingly have to live harmoniously in multicultural situations.

³..... people should acquire the necessary language skills before being allowed to settle permanently in a country. I am broadly in agreement with this point of view⁴..... learning the language of the country is the key to integrating and showing respect for the local culture. However, generally speaking it is difficult to reach a level of language proficiency until you have spent some time in the country itself,⁵..... immigrants should be provided with language lessons during the early years of their stay.

⁶..... everyone gains from living in a diverse culture.⁷....., in my country in recent years people have become much more open to foreign films and literature, while varied foreign cuisine has become a common part of people's lives. Undoubtedly,⁸..... people's minds open to new ways of seeing the world and new tastes,⁹..... enrich their lives.

¹⁰..... it is co-operation that makes integration successful, so local people should welcome immigrants from outside for the diversity they bring while the immigrants themselves should make every effort to integrate into the community.

- 6** The phrases below link ideas together in the sample essay and also refer to the documentary mentioned in the task. Complete the essay by writing each of the phrases in the correct gap.

all of which consequently with the result that
 to offer some examples on the grounds that
 so what I would suggest is that
 it is through these experiences that
 for this reason, I personally believe that
 during the documentary it was suggested that
 I entirely agree with the point made during the documentary that

- 7** Compare the essay with your plan and make any changes you wish to your plan.

- 8** Write your own answer to the task in Exercise 2.



Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 13

Vocabulary

- 1 For questions 1–8, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

It's easy to understand why marathons were once thought to be (0) activities. The first marathon runner, an ancient Greek (1) who ran from Marathon to Athens to deliver a warning about an (2) enemy, dropped dead just after finishing his run. But mass participation marathons like the New York Marathon proved that this was (3) The NYC event started out in 1970 when there were only 55 finishers – now there are nearly 30,000 runners (4) Similar numbers are seen in other cities around the world, like London and Tokyo.

Of course, it's hard work. A great deal of practice and (5) goes into completing a course. The people who run (6) are those who are very fit and who have trained consistently. They may be regular athletes, so perhaps they already have a (7) diet and training programme. But marathon runners also include formerly (8) or unfit folks who decided to use a marathon as an excuse to get into shape.

ELITE
MESSAGE
APPROACH
CORRECT
ANNUAL
DEDICATE
SUCCEED
HEALTH
WEIGHT

- 2 Complete these sentences with the correct prepositions.

- 1 Be careful what you say. He's very sensitive criticism.
- 2 As the manager of the department, you are responsible recruiting new staff.
- 3 There are more and more viruses which are resistant traditional antibiotics.
- 4 Are you familiar the music of Jan Gabarek?
- 5 If you want to be better playing the guitar, you'll have to practise more.
- 6 I can't eat omelettes because I'm allergic eggs.
- 7 I like the house itself, but it isn't very convenient the supermarket or the station.
- 8 Please let us know if our offer is acceptable you.

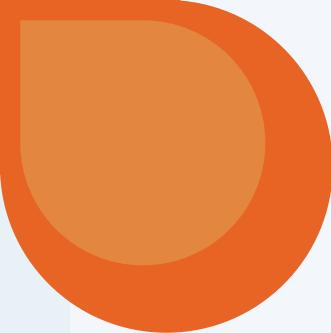
Grammar

- 3 Correct the errors in the use of words or phrases to express contrast.

- 1 He thought he had some terrible disease, however it was just a bad case of flu.
- 2 My sister seems to catch every cold going, although I am rarely ill.
- 3 Despite he didn't feel well, he went to work as usual.
- 4 But I exercise every day, I'm still overweight.
- 5 He refused to see his doctor. Although everyone he knew advised him to.

- 4 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use three to six words, including the word given.

- 1 The public health service is worse than it was ten years ago.
GOOD
The public health service is ten years ago.
- 2 We don't have as many qualified nurses as we need.
FEWER
We we need.
- 3 My new job is not as easy as I expected.
DIFFICULT
My new job I expected.
- 4 I'm really tired. I'll be very glad when we get home.
SOONER
I'm really tired. The better.
- 5 I earned less money than I thought I would last week.
MUCH
I as I thought I would last week.
- 6 Your diet is just as bad as mine.
BETTER
Your diet mine.



Vocabulary and grammar review Unit 14

Vocabulary

1 Complete the sentences below by writing *learn*, *find out*, *know*, *provide*, *offer* or *give* in the correct form in the gaps. You can use any verb more than once.

- 1 How old were you when you your multiplication tables?
- 2 I've been trying to what I need to do to get a working visa for New Zealand.
- 3 I think it's the government's duty to free education for all young people up to the age of 21.
- 4 Now where are my keys? I they're in my bag somewhere!
- 5 Rebecca has been the chance to improve her Spanish by studying in Argentina for a year.
- 6 My sister has been a job in the company and she's considering it at the moment.
- 7 I don't think the police will ever manage to who stole the money.
- 8 You'll never to drive properly unless you go to a proper driving school.

Grammar

2 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and six words, including the word given.

- 1 We didn't have as much time as we wanted to understand all this information.

TAKE

What we wanted in all this information.

- 2 Everybody agreed that the music at Lenka's presentation was very annoying.

OBJECTED

It was the music at Lenka's presentation.

- 3 First, you complete this form and then you post it to the embassy.

FILL

What you have this form and then send it to the embassy.

- 4 Audrey is not prepared to leave her current job.

LAST

'Getting a new job is
do!' cried Audrey.

- 5 Alfredo wanted nothing more than to relax when he got home.

TAKE

All Alfredo wanted to easy when he got home.

- 6 I spend most of my time doing paperwork.

TAKES

It most of my time.

- 3 Complete the letter below with adverbs or adverbial phrases from the box. Use each adverb / adverbial phrase once only. In some cases more than one answer is possible.

actually almost certainly apparently hopefully
obviously quite surprisingly thoughtfully to be honest

Dear Odile,

Thank you for so (1) inviting me to stay with you and your family for a few months later this year. I will (2) take you up on your offer as I've been thinking for some time of doing a gap year before I go to university. (3) , I need a break from studying and I think a spell of living abroad would suit me perfectly.

(4) , because I'm rather tired of school life, I haven't been working particularly hard this term, but (5) , I've managed to pass all my exams with quite good grades. (6) , when I go to university next year I'll have to work quite a lot harder. I already know several people on the course I want to do and (7) it's very demanding. So (8) a few months abroad will refresh me enough to really get down to work when I get back.

I'll be in touch when I've got my plans a little clearer.

Very best wishes,

Candice

Language reference

Contents

Articles	163
<i>at, in and on</i> to express location	163
Avoiding repetition	164
Cleft sentences for emphasis	165
Comment adverbials	165
Conditionals	165
Countable and uncountable nouns	166
Dependent propositions	167
Expressing ability, possibility and obligation	168
Expressing possibility, probability and certainty	169
Expressing purpose, reason and result	170
The language of comparison	171
Linking ideas: relative clauses, participle clauses, apposition	171
<i>no, none, not</i>	173
The passive	173
Prepositions in time expressions	174
Reported speech	174
Time clauses	176
Transitive verbs	177
Verb forms to talk about the past	177
Verbs + <i>to infinitive or -ing</i>	179
Ways of contrasting ideas	180
Word formation	181

Articles

The indefinite article a/an

A/an is used for something general or non-specific, or when we refer to something for the first time:

Have you got a bicycle? (= any kind of bicycle)

He's a good gymnast. (= one of many)

There's a tennis club in our town.

Other uses:

- to refer to someone's job or function:
She used to be a hotel receptionist.
- to mean one:
I have a sister and two brothers.

The definite article the

The is used with any type of noun when it is clear which thing/person we are referring to. It may be specifically identified in the sentence, it may have been mentioned before, or there may be only one of these things:

Where's the furniture we ordered last week? (I'm identifying the furniture I mean)

We ordered a table and six chairs. The chairs have arrived but the table hasn't. (= the one(s) I've just mentioned)

She's at the station. (= the local station, the only one)

We're meeting at the café later. (= you know the one I mean – the one we always go to)

Other uses:

- to refer generally to some geographical locations, e.g. *the beach, the coast, the mountains, the sea, the road; We're spending a fortnight in the mountains, but I'd prefer to be somewhere on the coast.*
- to refer to a type of musical instrument:
He's learning to play the trumpet.
- to refer generally to public transport and other services:
*You can take the train to Edinburgh.
I like reading on the bus.
Have they contacted the police?*
- with adjectives used as nouns for groups of people, e.g. *the rich, the poor, the living, the dead, the blind, the deaf, the unemployed;*
There's a growing gap between the rich and the poor.

No article

No article is used:

- with plural and uncountable nouns with a general meaning:
Cats chase mice.
Pollution is ruining our towns and cities.
- in certain phrases which relate to a type of place or institution, but not a specific one:
*Did you go to university?
What did you do in class today?*

Other similar phrases:

be in / go to church, court, hospital, prison, bed

be at / go to sea, school, university, college, work

be at / go home

at, in and on to express location

Use at

- when a place is thought of as a point, not an area (including *at home, at school, at work, at university*):
I'll meet you at the airport when you arrive.
- to talk about an event involving a number of people:
Tina met Joe at Charlie's wedding.
- for addresses:
She lives at number 11, Abbey Road.

Use in

- when a place is thought of as an area or space:
Gary lives in a small flat at the top of a tower block.
- for cars and taxis:
Let's talk in the car.
- in phrases such as *in class, in hospital, in prison, in court*:
He studied for a degree while he was in prison.
- for the world:
It's the tallest building in the world.

Use on

- to talk about a position in contact with a surface:
*We've hung the picture on the wall above the fireplace.
She lay on the beach, soaking up the sunshine.*
- to talk about a position on something thought of as a line, e.g. a coast, a road, the outskirts, the edge:
*Keyhaven is a small village on the south coast.
There were huge traffic jams on the motorway.*
- with means of transport apart from cars and taxis:
Hi, Karen. I'm on the train now so I'll be home soon.

- with some forms of technology including television, telephone, computer, Internet, website:
*I've seen him **on** television.*
*I'm afraid she's **on** the phone at the moment.*
*You can find all the information **on** our website.*
- with *left* and *right*:
*The post office is **on** the left just past the supermarket.*
- with these words: *premises, farm, floor and island*:
*Our office is **on** the fifth floor.*

Avoiding repetition

Using pronouns

- Instead of repeating a noun or noun phrase, use a pronoun:
*Derek Foster worked in advertising after the war. **He** became a professional painter in the early 60s.*
- Use *they/them* to refer to plural nouns and to a person in the singular when you cannot state whether the person is male or female:
*If you ask an artist how **they** started painting, **they'll** often say that one of their parents taught **them**.*
- Use *himself, herself, themselves, etc.* when the object is the same as the subject:
*He poured **himself** a glass of water.*
(Compare: He poured **him** a glass of water, where **him** refers to a different person.)
- It, this, that, these, those* may refer to a noun / noun phrase, or to the whole of the previous clause or sentence:
*Artists now have a vast range of materials at their disposal. **This** means that they can be much more versatile than in the past.*

That is often used when giving reasons:

*The artist is my cousin and **that's** why I'm here.*

One/ones, another, the other(s), both, neither, all, none

- Use *one* to refer to a singular countable noun in a group, and *ones* to refer to plural countable nouns in a group.
*I've made some **sandwiches** – would you like **one**?*
*There are some excellent exhibitions **on**. I strongly recommend **the one** at the National Gallery.*
*Our **neighbours** are generally nice, but **the ones** in flat 4 aren't very sociable.*
- Use *a(n)/the ... one* or *(the) ... ones* with an adjective:
*I've bought a lot of new **shirts** recently, but for gardening I prefer to wear **an old one**.*
*I enjoy **romantic films**, especially **sad ones**.*

- Use *another* to refer to a second/third (etc.) singular countable noun in a group:
*One picture showed a girl combing her hair. **Another** was of the same girl dancing.*
- Use *the other* when referring to the second of two things/people already mentioned, and *the others* when referring to the rest of a number of things/people:
*Pablo has **two houses**. One is in São Paulo and **the other** is in Singapore.*
***Most of the actors** went to a party. **The others** went home to bed.*
- Use *both* and *neither* to refer to two things/people:
*He's written **two novels** and **both** have won prizes.*
***Neither** is autobiographical.*
- Use *all* and *none* to refer to more than two things/people:
*He's written **twenty novels** and I've read **all of them**.*
*Mariella invited **her friends** but **none of them** came.*

who, which, whose

→ See pages 171–172: Relative clauses.

Using auxiliary and modal verbs

- Instead of repeating a whole verb or verb phrase, we can often use an auxiliary or modal verb:
*Not many people have **read** 'The Dungeon' and I'm one of the few that **have**.*
*A year ago I **couldn't drive a car**, but now I **can**.*
- Use a form of *do* to replace a verb in the present or past simple:
*I really **enjoy good comedy films**, but then I think everyone **does**.*
*Most people **liked the film**, but I **didn't**.*

Using so

- With verbs like *think, suppose, believe, hope, etc.*, use *so* to avoid repeating a clause or sentence:
*'Do you think Real Madrid will win the championship?' 'I guess **so**.'* (= I guess they will win the championship.)
- Use *do so* to avoid repeating a verb or verb phrase:
*I told my students to hand in the essay on Monday and **all of them did so**.* (= handed in the essay on Monday)

Omitting words

- With a verb or adjective that is followed by an infinitive with *to*, it is sometimes possible to use *to* on its own, instead of repeating a whole phrase.
*Kim suggested **going to the ballet**, but I didn't want **to**.*
***Give me a call later** if you're able **to**.*
*I'd like to be able to **solve your problems** but I just don't know how **to**.*

Cleft sentences for emphasis

Emphasis involves showing that something is particularly important or worth giving attention to. Cleft sentences are one way of doing this. These can be formed by:

- a clause starting with *what*, linked to the rest of the sentence by *is/was*:

I really enjoy pasta. → **What I really enjoy is** pasta.
She wanted to find a job in New Zealand. → **What she wanted was** to find a job in New Zealand.

Note: The verb in the *what* clause is often *do*. In this case, *is/was* is followed by an infinitive, with or without *to*:

They advertised on television. → **What they did was** (to) advertise on television.

- a clause starting with *all*:

My house only needs a swimming pool now. → **All my house needs now is** a swimming pool.

- a clause starting with *It is/was*, linked to the rest of the sentence by *that* or *who*:

Mike paid the bill. → **It was Mike who paid the bill.**

You should speak to the manager. → **It's the manager (that) you should speak to.**

They left Poland in 2012. → **It was in 2012 that** they left Poland.

I like visiting other countries, but I don't enjoy flying. →

I like visiting other countries – it's flying (that) I don't enjoy.

Conditionals

First conditional

Form	Use	Examples
<i>If/Unless + present simple/continuous – will/may/must, etc. + infinitive</i>	To talk about very possible or probable situations/events in the present or future	<i>If you're hungry, I'll start getting the lunch ready.</i> <i>We should get there by midday if the trains are running on time.</i>

Second conditional

<i>If/Unless + past simple/continuous – would/could/might + infinitive</i>	To talk about improbable or imaginary situations/events in the present or future	<i>I might miss the city if we moved away from here.</i> (but we probably won't move) <i>If I was driving the car, we'd be arriving by now.</i> (but I'm not driving, so we aren't arriving yet)
--	--	---

Third conditional

<i>If/unless + past perfect simple or continuous – would have / could have / might have + past participle</i>	To talk about imaginary situations/events in the past	<i>I could have got better results if I'd taken the photos earlier.</i> (but I didn't take them early enough) <i>If it hadn't been snowing, we wouldn't have got lost.</i> (but it was snowing, so we got lost)
---	---	--

Comment adverbials

Comment adverbs and adverbial phrases:

- express how certain the speaker is about something. Some common adverbs: *certainly, definitely, possibly, probably, undoubtedly*

She's definitely happier now than she used to be.

Some common phrases: *without a doubt, in theory, in all likelihood/probability*

In all likelihood, the meeting will have to be postponed.

- express the speaker's attitude or opinion about what they are saying. Some common adverbs: *frankly, personally, (un)fortunately, obviously, surprisingly, strangely*

Strangely, I haven't heard from her since she moved.
(= I think her failure to communicate is strange.)

Personally, I'd prefer not to live abroad.

Some common phrases: *quite honestly, generally speaking, to my surprise*

Quite honestly, I don't think you should have given him so much money.

Comment adverbials expressing opinions often go at the beginning of a sentence. However, they can also be placed:

- in a middle position in the sentence (often after the subject or after the verb):

Martina, unfortunately, didn't arrive until midday.

She was, unfortunately, too late for her appointment.

- at the end of the sentence:

Luca is thinking of going to Australia, apparently.

These comment adverbials are usually separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.

- Unless is sometimes used instead of if ... not, especially in first conditional sentences:
We'll have to eat indoors unless the weather improves.
(= if the weather doesn't improve)
- Note that would and could can be used with a conditional meaning in sentences without if or unless. The idea that we are talking about an unreal situation is understood without being explicitly stated:
*'How **would** you communicate with someone whose language you **couldn't** speak?' 'I'd use sign language.'*
Otherwise may be used with would or could to introduce a conditional idea:
*Arsenal played well in the last 20 minutes. Otherwise (= If the situation had been different) they **would have lost** the match.*

Mixed conditionals

If one part of the sentence speaks about the present/future and the other part about the past, 2nd and 3rd conditionals can be 'mixed':

- If I **hadn't met** Julia in Bulgaria last year* (past – 3rd conditional), we **wouldn't be married** now (present – 2nd conditional).
- If Anastasia **didn't need** this book for her PhD* (present – 2nd conditional), she **would never have bought** it (past – 3rd conditional).
- If you **weren't leaving** tomorrow* (future – 2nd conditional), we **could have had** more time together (past – 3rd conditional).

Other uses of conditionals

You can:

- give advice using if I were you + I would + infinitive:
If I were you, I'd take that laptop as hand luggage.
- make criticisms or strong requests using If you would + infinitive – would + infinitive:
If you'd stop making so much noise, perhaps we'd all be able to enjoy the programme.
- make polite formal requests using I'd appreciate it / I'd be grateful if you would/could:
I'd appreciate it if you could hand in the report by Thursday.

Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable nouns

- Countable nouns can be singular or plural and are used for individual things which we can count.
In our family we have a cat and two dogs.
- In the singular form they can be preceded by a/an or one, or determiners such as this/that, each, every:
A human being has two hands. Each hand has a thumb and four fingers.
- In the plural form they can be preceded by numbers or determiners such as some, any, many, (a) few, no, these/ those:
There are a few teenagers in the room but no children.

Uncountable nouns

- Uncountable nouns are neither singular nor plural and are used for things that are not normally divided into separate items:
We use gas for cooking and electricity for heating.
 - They are used with singular verbs and can be preceded by determiners such as some, any, no, much, this/that:
'Is there any coffee left?' 'No, but there's some tea.'
- Note:** a/an, one, each and every cannot be used with uncountable nouns.
- To refer to particular quantities of an uncountable noun, use a phrase which includes a countable noun + of:
a jug of water, two cups of tea, a loaf of bread, three slices of toast, twenty litres of oil

Note: Some nouns which are uncountable in English may be countable in other languages, e.g. accommodation, advice, applause, bread, damage, equipment, fruit, furniture, homework, housework, information, knowledge, luggage, money, news, rubbish, shopping, toast, traffic, travel.

Nouns that can be countable or uncountable

Many nouns can be countable or uncountable, depending on how they are used.

- Would you like some chocolate?* (= the food substance in general)
There are only two chocolates left in the box. (= individual items)
- French people love wine and cheese.* (= these substances in general)
France has many different wines and cheeses.
(= individual products)

- I don't eat lamb or chicken. (= general types of meat)
I'm going to roast a chicken tonight. (= a whole bird)
I love lambs and chickens. (= animals)
- Coffee is expensive here. (= the type of drink)
Can I have two coffees, please? (= cups of coffee)
- People are crazy about sport. (= the general field of activity)
Football is a great sport. (one of many individual sporting activities)

Dependent prepositions

Many verbs, nouns and adjectives are followed by a particular preposition before a noun, noun phrase, pronoun or verb + -ing:

The film reminded me of my childhood.

He apologised to them for damaging their car.

There are no clear rules to help you decide which preposition to use: the best strategy is to learn the preposition with the word. Examples given in a dictionary will show how they are used.

Here are some common words + prepositions (sb = somebody; sth = something).

Verb + preposition

account for	focus on
accuse sb of	help (sb) with
accustom sb to	hope for
agree with (sb/sth) about	impress sb with
amount to	include sb/sth in
apologise (to sb) for	insure (sth) against
appeal to	interfere with
apply to	invest (sth) in
approve of	involve sb in
attach sth to	link sb/sth to/with
attribute sth to	listen to
base sth on	object to
believe in	operate on
blame sb/sth for	participate in
charge sb for	persist in
comment on	prepare (sb/sth) for
compare sb/sth to/with	prevent sb/sth from
compete with	prohibit sb/sth from
concentrate on	protest against
connect sb/sth with	provide sb with
consider sb/sth as	react to/against

consist of
contrast sb/sth with
cope with
dedicate sth to
depend on
devote sth to
differ from
disapprove of
discourage sb from
distinguish sb/sth from
distract sb from
divide sth into/between
dream of
exclude sb/sth from
experiment on

recognise sb/sth as
recover from
refer sb/sth to
regard sb/sth as
relate sb/sth to
rely on
remind sb of
resort to
result in
search for
separate sb/sth from
spend sth on
suffer from
think about/of
warn sb about/against

Adjective + preposition

afraid of	kind to
angry with/about	pleased with
anxious about	prejudiced against
available to/for	proud of
capable of	relevant to
confident of	responsible to/for
delighted with	shocked at/by
dependent on	sorry about/for
different from/to	suitable for
disappointed with	suited to
good/bad/clever at	surprised at/by
independent of	tired of
interested in	upset about
involved in	

Noun + preposition

attention to	discussion about
belief in	experience of
capacity for	information on/about
confidence in	problem of/with
criticism of	reputation for
difficulty in/with	trust in

Expressing ability, possibility and obligation

Ability: can, could, be able to

- Use *can/can't* for abilities in the present:
Cats can see in the dark.
I can't drive.
- Use *could/couldn't* for general abilities in the past:
When I was younger, I could run very fast.
I couldn't walk until I was nearly two years old.
- For ability to do something in a specific past situation, we use the negative *couldn't*, but we don't often use the affirmative *could*. Instead of *could*, it is usually better to use *be able to, manage to* or *succeed in -ing*:
We couldn't open the door with the key. Eventually we managed to break a window and were able to get in.
- For future abilities, use *will be able to*:
My little sister will soon be able to read and write.
- Use *be able to* for other forms where there is no option with *can* or *could*:
I'd like to be able to see better.

Possibility: can and could

- Use *can/could* to describe what it is possible to do. Use *can/can't* for the present and future, and *could/couldn't* for the past. We also use *be able to*, especially for the past and future:
Passengers can get to London from here in 35 minutes.
Where we used to live, we couldn't get there by train.
We can / We'll be able to discuss this at tomorrow's meeting.
- Use *could* (but not *can* and not *couldn't*) for uncertain future possibilities:
I think it could rain later. (not can rain)
But It may/might not rain tomorrow. (not couldn't rain)
- Use *could have* (not *can have*) + past participle for uncertain past possibilities:
I don't know where she went. I suppose she could have gone to the supermarket.
- Use *can't/couldn't + be* for logical impossibility in the present, and *couldn't have + past participle* for the past:
It can't/couldn't be Paul at the door. He's in Japan.
He can't/couldn't have had lunch yet. It's only 11:15.

→ See also page 169: Expressing possibility, probability and certainty, for other modals and structures to express possibility.

Rules and obligations: must and have to

Use *must* and *mustn't / must not*:

- to state rules and laws, often in a formal context:
*Meat packaging **must** comply with the new regulation.*
*Motorists **must not** exceed 120 kph on the motorway.*
*You **mustn't** ride your bike without a helmet.*
- to express a personal feeling of obligation or a personal belief that something is important:
*I **must** phone my sister today. I **mustn't** forget.*
*You **must** see this film – it's great!*

Use *have to*:

- to describe a duty or obligation, often coming from an external source:
*She **has to** be at a meeting at 8:30 tomorrow morning.*

Compare these sentences:

- I **have to** finish this report by tomorrow.* (= This is something that someone else is insisting on.)
*I **must** finish this report by tomorrow.* (= I myself feel that this is essential.)

*He **has to** go to the police station.* (= The police have given this order.)

*He **must** go to the police station.* (= I believe it's essential for him to go.)

Use *don't have to*:

- to describe a lack of obligation or necessity:
*You **don't have to** go to the party if you don't want to.*

Compare these sentences:

- We **don't have to** use this machine.* (= We can use it if we want to, but it isn't essential.)
*We **mustn't** use this machine.* (= We're not allowed to use it – it's prohibited.)

Necessity

- For necessity, use *need to* or *have to*:
*To get to the airport in time, we'll **need to / have to** catch the 4:30 train.*
- There are two negative forms of need:
*We have plenty of time, so we **needn't hurry / don't need to hurry**.*
In the past, these two forms have different meanings:
*We **didn't need to hurry**.* (= We didn't hurry because there was no need.)
*We **needn't have hurried**.* (= We hurried but it wasn't necessary.)

Expressing possibility, probability and certainty

Possibility

Modal verbs: *may, might, could*

- Use *may (not), might (not) or could (but not could not)* to say it's possible that something is true, happens or will happen, but we don't know:
*The photocopier isn't working – there **may** be some paper stuck inside. (not ~~there can be some paper~~)*

Note: *can* is used to say that something is a general possibility but not with reference to any particular occasion or event:

*It **can** rain heavily in this region in autumn.*

*But It **might** rain this evening.*

*Children **can** be very irritating.*

*But You **may** find my children annoying when they make a lot of noise.*

- Use *may, might, could + well/easily* to say something is a strong possibility:
*The weather **may well** improve by the weekend.
I'd better write it down, otherwise I **could easily** forget.*
- Use *may, might, could + possibly/conceivably or just might* to say something is a remote possibility:
*My boss **could conceivably** change her mind and decide to give me a pay increase.
I just **might** have time to finish that report this week.*

Other words and phrases

- *It's (just/quite/very/entirely) possible that + clause:*
*It's **just possible** that we'll finish the project by March.*
- *There's (a/some / a slight / every / a good/strong/real) possibility/chance that + clause or of + -ing verb:*
*There's **every possibility** that the business will succeed.
There's **some chance** that the weather will improve tomorrow.
Is there **any chance of seeing** you this weekend?*

Probability

Modal verbs: *should, shouldn't*

- Use *should* and *shouldn't* to say that you expect something is or will be true:
*You're extremely well qualified – you **should** have no difficulty landing the job.*

Other words and phrases

- *be (quite/very/highly) likely / unlikely + infinitive or It's (quite/very/highly) likely that + clause:*
*He's **unlikely** to make the same mistake again.
It's **quite likely** that they'll be on the 8:30 train.*

- There's little / some / every / a strong likelihood of + -ing verb or that + clause:
*I'd say **there's a strong likelihood of** him getting a first class degree.
There's little likelihood that we'll manage to meet our deadline.*

Certainty

Modal verbs: *must, can't, couldn't*

- Use *must* (affirmative) and *can't/couldn't* (negative) to express things you feel certain about because you have evidence:
*With so many customers, they **must** be making a lot of money.
He didn't know what we were talking about, so he **can't/couldn't** have read our letter.*

Note: *mustn't* is not used to express certainty (see Rules and obligations on page 168).

Other words and phrases

- *be bound + to infinitive:*
*This machine is very badly designed. It's **bound to break** down before long.*

Notes on modal verbs

- To talk about actions in progress now or arranged for the future, use the continuous form, i.e. modal verb + be + -ing:
*You all **must be wondering** why I have called this meeting.*
- To talk about actions in the past, use modal + have + past participle:
*Martin is abroad at the moment, so you **can't/couldn't have seen** him yesterday.*
- To talk about actions which took place over a period of time in the past, use the past continuous form, i.e. modal + have been + -ing:
*Ulrike **wasn't in** when I called – she **may have been doing** the shopping, I suppose.*

Expressing purpose, reason and result

Expresses	Phrase(s)	Followed by	Position	Example(s)
purpose	so (that)	a clause	between clauses after the main clause	He always dresses smartly so (that) people will notice him.
	for the purpose of / with the intention of	verb + -ing		Teresa got up early with the intention of studying before going in to university.
	so as to / in order to	infinitive		Carla came home early so as not to have an argument with her parents.
	to	infinitive		Dieter goes to the gym every day to keep fit .
reason	because / since / as	a clause	between clauses or at the beginning of the sentence (more emphatic)	We'd better postpone the meeting because/since/as Eva has been delayed. Because/As/Since he was feeling ill, he spent the day in bed.
	in case		after the main clause	Take your mobile with you in case you need to call me.
	otherwise			Candice always writes things down, otherwise (= because if she doesn't) she forgets them.
	because of / due to / owing to	noun or verb + -ing	at the beginning of the sentence or after the main clause	All flights have been cancelled because of / due to / owing to the bad weather.
	For this/that reason	a sentence	at the beginning of a sentence and referring to the previous one	Someone called me unexpectedly. For this reason I was late for the meeting.
result	so / with the result that	a clause	between clauses	The bridge was damaged, so we couldn't get across the river. Children are no longer learning their tribal language, with the result that fewer and fewer people speak it.
	Consequently / Therefore / As a consequence / As a result	a sentence	at the beginning of a sentence and referring to the previous one. As a consequence and as a result can also be used at the end of the sentence.	Ranjit injured himself in training yesterday. As a consequence , he won't be taking part in the match today. Keiko didn't write a very good letter of application. She was rejected as a result .
using conditional sentences (see page 165–166) <i>If children start learning foreign languages when they're young, they learn them effortlessly.</i> (If clause = possible action, they learn them effortlessly = the result)				

The language of comparison

Comparative adjectives and adverbs

Use comparative adjectives or adverbs to compare two things or actions:

This camera is smaller and more compact than mine.

Glíma is less violent than other forms of wrestling.

She works more efficiently than most of her colleagues.

- no + comparative adjective:

Running is no better for you than walking fast.

- as + adjective/adverb + as to show similarity or equality:

My younger brother is as tall as me.

She doesn't play the piano as well as she used to.

- the + comparative adjective/adverb + the to show a process in which one thing/action depends on another:

The higher he climbed, the narrower the path became.

The faster we walk, the sooner we'll get there.

The more I read, the less I understand.

Note: With adjectives we often leave out the verb be:

The stronger the material (is), the longer it lasts.

The sooner we leave, the better (it will be).

- repetition of a comparative adjective/adverb to express an increasing rate of change:

He walked faster and faster until he was out of breath.

Food is getting more and more expensive.

Superlative adjectives and adverbs

Use superlative adjectives or adverbs to put one thing or action above all others in the same category:

Glíma is the oldest form of wrestling in Iceland.

That was the least interesting film I've ever seen.

She works most efficiently in the morning.

- the + superlative adjective + of + plural noun:

It was the simplest of ideas.

He was the most inspiring of teachers.

- the + superlative adjective + noun + imaginable/possible/available:

We had the worst weather imaginable.

more, most, less, fewer + noun

Use more/most + noun to express a greater / the greatest number or amount:

- more + plural noun or uncountable noun:

There were more people here than there were last year.

I wish I could spend more time with my friends.

Most sharks are quite harmless.

Most cheese is made from cow's milk.

- most of + noun/pronoun when referring to part of a specific thing or group:
The pizza was awful. I threw most of it away.
Most of our relatives live in Canada.
Most of the oil in the tanker leaked out into the sea.

Use less/fewer + noun to express a smaller number/amount.

- less + uncountable noun:

I'm getting less money now than in my last job.

- fewer + plural noun:

There were fewer people than usual at today's match.

Qualifying comparatives

To intensify or qualify comparative adjectives/adverbs use:

- a lot / a great deal / far
- slightly / a bit / a little
- even

My sister is a lot more intelligent than me, but my younger brother is even cleverer than her.

We've had far less snow this year than last year.

Could you drive a bit more carefully, please?

Linking ideas

Relative clauses

She's the woman	who that	bought our car.
	whose	son bought our car.
	from whom	we bought our car.
They've got a car	which that	runs on electricity.
This is the town	where	I grew up.
Sunday is a day	when	many people relax.
There's no reason	why	you should be worried.

- To introduce a relative clause, use who, that, whose and whom to refer to people.

Note: whom is formal and is used mainly with prepositions:

The person to whom this letter is addressed lives in Athens.

- Use that and which to refer to things.

- Use where, meaning 'at which', 'in which' or 'to which', to refer to places:

The village where (= in which) they live is in the middle of nowhere.

This is a restaurant where (= to which) we often go.

- Use when to refer to times:
*I'm not sure of the date **when** they're leaving.*
- Use why to refer to reasons:
*The reason **why** I'm late is that my flight was cancelled.*
- A relative clause can be at the end of a sentence or it can be embedded in another clause:
*Madrid is the city **where** I grew up.*
*The city **where** I grew up is Madrid.*
*Madrid, **where** I grew up, is the capital of Spain.*
- Who, that and which can be the subject or the object of the verb in the relative clause:
Subject: *The people **who** know me best are my friends.*
Object: *The people **who** I know best are my friends. (The subject is I.)*
Where, when and why are always the object of the verb:
*We're going back to the hotel **where** we stayed last summer. (The subject is we.)*

Defining relative clauses

- A defining relative clause defines the noun which immediately precedes it, and is therefore essential to the meaning of the sentence:
*The couple **who brought me up** were not my real parents.*
(The relative clause tells us which couple.)
- Who, that and which can be left out when they are the object of a defining relative clause:
The people (who) I know best are my close friends.
The DVD (that) you gave me for my birthday is fantastic.
When and why can also be left out:
2009 was the year (when) she left university.
That's the reason (why) I'm so disappointed.

Non-defining relative clauses

- Non-defining relative clauses give additional information, but are not essential to the meaning of the sentence:
*The hotel, **which has a hundred bedrooms**, is on the outskirts of the city.*
- Another type of non-defining clause is a comment clause, using which to introduce a comment on a previous clause:
*It had been raining nonstop for 24 hours, **which is why I didn't go out.***
*We were stuck in the traffic jam for ages, **which I found really frustrating.***
- The pronoun that cannot be used to introduce a non-defining relative clause.
- In writing, a non-defining relative clause is separated from the main clause by commas:
*My car, **which is seven years old**, has already done 200,000 kilometres.*

Participle clauses

Linking actions

With a present participle:
Concentrating on my work, I didn't realise how late it was.

With a perfect participle:
Having finished his speech, he left the room.

With a past participle:
Seen from a distance, the Pyramids look quite small.

- Use a present participle clause to describe something happening at the same time as the main action or immediately after it:
Opening the door, I saw a parcel on the doorstep.
- Present participle clauses can also be used with some conjunctions and prepositions:
After watching that film, I was too scared to go to bed.
In this case, the participle clause can follow the main clause:
She became interested in art while travelling in Italy.
You can take the train instead of catching the bus.
- Use a perfect participle clause to describe something that happened before the main action. It may provide a reason for that action:
Having left our map at home, we got lost. (= Because we had left our map at home ...)
- Use a past participle clause when the meaning is passive:
Eaten in small quantities, chocolate is good for you.
Built in 1889, the Eiffel Tower is now a symbol of Paris.
- Note that in all these cases the subject of the participle clause is the same as the subject of the main clause.

Used instead of relative clauses

Participle clauses can also be used instead of relative clauses. They are sometimes called reduced relative clauses.

- Use the present participle when the meaning is active:
There are three pictures hanging on the wall. (= that/which are hanging ...)
I noticed a man wearing a suit and carrying a large box.
(= who was wearing ..., who was carrying ...)
- Use the past participle when the meaning is passive:
Anyone caught shoplifting will be prosecuted.
(= who is caught ...)
I've brought you a jar of plum jam, made by my mother.
(= which was made ...)

Apposition

A common, economical way of linking two or more facts about the same person, thing or place is to put them next to each other in a sentence.

As with relative clauses, the second noun / noun phrase can be defining or non-defining.

- If it tells us who or what, no commas are used:
Her friend Klaus is a computer engineer.
- If it provides additional descriptive information, commas are used:
I'm going to see Bev Jackson, my maths tutor, this afternoon.

no, none, not

no

- No means not any or not even one and can be used with countable or uncountable nouns:
*I have **no idea** what you're talking about.*
*There were **no cars** on the road at that time of night.*
*There's **no salt** on the table.*
- It can also be used with comparative adjectives or adverbs and with the word different:
*The traffic is **no worse** today than it was yesterday.*
*I had to work late every evening last week, and so far this week has been **no different**.*

none

- None is a pronoun which means not one or not any. It is usually followed by of + a plural or uncountable noun or a pronoun:
***None of my friends** know/knows it's my birthday today.*
***None of the milk** in the fridge is fresh.*
 - It can also be used on its own:
*'How much coffee do we have?' '**None** (at all). We finished it yesterday.'*
*We need to buy some more eggs – there are **none** left.*
 - In formal written English none is considered to be a singular word and is followed by a singular verb:
***None of my colleagues** **speaks** Japanese.*
- However, in everyday speech a plural verb is more commonly used:
***None of this morning's flights** **have been delayed**.*

not

- Not is mainly used to make verbs negative and is often contracted to n't:

*You **have not** / **haven't answered** my question.*

*That **isn't** / That's **not** the correct answer.*

*She told me **not to phone** her after ten o'clock at night.*

*He was silent, **not knowing** what to say.*

- It can also make other words or phrases negative:
*I ordered tea, **not coffee**.*

***Not many** people voted in yesterday's election.*

***Not everyone** can win the lottery.*

***Not all** Canadians speak French.*

***Not surprisingly**, he failed his driving test.*

'Can you come out?' 'No, I'm afraid not.'

The passive

	are were are being were being are going to be have been had been will be can be have to be might have been must have been	imported	from Italy.
The goods			

- The passive is formed with the verb be + past participle.
- Intransitive verbs (verbs with no object, e.g. appear, come, go) cannot be used in the passive form.
- There is no passive form for the present or past perfect continuous tense or the future continuous tenses. (We do not say *The goods **have/had been being imported*** or ***will be being imported***.)

We use the passive to focus attention on the person or thing that is affected by the action of the verb:

- when the identity of the person/thing doing the action (= the agent) is unknown or unimportant:

*My office **was broken into** last night.*

*Tonight's football match **has been cancelled**.*

- when it is obvious who/what the agent is:
*He **was arrested** and **charged** with theft.* (Only the police can arrest and charge people.)

If we want to mention the agent in a passive sentence, we use the preposition by:

*The goods are imported **by** a chain of supermarkets.*

The passive is often used to describe technical or scientific processes:

Water was added and the mixture was heated to 85°C.

With verbs like *know*, *believe*, *think*, *consider*, *expect*, *report* we can use the passive + infinitive. We can also use an impersonal construction with *It* + passive + *that* + clause:
Bill Gates is known to be one of the world's richest people.
Twenty people are reported to have been injured in the fire.
It is believed that the accident was caused by a gas leak.
It has been estimated that average house prices will fall by 5% this year.

Structures like these are often used:

- to express an opinion that is widely accepted as true
- when you can't or don't want to identify a source of information.

We also use the passive to create a 'flow' in text:

- to put 'known information' at the beginning of a sentence:
The police have started to take a tougher line with petty criminals. Many of them are now being given prison sentences.
- to avoid the awkwardness of a very long subject:
The player who has won 'footballer of the year' most times addressed the club management.
 → *The club management was addressed by the player who has won 'footballer of the year' most times.*

Prepositions in time expressions

Use at

- with points of time:
at four o'clock, at dawn, at midday.
- with short periods which we think of as points:
I'm always short of money at the end of the month.
- with mealtimes:
We can discuss it at lunch tomorrow.
 (We can also say *over/during lunch*.)
- with the weekend, Christmas and Easter:
What are you doing at the weekend?
 (In American English *on the weekend* is also possible.)
- with night when talking about night-time in general, not a particular night:
The traffic noise makes it difficult to sleep at night.
 (Compare: *in the night* – see below.)

Use in

- for years, months and seasons:
in 2006, in March, in the autumn
- with the for parts of the day:
Sam always goes shopping in the morning.
 (Compare: *on Saturday morning* – see below.)
The ground was wet because it had rained in the night.
 (= during the night. Compare: *at night* – see above.)
- to say the period of time before something happens or how long something takes:
I'll call you back in 20 minutes.
In six months' time I'll have finished university.
Clara managed to do all her homework in half an hour.

Use on

- for particular dates or days, or parts of particular days:
My holiday starts on July 22nd.
We're having a party on Saturday if you'd like to come.
Let's go bowling on Friday night.
- with occasion:
Tatiana has visited us on several occasions in the past.

Reported speech

Verb tense changes

When we report what someone said, the tense of the verb is often 'further back' in time:

'I'm feeling ill.' → He said he **was** feeling ill.

'You can borrow my phone.' → She said I **could** borrow her phone.

'The rain has stopped.' → He said the rain **had stopped**.

'We drove all night.' → They said they **had driven** all night.

'We'll try to help.' → They said they **would try** to help.

The past perfect tenses and the modal verbs **would**, **could** and **should** cannot move 'further back', so they remain unchanged:

'I'd never spoken to her before.' → He said he'd never **spoken** to her before.

'I wouldn't go skiing again.' → She said she **wouldn't go** skiing again.

The tense of the reported speech does not need to change:

- if we want to make it clear that what the speaker said is still true now or remains relevant:
'I love black coffee.' → He said he **loves** black coffee.
'Picasso was born in Spain.' → She told us that Picasso **was born** in Spain.
- if the reporting verb is in the present:
'I'm looking forward to my holiday.' → She **says** she's **looking** forward to her holiday.

Pronoun, possessive adjective and adverb changes

- Pronouns and possessive adjectives often need to change in reported speech, especially when the reporter is different from the original speaker:

'I love you,' Dan said. → Dan said **he** loved **me**.
 'You didn't give **me** your address,' said Jane. → Jane said **we** hadn't given **her** our address.

- Time and place adverbs change if the time or place is no longer the same as in the direct speech:

'I'll see you **tomorrow**.' → Jackie said she would see me **the next/following day**.
 'We've lived **here** for six years.' → They said they had lived **there** for six years.

The adverb does not change if the time/place remains the same:

'I came **here** yesterday.' → (reported the same day) **He** says he came **here** yesterday.

- These are some of the time reference changes:

Direct speech	Reported speech
(ten minutes) ago	(ten minutes) before/earlier
last week/month/year	the previous week/month/year the week/month/year before
next week/month/ year	the following week/month/year the week/month/year after
now	at that time / immediately / then
this week	last/that week
today	that day / yesterday on Monday/Tuesday, etc.
tomorrow	the next/following day the day after
yesterday	the previous day the day before

Reporting questions

- When we report a question, we change it into the form of a statement. This means that we change the word order and do not use the auxiliary *do*, *does* or *did* in the present and past simple:
 'What are you watching?' → He asked us **what we were watching**.
 'Where do you live?' → She asked me **where I lived/live**.
- When we report Yes/No questions, we add *if* or *whether*:
 'Do you speak Italian?' → He asked me **if/whether I spoke/ speak Italian**.

Reporting verbs

There are many verbs which we can use to introduce reported speech. Most of them can be followed by more than one grammatical pattern.

verb + to infinitive

- agree: *They agreed to broadcast* the programme.
- offer: *He offered to buy* me lunch.
- promise: *The mayor has promised to give* us an interview.

verb + object + to infinitive

- advise: *The newspaper advises people to be* careful about using social media.
- ask: *She asked the reporter to repeat* his question.
- invite: *They've invited us to attend* the show.
- order/tell: *The teacher ordered/told the children to wait outside*.
- persuade: *I persuaded the magazine to print* my story.
- remind: *Can you remind me to update* my blog?
- warn: *She warned him not to be* late for the interview.

verb + preposition + noun / verb + -ing

- complain about: *The actress has complained about the paparazzi* outside her house.
- apologise for: *The organisation has apologised for publishing* misleading information on its website.
- accuse (somebody) of: *The president accused the press of distorting* the truth.

verb + noun / verb + -ing

- deny: *The minister has denied the accusation*.
- admit: *He admitted inventing* some details in his report.
- recommend: *She recommended doing* more research.
- suggest: *The directors have suggested paying* for online content with advertising.

verb + clause

These verbs can also be followed by (that) + clause:
admit, agree, complain, deny, promise, recommend, suggest:

She suggested that they should interview local people.

These verbs must be followed by an object before (that) + clause:

persuade, promise, remind, tell, warn:

We warned our audience that they might find some of the photos distressing.

→ See also page 179: Verbs + to infinitive or -ing

Time clauses

Time clauses start with words like *when*, *while*, *as*, *before*, *after*, *until*, *as soon as*.

Referring to the future

When a time clause describes an action in the future, use a present tense (present simple, present continuous or present perfect), not a future tense:

I'll call you	when I leave work. (not will leave) when I'm leaving work. (not will be leaving) when I've left work. (not will have left)
---------------	--

Note these differences:

- When she **goes** to Rome she **stays** with Carla. (= She does this every time she goes to Rome.)
When she goes to Rome she'll stay with Carla (= She'll go there in the future and then she'll stay with Carla.)
- I'll help you when you **cook** lunch. (= I'll help you to cook lunch.)
I'll help you when I've cooked lunch. (= First I'll cook lunch. Then I'll help you.)
I'll explain the problem while you're cooking lunch (= I'll explain. At the same time, you'll be cooking lunch.)

Referring to the past

- I called him when my train **got** to the station. (= My train arrived and immediately afterwards I called.)
I called him when my train was getting to the station (= I called while the train was in the process of arriving.)
I called him when the train had left the station. (= The train left earlier. I called later.)

when and while

When is used:

- to show one action happening at the same time as another. It can mean 'During the time that' or 'At the time that':
When we lived / were living in Wales, I rode my bike everywhere. (While can also be used here.)
Our dog always barks when visitors come.
- to show one action happening immediately after another, and often as a result of it:
When I get some money I'll buy a new jacket.
The snow melted when the sun came out.
- to show an action interrupting or happening in the course of another longer action:
He was playing squash when he injured his wrist.

While is always used:

- to show one action happening at the same time as another. It means 'During the time that' and it is often (but not always) used with continuous tenses:
She kept a blog while she was travelling in Asia. (When can also be used here.)
I'll do the crossword while I'm waiting for you.
The postman delivered the parcel while I was washing the car. (My action lasted longer than the postman's.)
While Dad heated the soup, I made some toast. (The two actions occupied approximately the same length of time.)

Other time expressions

during

The preposition *during* is followed by a noun or noun phrase. Use *during*:

- to describe an action lasting for the whole of a time period or event:
Bears hibernate during the winter.
The town was lit up during the festival.
- to describe an action happening at some point within a time period or event:
I'll be spending a week in Prague during the summer.
Three players were given a red card during the match.

meanwhile

Meanwhile is an adverb which comes at the beginning of a sentence. Use *meanwhile*:

- to introduce an action happening while another event, mentioned in the previous sentence, takes/took place:
Paz spent two hours this afternoon surfing the Internet.
Meanwhile, the rest of the family went for a long walk.
- to introduce an action happening between two times:
I'll be home in half an hour. **Meanwhile**, (= between now and then) could you prepare the vegetables?

Transitive verbs

English verbs are classified as transitive or intransitive. Dictionaries identify them with the letters *T* and *I*.

- A transitive verb must be followed by an object:
She found the information on the Internet. (*the information* is the object of the transitive verb *found*.)
- An intransitive verb has no object:
At five past seven our train arrived.

- Because transitive verbs have an object, they can be used in the passive form:

Active: Someone **stole our car** from outside the house.

Passive: **Our car was stolen** from outside the house.

Intransitive verbs cannot be used in the passive form.

- Some transitive verbs can have two objects, a direct object and an indirect object:

They will send you an email to confirm your booking. (*an email* is the direct object of *will send*; *you* is the indirect object.)

Either of these objects may become the subject of a passive sentence.

You will be sent an email to confirm your booking.

An email will be sent to you to confirm your booking.

- Many verbs can be used transitively and intransitively, sometimes with different meanings:

Could you help me move this table? (transitive)

We're **moving** tomorrow. (intransitive)

I think I left my books at college. (transitive)

They **left** at three o'clock. (intransitive)

She **runs her business** from home. (transitive)

A river **runs** through our village. (intransitive)

Verb forms to talk about the past

Past simple

The past simple tense is used to describe:

- an action that happened or a state that existed at a specific time in the past:
Yesterday I felt so tired that I didn't go to work.
- an action that lasted for a period of time in the past, but is now finished:
I studied in Paris for four years from 2005 to 2009.
- a habitual action over a specific period in the past:
While he was away, he rang his girlfriend every day.
- actions which happened one after the other:
She opened the fridge, took out the milk, gave some to the cat and put some in her coffee.

Past continuous

The past continuous tense is used to describe:

- an activity which started before and continued until an event in the past:
She was driving home when the police stopped her. (The activity of driving was interrupted by the police's action.)
- an activity which started before and continued after an event in the past:
I was cooking lunch when I heard the news. (And I continued to cook lunch afterwards.)
- a situation which was temporary at a time in the past:
I remember that summer well. I was staying with my aunt at the time, while my parents were away.

Compare the use of the past simple when the situation in the past was more permanent:

I lived in Rome when I was a child. (not *I was living*)

- something that frequently happened, with always or forever, often to express amusement or irritation:

My dad was always dressing up in funny hats.

We got fed up with Jill, who was forever complaining.

State verbs

We do not usually use the continuous with state verbs (this applies to all tenses). These are commonly:

- verbs which express **opinions, feelings or knowledge**, e.g. agree, believe, disagree, hate, know, like, love, need, prefer, realise, regret, understand
- verbs which describe **appearance**, e.g. appear, look, seem, resemble
- verbs which describe **senses** e.g. smell, taste
- these other verbs: belong, consist, contain, cost, own

The present perfect tenses

The present perfect tense is used:

- to describe an action that happened at an unspecified time in the past up to now:
They've recorded a lot of albums.
- to describe a past action when the emphasis is on the result in the present:
Someone's stolen my phone! (It's not here now.)
I've told Tim about tomorrow's rehearsal. (He knows about it.)
It's no wonder you're tired – you've been working so hard!
- typically with time adverbs that connect the past to the present, e.g. *just*, *already*, *lately*, *so far*, *up to now*, *yet*, *today* (when it is still the same day), *this morning* (when it is still the same morning):

Have you seen any good films lately?

England has only won the World Cup once so far.

(Note: this use of the present perfect is typical in British English. In American English, the past simple may be used: *Did you see any good films lately? England only won the World Cup once so far.*)

I've been cleaning the house this morning.

Compare: *I cleaned the house this morning.* (It's now the afternoon.)

- with *for* or *since* to describe an activity or state that started in the past and is still continuing in the present:
She's lived in Spain for nearly ten years.
They've known each other since they were children.
He's been driving for three hours,

The present perfect simple and continuous are sometimes interchangeable, although we only use the simple form with state verbs. However, note the differences in the table below.

Present perfect simple	Present perfect continuous
emphasises the result: <i>I've phoned my friends and they're coming to the party.</i>	emphasises the activity: <i>I've been phoning my friends. That's why I haven't done my homework.</i>
often describes an action that is now completed: <i>We've bought some food for the weekend.</i> (It's in the kitchen now). <i>Working conditions have improved a lot.</i> (They're much better now).	shows that an activity has continued for a period of time and may mean that it is still continuing: <i>We've been buying most of our food at the market lately.</i> <i>Working conditions have been improving since the new manager took over.</i> (They're in the process of getting better.)
says how much has been completed or how often something has been done: <i>I've cooked three pizzas.</i> <i>Sandra has phoned me four times today.</i>	says how long an activity has been happening: <i>I've been cooking all afternoon.</i> <i>I've been speaking on the phone for hours.</i>
may indicate a more permanent situation: <i>He's worked in this shop all his life.</i> <i>I've always lived here.</i>	may indicate a temporary situation: <i>I've been working on my art project for two weeks now.</i> <i>People have been living in terrible conditions in the refugee camp.</i>

The past perfect tenses

The past perfect simple tense is used:

- to indicate that we are talking about an action which took place, or a state which existed, **before** another activity or situation in the past, which is described in the past simple:

When Maria got home, they had eaten dinner.

Compare: When Maria got home, they ate dinner. (They ate dinner when she arrived.)

- typically with time expressions like when, as soon as, after, before, it was the first time, etc.

He went home as soon as he'd finished his work.

The past perfect continuous tense is used:

- to focus on the length of time:

My eyes were really tired because I'd been reading for two or three hours in bad light.

- to say how long something happened up to a point in the past:

It was two months before any of the teachers noticed that Mike hadn't been coming to school.

would and used to

Would + infinitive and **used to** + infinitive are used to talk about things which happened repeatedly in the past but don't happen now:

When I was small, my mother would read to me in bed and she'd sing me a song to help me to sleep. While she was reading to me, my father used to wash up the dinner things.

- Use **used to**, not **would**, to talk about past states which no longer exist:

There used to be a grocer's opposite the bus station. (not There would be).

- **Used to** only exists in the past. It has no other tenses. The negative is **didn't use to**:

He didn't use to be so short-tempered.

The question form is **Did** (subject) **use to**:

Did you use to enjoy school when you were a kid?

- Use the past simple, not **used to** or **would**, to specify how many times or how often something happened:

Charlie used to be a very successful tennis player. He won the junior championship three times.

Verbs + to infinitive or -ing Verbs followed by the infinitive

The infinitive without **to** is used after:

- modal verbs:

We must hurry or we'll be late.

The **to infinitive** is used after:

- some verbs which are modal in meaning:

I have to go to work tomorrow.

You ought to get more sleep.

You need to think again. You don't need to worry.

Note: The verb **need** has an alternative negative form, **needn't**, which is followed by the infinitive without **to**:
You needn't worry.

- certain verbs, e.g. afford, agree, arrange, appear, attempt, choose, decide, expect, hope, intend, learn, manage, offer, pretend, promise, refuse, seem:

We can't afford to go on holiday this year.

- certain verbs + object, e.g. advise, allow, ask, convince, enable, encourage, forbid, force, get, instruct, invite, order, persuade, remind, require, teach, tell, train, want, warn, wish:

You can't force people to believe something.

My father taught me to swim.

Note: After the verb **help**, the **to** can be omitted before the infinitive:

She helped me (to) revise for my exam.

Verbs followed by the -ing form

The **-ing** form of the verb is used after:

- some verbs which express likes and dislikes, e.g. dislike, enjoy, loathe, (don't) mind, (can't) stand:

She can't stand getting stuck in a traffic jam.

But note the following exceptions:

– **hate/like/love/prefer** are usually followed by the **-ing** form but are sometimes followed by the **to infinitive** (see below).

– **would + hate/like/love/prefer** is always followed by the **to infinitive**:

I'd hate to get up early every morning.

- certain verbs, e.g. admit, appreciate, avoid, can't help, consider, delay, deny, finish, imagine, involve, keep, miss, postpone, prevent, recommend, report, resist, risk, suggest:

The prime minister has just finished speaking.

Verbs followed by to infinitive or -ing

A small number of verbs can be followed either by the infinitive or by the -ing form.

With no difference in meaning

begin, can't bear, cease, commence, continue, hate, intend, like, love, propose, start:

I've just started to learn / learning to ski.

He had intended to leave / leaving before midnight.

Note: With the verbs *like, love, hate* there can be this slight difference in meaning:

I like to clean my car every week. (The focus is on the result of the activity.)

I like cleaning my car every week. (The focus is on the activity itself, i.e. I enjoy cleaning it.)

With different meanings

- verbs expressing perception

I saw the plane land. (= I saw the whole action.)

I saw the plane landing. (= I saw part of the action.)

- forget

I forgot to phone my brother. (= I didn't phone him.)

I'll never forget phoning my sister that night. (= I phoned her and I recall it well.)

- remember

Tom remembered to close the windows before he left.

(= He did something he had to do; he didn't forget.)

Tom remembered closing the windows before he left.

(= He recalled doing it.)

- go on

She won her first race when she was seven and went on to break the world record. (= Breaking the world record was something she did later.)

He went on walking even though he was exhausted.

(= He didn't stop walking.)

- mean

I'm sorry, I didn't mean to be rude. (= intend)

If we want to catch the early train, it'll mean getting up at 5:00. (= involve)

- regret

I regret to inform you that you have not passed the test. (= I'm sorry about something unwelcome I'm about to say.)

He now regrets taking the day off work. (= He wishes he hadn't taken the day off work.)

- stop

We'd better stop to look at the map. (= stop what we are doing in order to do something else)

There's nothing you can do about it, so stop worrying. (= finish worrying)

- try

I've been trying to repair my computer all morning.

(= attempt something difficult)

Have you tried kicking it? (= do something which might solve a problem)

Ways of contrasting ideas

Conjunctions: *but, whereas, while, although, (even) though*

- **But** can contrast words, phrases and clauses, normally within the same sentence:

The work was tiring but worthwhile.

The work was tiring but it produced worthwhile results.

However, in informal writing it may be used to start a sentence:

We were half dead by the end of the day! But at least the job turned out well.

- **Whereas** and **while** are used to contrast different, but not contradictory, ideas:

He can eat anything he likes without putting on weight, whereas most people have to be more careful.

While I know she can be difficult at times, I'm very fond of her.

The **while** clause usually comes before the main clause.

- **Though / although / even though** introduce an idea that contrasts with the one in the main clause:

He failed his driving test although / even though he had practised every day for the previous two weeks.

Even though is more emphatic than *though/although*.

- **Even if** is similar to **even though**, but adds a conditional meaning:

I'm going to New Zealand for my holiday next year even if I have to save all year.

Prepositions: *despite, in spite of*

- **Despite** and **in spite of** are prepositions and therefore they are followed by a noun or an -ing form:

The journey was very quick despite / in spite of the heavy traffic.

Despite / In spite of feeling ill, / the fact that I felt ill, I enjoyed the party.

Adverbs: *however, nevertheless*

- **However** is used to contrast a new sentence with the previous one(s). It normally goes at the beginning of the sentence, but may be placed within it or at the end:

This is one possible solution to the problem. However, there are others. / There are others, however. / There are, however, others.

Note: Unlike *but*, *however* cannot be used to link two contrasting clauses in the same sentence.

- **Nevertheless** has the same function but is more formal. It normally goes at the beginning of the sentence:
This is an extremely difficult decision. Nevertheless, it is one that we have to make.

Word formation

Adding prefixes

Prefixes to give negative meanings

Some words can be given a negative meaning by adding a prefix (e.g. *dis-* + *like* = *dislike*) to the beginning of a word. Here are some common prefixes which can be used to give a negative meaning:

- *dis-*: disrespect
- *in-*: inconvenience
- *un-*: unconventional

Before many (but not all) words beginning with:

- *il-* we add the prefix *il-*: *illiterate*
- *im-* and *po* we add the prefix *im-*: *imperfect*
- *ir-* we add the prefix *ir-*: *irrational*

Prefixes to say when something happens

- *pre-* means 'before a time or event':
premature (= happening or done too soon, especially before the natural or desired time)
- *post-* means 'after' or 'later than':
postgraduate (= a student who has already obtained one degree and is studying at a university for a more advanced qualification i.e. after graduating)

Prefixes to indicate attitude

- *pro-* means 'supporting or approving of something' and with this meaning it is normally used with a hyphen:
pro-European
- *anti-* means 'opposed to' or 'against' and is normally used with a hyphen:
anti-social, anti-terrorist

Other prefixes and their meanings

- *mis-* usually means 'wrongly' or 'badly':
misbehave (= behave wrongly or badly)
- *re-* usually means 'again' and is often added to verbs:
redevelop (= to change an area of a town by replacing old buildings, roads, etc. with new ones, i.e. to develop again)
- *inter-* means 'between' or 'among':
interactive (= involving communication between people)

- *over-* can mean '(from) above':
overview, oversee

It can also mean 'too much' or 'more than usual':
overworked, overspend

- *under-* can mean 'below':
underground, undermine

It can also mean 'not enough':
underpaid, undervalue

Adding suffixes

Verbs, nouns, adjectives and adverbs can be formed from other related or base words by adding a suffix to the end of the word (e.g. *appear* + *-ance* = *appearance*). There are no clear rules – each word and the words which can be formed from it must be learned individually.

Some of the most common suffixes and their usual meanings are listed below.

verb → noun

suffix	verb	noun	notes
-ment	recruit	recruitment	used to form nouns which refer to an action or process or its result
-ation, -ition, -tion, -sion	accuse define distract provide	accusation definition distraction provision	added to verbs to form nouns showing action or condition
-er, -or	rule supervise	ruler supervisor	added to some verbs to form nouns which refer to people or things that do that activity
-ance, -ence	acquaint interfere	acquaintance interference	used to form nouns which refer to an action, a series of actions, or a state
-ant	contest	contestant	used to refer to a person or thing performing or causing the action
-al	arrive	arrival	used to add the meaning 'the action of' to a noun
-ee	train	trainee	refers to the person to whom the action of the verb is being done

adjective → noun

suffix	adjective	noun	notes
-ance, -ence	<i>significant</i> <i>convenient</i>	<i>significance</i> <i>convenience</i>	added to adjectives ending in -ant or -ent
-ness	<i>ready</i>	<i>readiness</i>	added to adjectives to form nouns which refer to a quality or a condition
-ity	<i>diverse</i> <i>liable</i>	<i>diversity</i> <i>liability</i>	notice that -able becomes -ability

adjective/noun → adjective / noun

suffix	adjective/ noun	verb	notes
-ify	<i>clear</i>	<i>clarify</i>	used to form verbs meaning 'to cause to become or to increase'
-ise, -ize	<i>general</i>	<i>generalise / generalize</i>	added to form verbs meaning 'to cause to become'

noun → adjective

suffix	noun	adjective	notes
-y	<i>filth</i>	<i>filthy</i>	added to nouns to form adjectives meaning 'like the stated thing'
-ful	<i>fruit</i>	<i>fruitful</i>	having the stated quality to a high degree, or causing it
-ous	<i>number</i>	<i>numerous</i>	
-less	<i>speech</i>	<i>speechless</i>	used to add the meaning 'without'
-al	<i>nutrition</i>	<i>nutritional</i>	used to add the meaning 'connected with'
-ic	<i>idealist</i>	<i>idealistic</i>	used to form adjectives which say what a person, thing or action is like
-ish	<i>snob</i>	<i>snobbish</i>	

verb → adjective

suffix	verb	adjective	notes
-ed	<i>bias</i>	<i>biased</i>	
-ing	<i>grip</i>	<i>gripping</i>	
-able, -ible	<i>sustain</i> <i>neglect</i>	<i>sustainable</i> <i>negligible</i>	added to verbs to form adjectives which mean 'able to receive the action' or 'worth receiving the action'
-ent	<i>persist</i>	<i>persistent</i>	
-ive	<i>exclude</i>	<i>exclusive</i>	added to verbs to form adjectives meaning 'showing the ability to perform the activity'

noun → noun

suffix	noun	noun	notes
-ism	<i>material</i>	<i>materialism</i>	used to form nouns which describe social, political or religious beliefs, studies or ways of behaving
-ist	<i>violin</i> <i>therapy</i>	<i>violinist</i> <i>therapist</i>	used to form nouns which describe people with a particular expertise, set of beliefs or way of behaving
-ship	<i>sponsor</i>	<i>sponsorship</i>	having the rank, position, skill or relationship of the stated type

adjective → adverb

Adverbs are almost always formed by adding *-ly* to the adjective. However, if the adjective ends in *-ic*, change it to an adverb by adding *-ally*. (Exception: *public* → *publicly*)

suffix	adjective	adverb
-ly / -ally	<i>immense</i> <i>heroic</i>	<i>immensely</i> <i>heroically</i>

Spelling rules for adding affixes

Affixes are either prefixes or suffixes.

Below are some spelling rules when adding affixes.

When adding *-ed*, *-ing*, *-er*, *-est*, *-ance*, *-ence*, *-en* or *-y*, double the final consonant in:

- one-syllable words which end in consonant–vowel–consonant:
run – *running*, *flat* – *flatten*, *mud* – *muddy*
(But *w*, *x* and *y* are never doubled: *flowed*, *taxing*.)
- verbs of two or more syllables which end in consonant–vowel–consonant when the final syllable is stressed:
occur – *occurrence*, *forget* – *forgetting*
- verbs which end in *l* after one vowel in British English (in American English the *l* may not double):
travel – *traveller*, *cancel* – *cancellation*

Don't double the final consonant when:

- there are two final consonants:
correspond – *correspondence*
- there are two vowels before the final consonant:
disappear – *disappearance*
- the stress is not on the final syllable:
deepen – *deepening*

Drop the final *-e*:

- if there is a consonant before it and the suffix begins with a vowel (*-er*, *-ed*, *-ing*, *-ance*, *-ation*, etc.):
nonsense – *nonsensical*, *amaze* – *amazing*, *sane* – *sanity*

Note this exception: adding *-able* to words ending in *-ce* and *-ge*: *noticeable*, *knowledgeable*

Don't drop the final *-e*:

- when the suffix begins with a consonant:
safe – *safety*, *arrange* – *arrangement*, *disgrace* – *disgraceful*

Note this exception: *argue* – *argument*

Change *-y* to *i*:

- in words which end in *-y* after a consonant when a suffix (with the exception of *-ing*) is added:
happy – *happiness*, *try* – *tried / trial*, *study* – *studious*,
family – *familiar*, *rely* – *reliance*

Note these exceptions:

dry – *drier / drily* but *dryness*; *shy* – *shyness / shyly*

Change *-ie* to *y*:

- when adding *-ing* to words which end in *-ie*:
lie – *lying*, *die* – *dying*

Add *-es* rather than *-s* for plural nouns or present simple verbs when the word ends in:

- s*: *bus* – *buses*, *miss* – *misses*
- ch*: *watch* – *watches*
- sh*: *wish* – *wishes*
- x*: *relax* – *relaxes*

Note: For some common nouns ending in *-f* or *-fe* the plural ending is *-ves*:

leaf – *leaves*, *loaf* – *loaves*, *knife* – *knives*

Adding prefixes

When a prefix is added (before the word), the spelling does not change, e.g. with *dis-*, *un-* and *ir-*:

appoint – *disappoint*, *satisfied* – *dissatisfied*, *truthful* – *untruthful*, *necessary* – *unnecessary*, *relevant* – *irrelevant*

Writing reference

What to expect in the exam

The Writing paper is Paper 2. It lasts 1 hour 30 minutes. You do two tasks.

- In Part 1, there is one task which you must do: an essay.
- In Part 2, you choose one of three tasks.

Part 1

You are asked to write an essay on a given subject or proposition, together with input text in the form of notes made during some form of discussion on the subject. These notes consist of three general topic areas and some quoted opinions from the discussion. In your essay you must cover **two** of the the topic areas. You can make use of the opinions if you wish, but you don't have to do so.

Length: 220–260 words

Time: approximately 45 minutes

This part tests your ability to

- develop an argument on a particular topic
- express your opinions clearly and support your ideas with reasons and examples
- write in a style that is appropriately formal for an academic essay
- organise your answer in a logical way
- write accurate English.

How to do Part 1

- 1 Read carefully through the instructions and the accompanying input text that you are given. (2 minutes)
- 2 Find and underline the points which explain the subject and context of the essay and the key points that you must write about. (2 minutes)
- 3 Decide which two of the three given topic areas you will focus on and whether you want to refer to any of the opinions. (2 minutes)
- 4 Make brief notes on what you will put in your answer and organise your notes into a plan. When writing your plan, decide how many paragraphs you need and what you will say in each one. If you are planning to use any of the opinions given in the task, think about how you can express them in your own words. (5–7 minutes)
- 5 Write your answer, following your plan. (25–30 minutes)
- 6 When you have finished, check your answer for mistakes. (5 minutes)

Part 2

In Part 2 you must choose one writing task from a choice of three. The tasks you can choose from will be three of these: an email, a letter, a proposal, a report, a review.

For each of these tasks, the instructions are much shorter than in Part 1 (a maximum of 80 words). They tell you who your text is to be written for, what its purpose is and what areas it should cover. You answer the task with your own ideas.

Length: 220–260 words

Time: approximately 45 minutes

This part tests your ability to

- organise and structure your writing
- use an appropriate range of vocabulary and grammatical structures
- use an appropriate style
- compare, make suggestions and recommendations, express opinions, justify your point of view, persuade, etc., depending on the task.

How to do Part 2

- 1 Read the questions and choose the task you think is easiest for you. (1–2 minutes)
- 2 Re-read the task you have chosen and underline
 - the points you must deal with
 - who will read what you write
 - anything else you think is important. (2 minutes)
- 3 Decide what style is appropriate.
- 4 Think of ideas you can use to deal with the question and write a plan. When writing it, decide how many paragraphs you need and what to say in each one. (5 minutes)
- 5 Think of useful vocabulary you can include in your answer and note it down in your plan. (2–3 minutes)
- 6 Write your answer, following your plan. (25–30 minutes)
- 7 When you've finished, check your answer for mistakes. (5 minutes)

Preparing for the Writing paper

When you do a writing task as homework or exam preparation, follow these procedures.

Set aside the time you need

In the exam you will have about 45 minutes to do each task. At the beginning of your course, spend longer doing the task and working on the writing skills needed to produce a good answer. Nearer the exam, practise answering the question within the time allowed.

Before writing

- 1 Brainstorm your ideas, make notes and write a plan. Your plan should have a clear structure, divided into paragraphs or sections.
- 2 Study the model answers in the units and in this Writing reference. Pay attention to the structure and layout of the answers, underline language you can use and read the suggestions and advice accompanying the answers.
- 3 Compare your plan with the model(s). If your plan is different, do you have good reasons for answering the question in a different way?
- 4 Use the resources at your disposal.
 - Try to use some of the words/phrases you have underlined in the unit, or copied into your notebook or from your photocopiable word lists. Take the opportunity to use new language in your answers: if you use it correctly, then you've learnt something and made progress; if you make a mistake, your teacher will give you feedback so that you can use it correctly next time.
 - Use a good learner's dictionary to check spelling, meanings and usage.
 - Try to include grammatical structures you have studied recently. This will reinforce your learning.
- 5 In your plan, include vocabulary and grammatical structures you want to use.
- 6 Read and incorporate your teacher's advice and suggestions on other pieces of writing you've done.

When writing

- 1 Follow your plan so that when you write, you concentrate on producing language to express ideas you've already generated.
- 2 Avoid repeating the same words too often – use synonyms where possible (a good learner's dictionary will help you find some of these).
- 3 If you need to correct something, cross out the mistake and continue writing – you won't lose marks as long as your corrections are clear. In the exam you won't have time to copy out your answer again.

After writing

- 1 Check what you've written: ask yourself, 'Have I expressed myself clearly?'
- 2 Check for mistakes, particularly mistakes you've made in previous writing tasks, and correct them (see below).

When your teacher hands back your written work

- 1 Go through it carefully, checking your mistakes and your teacher's suggestions.
- 2 Keep a section of your notebook or a computer file for noting your mistakes and the corrections. As an example, look at this extract from a student's work and the table in her computer file where she notes her mistakes.

cancellation

The cancelling of our opening speech because our actor the first bad impression made on our guests couldn't come was the first bad impression our guests had.

I think it would be a good idea during our next activity invite day to host Colin Briggs, the famous footballer. This children would please the kids and many of their parents as well.

Mistake	Details	Correction
cancelling	Should use the noun when it exists, not verb + -ing	cancellation
the first bad impression our guests had	The collocation is 'make a bad impression on sb'	the first bad impression made on our guests
host	'Host' (verb) means 'to introduce guests or performers on a radio or television programme'	invite
kids	'Kids' is informal.	children

- 3 Update your list after every writing task. When a mistake disappears from your writing, remove it from the list. When you do the Writing paper in the exam itself, check for the mistakes you know are or were on your list: in the exam you're more likely to repeat mistakes you've made before than make new ones.

Essays

An essay is a piece of academic writing, produced for a teacher or lecturer, in which you have to discuss issues connected with a topic. You may previously have discussed this topic in class. You should express your opinions on the topic and the reasons for them.

You studied how to write essays in Units 1, 3, 9 and 14

Exercise 1

Look at this writing task. Underline what you consider to be the main points and then answer the questions below.

You have watched a television discussion about methods governments could adopt to encourage people to take more exercise. You have made the notes below.

How can governments encourage people to take more exercise?

- better education
- free facilities
- exercise time at work

Some opinions expressed in the discussion:

'People already know the benefits of exercise but don't do enough about it.'

'Many forms of exercise are free.'

'Employers would benefit from a healthier workforce.'

Write an essay discussing **two** of the methods in your notes. You should **explain which method you think is more important** for governments to consider and **provide reasons** in support of your opinion.

You may, if you wish, make use of the opinions expressed in the discussion, but you should use your own words as far as possible.

- 1 Do you agree, on the whole, that governments have a role to play in encouraging people to take more exercise?
If you do, what is your main reason? If not, why not?
- 2 How could education be used to achieve this aim?
 - Who should be targeted by an education programme? Children? Adults?
 - Where should this education take place? In school? On TV? Online?
- 3 What kinds of facilities could be made free?
- 4 How do you think employers and employees would react to the idea of 'exercise time at work'?
- 5 Do you agree or disagree with any of the three opinions expressed?

Exercise 2

Which two of these three plans are appropriate for the essay task in Exercise 1? What are the problems with the other plan?

Plan 1

- Para 1 Introduction: the importance of taking exercise – otherwise, heart problems, obesity
- Para 2 People of all ages need facilities that are freely available
- Para 3 Idea of introducing exercise classes in schools – problems, why it won't work
- Para 4 Conclusion: providing free facilities is the best thing governments can do

Plan 2

- Para 1 Introduction: the general consensus on exercise and the idea of a government role to play
- Para 2 How schools can do more to help solve the problem – more PE and sport
- Para 3 The part parents might play in supporting these initiatives
- Para 4 Benefits of more free facilities, e.g. swimming pools, bike paths
- Para 5 Conclusion: why education is more important

Plan 3

- Para 1 Introduction: the exercise I did as a child and how it has benefited me
- Para 2 Teaching young people about exercise: inadequacies in the current education system
- Para 3 Advantages of having free exercise facilities
- Para 4 Exercise time at work – impractical: loss of productivity
- Para 5 Conclusion: need for better education and free facilities

Exercise 3

Read the sample answer below.

- 1 Which method in the notes does the writer not address?
- 2 Which of the two methods described does the writer generally agree with?
- 3 Why doesn't the writer agree with the other method?
- 4 What reasons does the writer give for disagreeing with one of the methods?
- 5 Does the writer include any of the opinions included in the task description? If so, which?

It is generally accepted that people today take insufficient exercise. This, combined with a poor diet, can lead to ill health and a poor quality of life. In view of this, it has been suggested that governments should act to encourage more exercise. I shall consider two of the proposed methods.

Probably the most important action governments could take would be to introduce an education programme into all schools. In addition to publicising the benefits of exercise, this would make exercise a compulsory part of the school curriculum and get young people used to following an exercise regime. In my view, however, for this to be truly successful, there should be a corresponding programme aimed at adults. If parents took part in an exercise programme put on by the school, they would be supporting what their children were being taught.

It has been suggested that if exercise facilities were free, there would be an increased public take-up. In theory, this seems an excellent way of encouraging adults to exercise, but in practice I am doubtful. It is based on the assumption that exercise depends on money, whereas in fact walking and cycling, two very effective ways of keeping fit, are free and can be fitted conveniently into most people's daily routine. Therefore, in my opinion, providing expensive extra facilities is unnecessary and would be a misuse of public money.

In view of the above arguments, I believe governments should introduce education programmes aimed at people of all ages because this is the most cost-effective means of achieving the desired goal.

Write a short first paragraph introducing the topic and your angle on it.

Discuss one of the three methods listed in the notes in the exam task. Give reasons for your opinion on this.

Discuss another of the methods, again giving your opinion supported by reasons.

Write a concluding paragraph summarising your opinions.

When you write an essay you need to make sure that the argument you are making is clear to the reader. This means that paragraphs should follow on clearly from each other and that sentences within paragraphs should be linked in a logical, easy-to-follow sequence. Below are some of the ways you can help the reader to follow your thinking. Examples are from the sample essay.

Sentences which guide the reader

Include sentences or phrases that act as signposts to guide the reader through your essay. These often come at the beginning of a paragraph.

I shall consider two of the proposed methods.

Probably the most important action would be ...

It has been suggested that ...

In view of the above arguments, I believe ...

Linking words and phrases

In addition to publicising the benefits of regular exercise, this would ...

This seems excellent, but in practice I am doubtful.

It is based on the assumption that exercise costs money, whereas in fact walking and cycling are free.

Therefore, in my opinion, providing expensive facilities is unnecessary.

Governments should introduce education programmes because ...

Pronouns and other reference words to avoid repetition

This, combined with a poor diet ...

In my view, for this to be truly successful, ...

If parents took part, they would be supporting what their children were being taught.

It is based on the assumption that ...

In view of the above arguments, ...

Lexical links

Lexical links include synonyms, near synonyms and words from the same root.

governments should act – the most important action governments could take

benefits of regular exercise – used to following an exercise regime

get young people used to following – what their children were being taught

a programme aimed at adults – If parents took part

Exercise 4

Rewrite the second sentence using reference words or synonyms to avoid repeating the words in **bold**.

- 1 When you engage in **physical exercise**, you **burn calories**.
The more intense the **physical exercise**, the more **calories** you **burn**.
- 2 Do you need to **relax** after a **stressful day at work**? You can **relax** after a **stressful day at work** by taking regular exercise.
- 3 **Exercise** can be **fun**. **Exercise** gives you a chance to unwind, by engaging in activities that you find **fun**.
- 4 Find an **activity** you enjoy, and just do it. If the **activity** bores you, try something new.
- 5 Vigorous aerobic activity means **you're breathing hard and fast**. If **you're breathing hard and fast**, you won't be able to speak more than a few words.

Exercise 5

Find sets of three words or phrases from the box which have similar meanings.

Example: aim – goal – objective

accomplish achieve active aim attain encourage
endurance energetic goal inadequate inspire
insufficient motivate objective scarce stamina
staying power strenuous

Exercise 6

Consider how you could organise these ideas for a paragraph about exercise time at work for the essay task in Exercise 1. Think about the ordering and linking of ideas and ways of avoiding repetition.

- I am not in favour of the idea of the governments requiring employers to provide exercise time at work.
- Employees would probably benefit from having exercise time at work.
- Employers cannot be forced to provide time for exercise.
- Some people say that the government should require employers to provide exercise time at work.
- The idea sounds attractive.
- Workers must take responsibility for their own health and fitness.
- The idea is impossible to implement.

Other useful language

Introducing your opinions

(Personally,) I believe/think/feel that ...

From my point of view ...

In my view / opinion ...

I would argue that ...

As far as I am concerned, ...

Interestingly, ...

Arguably, ...

Introducing other people's opinions

It is often a good idea to show the reader how your own ideas contrast with the opinions of other people (e.g.

Some people say the Internet has ruined our lives, but in my opinion, the Internet has transformed the world for the better.)

Some people suggest/believe/claim that ...

It is often/sometimes said/argued/suggested that ...

It can be argued that ...

According to many/some people ...

It has been suggested that ...

Pointing out that something is obvious

When you need to express an obvious point as part of an argument, it is often useful to show that you are aware that you're not saying anything unusual.

obviously clearly undoubtedly of course

Without a doubt, ...

Needless to say, ...

It goes without saying that ...

Reviews

A review will require some description followed by a recommendation.

In a review, usually for an international magazine or newspaper, you are expected to express your opinion about something which readers may be thinking of seeing, doing or buying, e.g. a film, a concert or an exhibition. You can assume that the readers are people with similar interests to yours. You usually have to make a recommendation about the thing you are reviewing. Sometimes you will be asked to write about two things of the same type and to express your preference for one or them.

You studied how to write a review in Units 6 and 11.

Exercise 1

Read the writing task below.

- 1 What things should you deal with in your review?
- 2 Who will read it and what style would be suitable?

You see the announcement below in an international magazine.

Where to buy clothes

Our readers are interested in clothes shops to visit when on holiday or travelling. We invite you to write a review for visitors to your town comparing two clothes shops. Please describe what sort of clothes they sell, comment on the quality of the service, the value for money and how fashionable they are, and give recommendations.

Write your review.

Exercise 2

Read the sample answer below.

- 1 Does the writer cover all the points mentioned in the writing task?
- 2 How does the writer start the review?
- 3 What adjectives does the writer use to describe
 - the clothes?
 - the staff?
- 4 Does the writer use a formal or an informal style?
- 5 What do you notice about the layout?
- 6 Explain the writer's recommendations in your own words.

Shopping in Linz

Buying clothes might not be the first thing you think of when visiting Linz, but there are some attractive boutiques in the old town and you can come away looking fashionable and stylish. Here are my favourites.

Melanie's

Melanie's sells clothes for women and while it is a small shop, it has a wide range of styles. If you want to look really fashionable, it's certainly worth a visit. The shop has a selection of formal and casual clothes from some of the world's top designers, so they're not cheap. However, you can occasionally pick up a bargain. The staff are attentive and they'll help you to combine clothes and accessories so that you'll leave the shop looking like a million dollars, even though it may cost you a fortune!

The Parallel

If you don't feel like spending so much, The Parallel is a good alternative. This shop belongs to some local designers and sells their unique range of clothes for women at competitive prices. The clothes tend to be in distinctive bright colours, but the quality is generally good, so the shop represents value for money. You'll have to look after yourself as, apart from the security guard, the only staff you'll find are on the cash desk. While they're polite and friendly, they don't have time to give much help.

My recommendations

To sum up, for something really special, go to Melanie's, but be careful or your credit card will suffer. For bright clothes at a reasonable price, The Parallel is a better bet.

Make your review sound as authentic as possible: address the reader, give an introduction and mention the town.

Think about the details the reader will want to know and include them.

You can use a little humour to maintain your reader's interest.

You can divide the review into sections as here, but it is not always necessary.

Summarising

To summarise, ... All in all, ... To sum up, ... In summary, ...

Proposals and reports

In both proposals and reports, you are expected to write in clearly organised sections and include factual information leading to a suggestion, recommendation or conclusion.

Proposals

When you write a proposal you are trying to persuade readers to follow a course of action. Your reader may be someone in a superior position to you, in which case you will need quite a formal style; or you may be writing for colleagues or fellow members of a club, in which case the style will be a little less formal – you can address your readers more personally, using contracted verb forms. In both cases the format should be the same. You have to make a persuasive case for action(s) that should be taken, based on factual information.

You studied how to write a proposal in Units 5, 8 and 12.

Exercise 1

Read the writing task below.

- Underline the things you must deal with in your answer.
- Who is going to read the proposal? What would be a suitable style?

You are a member of the Students' Council at the college where you study. The principal of the college wants to make it easier for first year students from other countries to fit into college life and has invited you to send in a proposal with practical suggestions. You have been asked specifically to consider improving the range of social activities on offer and appointing student advisers to help new students.

Write your proposal.

Exercise 2

Read the sample answer.

- Has the writer dealt with all parts of the task?
- Find examples of where the writer has avoided repeating vocabulary from the exam task by rephrasing or using synonyms (e.g. *make it easier* → *facilitating*). Why is this a good approach?
- Underline phrases used to introduce suggestions and recommendations, e.g. *I would suggest ...*

Proposal for integrating new students from other countries

Introduction

The purpose of this proposal is to suggest ways of facilitating overseas students' integration into this college.

Overseas students' problems

There are two difficulties which newly arrived students have. Firstly, they are unfamiliar with the academic system in our country. Secondly, they often find it difficult to integrate on a social level with other students and the general population here.

Social activities

Judging by recent figures, it is clear that social activities organised by the college are not well attended. It has been noted that very few new students from other countries attend, especially in their first year. This may be partly due to poor publicity, but, more seriously, it may be because there is not a wide enough variety of activities attractive to foreign students. I would recommend asking new students themselves for their ideas on the kinds of social activities they would enjoy and I suggest we should invite these students to take part in organising new activities.

Student advisers

It would also be a good idea, in my opinion to instigate a new advisory system. This, more than anything, would overcome students' problems with both the academic system and social aspects of their life at the college. A more experienced adviser or mentor would be responsible for helping new students from other countries to understand our system by giving them guidance and advice, while also introducing them to other students and helping them to make friends.

Conclusion

I suggest that we ask for volunteers to help with all the areas mentioned above.

Where possible, answer using your own vocabulary, not the words used in the exam task. Planning before you write will help with this.

Use the format of a proposal, i.e. a title, sections, headings, an introduction and a conclusion.

Don't spend a long time counting words, but keep within the word limit. If you write too little, you are probably missing important points. If you write too much, you risk being irrelevant.

Reports

When you write a report your reader may be, for example, your manager at work or a teacher, in which case you will need a more formal style; or you may be writing for your colleagues or members of your club, in which case the style will be a little less formal – you can address them more personally, perhaps using contractions). In both cases the format should be the same. You will have to give some factual information and you are often asked to make suggestions or recommendations. You must organise your report carefully and one way of doing this is to divide it into sections with headings.

You studied how to write reports in Units 2, 4 and 10.

Exercise 1

- 1 Read the task below. Underline the parts that tell you what points you must cover in your report and who will read it.
- 2 How formal should this report be?
- 3 When you write about what you like and dislike, do you think you should refer mainly to educational matters, to personal experiences, or to both?

You have been studying in an English-speaking country for some time as part of an educational exchange. The director of the exchange programme is interested in improving the experience for future students. He has asked you to write a report outlining why you have been doing the exchange, describing what you like and dislike about it and making recommendations for how it could be improved.

Write your report.

Exercise 2

- 1 Read the sample report. What things did the writer like and dislike about the programme?
- 2 Find examples of formal style in the sample report.

Pegasus educational exchange programme

Introduction

The purpose of this report is to outline my reasons for doing the exchange, the positive and negative aspects of the experience and to make recommendations for improvements.

Give your report a title. Organise it in sections with section headings.

Reasons for doing the exchange

I have been in New Zealand as part of the Pegasus programme for the last nine months. I participated in the exchange in order to do an MA in Environmental Science at the University of Auckland. At the same time I had the opportunity to improve my English.

Outline the purpose of the report.

Positive and negative aspects

For me, the benefits of doing this exchange far outweigh the disadvantages. The main professional advantage is the opportunity to exchange ideas with teachers and students from another part of the world (I come from Portugal) and with an entirely different outlook on environmental problems. This has allowed me to see such problems from a variety of angles. As a result, I believe that I will return to my country with innovative solutions to local problems. In addition, I have acquired improved language skills and increased cultural awareness.

Avoid just repeating the words used in the task.

The negative aspect from my point of view is that the programme does not receive enough financial support and, as a result, it has been very expensive for me. This is a problem which is likely to discourage prospective exchange students from participating in the programme.

Use vocabulary and collocations appropriate to formal writing.

Recommendations

I strongly recommend that the programme organisers should make interest-free loans available to people wishing to participate in an exchange. This would allow considerable numbers of talented students to benefit from something which they would otherwise be unable to do.

Explain the reasons for recommendations you make and the consequences of problems you mention.

Making suggestions and recommendations

formal	less formal
<p><i>I would suggest + verb + -ing</i> <i>I would suggest including this information on our website.</i></p> <p><i>I suggest that ... + clause</i> <i>I suggest that we ask for volunteers.</i></p> <p><i>should + infinitive without to</i> <i>Its activities should be advertised more widely.</i></p> <p><i>I would recommend + verb + -ing</i> <i>I would recommend canvassing students' ideas.</i></p> <p><i>I recommend that ... + clause</i> <i>I recommend that we start a social club.</i></p> <p><i>It would be a good idea + to infinitive</i> <i>It would be a good idea to instigate a mentoring system.</i></p>	<p><i>Why not + infinitive without to</i> <i>Why not phone one of your friends?</i></p> <p><i>Why don't we/you + infinitive without to</i> <i>Why don't we just send them an email?</i></p> <p><i>How about + verb + -ing</i> <i>How about meeting up after work tomorrow?</i></p> <p><i>Let's + infinitive without to</i> <i>Let's have a party.</i></p> <p><i>It might be a thought + to infinitive</i> <i>It might be a thought to put on some sun cream.</i></p>

Emails and letters

You may be asked to write an email or letter responding to a situation described in the task. You must use a style which is suitable for the person you are writing to, for example the editor of a newspaper or magazine, the director of a company or college. In your email or letter, you may have to include factual information and your own viewpoint in relation to this.

The types of letter you may have to write include

- a letter to the editor of a newspaper or magazine
- a letter of application, or giving a reference for someone applying for a job
- a letter to the directors of an organisation
- an informal letter to a friend.

You studied how to write letters in Units 7 and 13.

Exercise 1

- 1 Read the writing task below, underlining the points you must deal with in your answer.
- 2 Write a paragraph-by-paragraph plan for the letter. When you have finished writing your plan, check that you have included all the points that you have underlined.

The company you work for is planning to move its Australian head office to a new city. Your manager has asked you to write to local estate agents to inquire about suitable premises in the city. Your letter should explain:

- what your company does
- what area of the city the company would like to be located in
- what kind of premises the company is looking for.

Write your letter.

Exercise 2

- 1 Read the sample answer below. Has the writer included all the points you underlined?
- 2 How would you describe the style of the letter?
- 3 Has the writer included anything which is not in the instructions? Why (not)?

Dear Sir/Madam

The managing director of my company, Secure Logistics, has asked me to contact you with a view to finding new business premises. We are currently located in a medium-sized town, but, due to recent growth in our business, we now require larger premises in a more convenient part of the country.

Secure Logistics is an established freight transport company specialising in the movement of valuable goods. We have an expanding fleet of lorries and, for this reason, we need to be located in a secure area on the outskirts of a large city with convenient transport links both to other parts of the country and to the rest of the world. We require a large parking area for our vehicles as well as extensive secure storage facilities for our goods.

In addition to this outside area, the company also needs a large office building for up to eight hundred staff. This will be our new headquarters, so we require large open-plan offices, which will be used as a call centre for customers, and a number of smaller offices for managers.

We would consider moving into an existing facility of the kind I have described, but if suitable premises cannot be found, we would be prepared to purchase an area of currently unused land on which to construct our own buildings.

I hope I have described what the company is looking for in sufficient detail, but if you require further information, please contact me at the above address. I look forward to your reply.

Yours faithfully,

[signature]

Use the first paragraph to state clearly the reason you are writing.

You will need to add substance to the information provided in the writing task by using your own ideas.

Think of a natural way to finish the letter.

Starting and finishing letters

If you know the person's name,

- start with
 - Dear Susana (if you would use their first name when you speak to them)
 - Dear Mrs Emmett (if you don't feel comfortable using their first name).
- finish with:
 - Best wishes, Regards, Kind regards (if you're writing to someone you know fairly well)
 - Love or With love (if you're writing to a close friend or a member of your family)
 - Yours sincerely or Yours (if you're writing to someone you don't know well).

If you don't know the person's name,

- start with Dear Sir, Dear Madam or Dear Sir/Madam
- finish with Yours faithfully.

Adding extra points

formal	informal
Firstly, Secondly, Finally, In addition, Moreover, Furthermore, What is more,	Besides, Also, Another thing (was that ...) Apart from this/ that,

Speaking reference

What to expect in the exam

The Speaking paper is Paper 5.

- It lasts 15 minutes and has four parts.
- You do the Speaking paper in pairs.
- There are two examiners in the room; one gives you instructions and asks you questions, the other listens but does not join in the conversation.

Part 1 (short conversation)

Part 1 lasts two minutes and is a conversation between the examiner and each candidate individually. You will be asked questions about yourself, your family, sports and other leisure activities, your likes and dislikes, your education and where you live. Questions may also be about your past experiences and your future plans.

You studied and practised Part 1 in Units 1 and 11.

How to do Part 1

- 1 Listen to the questions carefully and give clear, direct answers. Where possible, include a few extra details, or a reason for an answer you give.
- 2 Try to relax. Look confidently at the examiner and smile a little when you answer the questions.
- 3 Take the opportunity to show how fluently you can speak.
- 4 Don't prepare answers before you do the exam, but do make sure that you know the vocabulary you will need to talk about the topics that are likely to come up.

Exercise

Here are some typical questions that you may be asked in Part 1 of the Speaking exam. Work through some of the questions with a partner, taking turns to be the examiner and the candidate. Try to use relevant vocabulary from the Useful language column.

Questions	Useful language
Introductory questions Where are you from? What do you do here/there? How long have you been studying English? What do you most enjoy about learning English?	<i>I was born in ...</i> <i>I grew up in/near ...</i> <i>I was brought up in (place) by (people)</i> <i>a small / quite a large / an extended family</i> <i>I've been working/studying at ... since (point in time)</i> <i>for (length of time)</i> <i>Actually, (+ unexpected/surprising information) I've only been learning English for two years.</i> <i>What I really love about (-ing) is ...</i>
Leisure time What are your main interests and leisure time activities? How important are sport and exercise in your life? What types of TV programmes do you think are worth watching? What kinds of music do you enjoy listening to?	<i>I'm fanatical about ...</i> <i>I ... whenever I can / get the chance.</i> <i>quite / not terribly important (to me)</i> <i>I'm really keen on ... / I love ...</i> <i>I never miss ...</i> <i>I can't stand ...</i>
Learning What is your happiest memory of school? What were the most useful things you learned at school? What do you enjoy learning? If you had the opportunity to learn something new, what would you choose?	<i>I can remember (event) very well/clearly.</i> <i>Probably ... / I suppose things like ...</i> <i>I really like (... / -ing).</i> <i>That's an easy / a difficult question to answer.</i> <i>Let me think ...</i>

Future plans What do you hope to be doing this time next year? How might you use your English in the future? Would you consider living abroad permanently?	<i>I hope to be (-ing) at (place). I expect I'll be (-ing) I'd certainly consider (-ing) I'd have to think carefully about ... It's not something I'd rush into. I'm someone who ... I'm (not) the kind of person who ...</i>
Are you someone who likes to plan for the future, or do you prefer to let things happen?	<i>I (tend to) prefer ... (mainly) because ... My main reason is that ... I've always wanted to ... I don't know / can't explain why. I'd recommend/suggest ... Firstly, because ... and secondly, because ... I've never thought about it. I'm not sure. I'd have to think about that.</i>
Travel and holidays What kinds of holiday appeal to you most? Why? Which countries would you most like to visit? Why? Which part(s) of your country would you recommend to tourists? Why? Would you like to work in the travel industry? Why (not)?	<i>I (tend to) prefer ... (mainly) because ... My main reason is that ... I've always wanted to ... I don't know / can't explain why. I'd recommend/suggest ... Firstly, because ... and secondly, because ... I've never thought about it. I'm not sure. I'd have to think about that.</i>
Daily life Which part of the day do you enjoy most? Why? What do you like to do at weekends? What do you do to relax? Do you prefer to follow a routine or do you like to do something different every day?	<i>I'm not very good / I'm best at/in (time of day). I'm a night / early morning person. I try to catch up on (activity); I spend time (-ing). Mainly / Most of the time I ... My problem is I ... I'd always rather (verb) than (verb).</i>

Part 2 (long turn)

Part 2 lasts four minutes altogether.

- The examiner will give you and your partner each a set of three photos to talk about in turn. You choose two of the photos and then speak individually for a minute about them. You have to compare the two photos and answer two questions related to them. The examiner gives you the instructions and asks the questions, which are also printed on the page with the photos.
- After your partner has spoken for a minute, the examiner will ask you to give a brief response to a question about your partner's pictures.

You studied and practised Part 2 in Units 2, 5, 9 and 13.

How to do Part 2

- The photos will always have a common theme, so talk about the general ideas they illustrate. Don't describe them in detail.
- You choose two of the three photos and then compare them with each other. If you are not sure what they show, speculate.
- It is important to answer the questions the examiner asks you. These are printed on the same page as the photos.
- Whenever possible, give reasons or explanations for the answers you give.
- Speak for the whole minute. Don't stop until the examiner says 'Thank you'.
- While your partner is speaking, listen but don't interrupt. The examiner will ask you a question about your partner's photos at the end. You should answer this question in two or three sentences.

Useful language

Comparing (See also Language reference page 171)

Here / In this photo, I can see / someone is / there are ..., whereas in this photo ...
On the other hand, this photo shows ...

Giving reasons/explanations

(See also Language reference page 170)

The (main) reason for this is that ...
I think / I'd say this is because ...
This can be explained quite easily ...

Speculating (See also Language reference page 169)

This person looks as if she's/he's ...
He seems to be ...
Perhaps/Maybe they're ...
They're probably ...
He could be / might be ...

Exercise

Work through the sample question with a partner. Take turns to speak for one minute. You should each compare a different pair of photos.

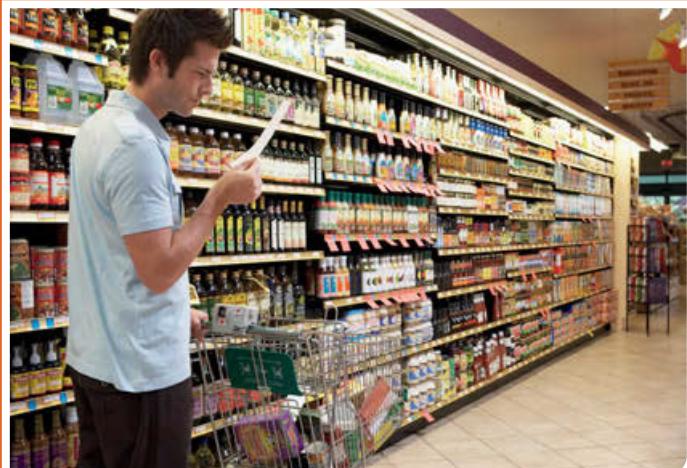
In this part of the test, I'm going to give each of you three pictures. I'd like you to talk about two of them on your own for about a minute, and also to answer a question briefly about your partner's pictures.

(To Candidate A) It's your turn first. Here are your pictures. They show people shopping. I'd like you to compare two of the pictures and say what different methods of shopping they show, and why people might choose one method rather than another.

(After A has spoken for a minute) Thank you.

(To Candidate B) Which picture do you think shows the least stressful method of shopping? Why?

- What different methods of shopping do the photos show?
- Why might people choose one method rather than another?



Part 3 (collaborative task)

Part 3 lasts four minutes altogether and involves a discussion between you and your partner. The key skills being tested are fluency and the ability to participate in and maintain a conversation.

- The examiner gives you a set of written prompts in the form of a question and five related options. You and your partner discuss these together for about two minutes. During your discussion, you will be expected to exchange ideas, express and justify opinions, agree and/or disagree, suggest, speculate and evaluate.
- The examiner then asks you and your partner to reach a decision by negotiation, taking about one minute.

You studied and practised Part 3 in Units 3, 6, 8, and 12.

How to do Part 3

- You are given 15 seconds to read and think about the task before you start. Use this time to read the question and the five options carefully.
- Remember: the most important thing is to have an in-depth discussion, not to cover all the options.
- Keep your focus on the question during your conversation – try not to stray away from the topic.
- If you start the conversation, make sure you don't speak for too long. Give a brief opinion, then ask your partner for their thoughts on the subject.
- When your partner is speaking, listen carefully. React and respond appropriately. This can include nodding and smiling, as well as speaking.
- Try to make what you say sound like normal conversation.
- When you are asked to decide between the options, try not to reach agreement too quickly. If you do, you'll still have to keep the discussion going until the examiner tells you to stop by saying 'Thank you'.

Agreeing and disagreeing

I (completely) agree. Yes, and (another thing) ...

I (totally) disagree. I can't agree (with you there). You've got a point (there), but (the way I see it) ...

Reaching a decision

So, is that agreed? / do we agree on that?

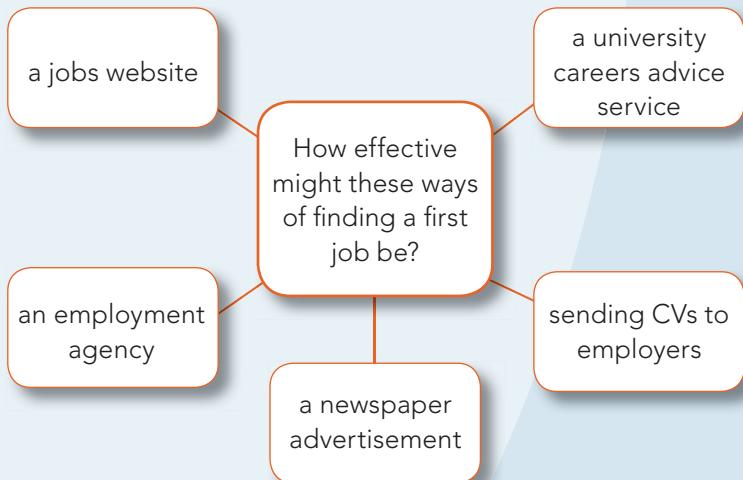
Exercise 1

Work through this sample task with a partner. Make sure you each speak for approximately the same length of time. This should take you two minutes.



Now I'd like you to talk about something together for about two minutes. Here are some different ways of finding a first job and a question for you to discuss. First you have some time to look at the task.

(After 15 seconds) Now talk to each other about how effective these ways of finding a first job might be.



Exercise 2

Now follow the examiner's next instruction.



Now you have about a minute to decide which way of finding a first job is the most effective.



Useful language

Bringing your partner into the conversation

What do you think? Do you have any thoughts on this?
Do you agree (with me)? I'd say ... What about you?

Keeping the discussion moving

Let's move on to ... Shall we go on to next one?
So, how about ...?

Part 4 (discussion)

Part 4 lasts five minutes and is a discussion between you, your partner and the examiner. The examiner will ask you and your partner questions related to the topic you discussed in Part 3. You are expected to express and justify opinions and to agree or disagree.

You studied and practised Part 4 in Units 4, 7, 10 and 14.

How to do Part 4

- 1 Listen carefully to the question. The question itself may be preceded by a statement, which you are then asked to agree or disagree with or to express an opinion about. If you don't understand the statement or the question, you can ask the examiner to repeat it.
- 2 Answer the question with opinions and reasons. Follow the same guidelines as for Part 3 with regard to including your partner in the discussion and keeping the conversation moving.

Exercise

Work through one or more of these typical questions (related to the topic of Part 3) with a partner. Make sure you each speak for approximately the same length of time.

- Some people say that in the future traditional jobs, where you work for an organisation, will disappear and be replaced by short-term jobs, where you deal with a particular task. What's your opinion?
- What are the advantages and disadvantages of working part-time instead of full-time?
- How far do you agree with the idea that people should change jobs and careers at regular intervals throughout their working lives?
- What can be done to protect people's jobs in times of great economic change?
- How has the Internet changed the way people work?
- Many people prefer a well-paid job to an interesting job. What's your view?

Useful language

Introducing your opinion and giving a reason

Well, in my opinion ... because ...
I think/feel ...
I'm not sure. I think ...
From my point of view...
I tend to think ...
I would argue that ...

Presenting other people's arguments

Some people say that ...
It is sometimes/often said that ...
It can be argued that ...
One argument often made is that ...

Presenting the other point of view

Having said that, I believe ...
On the other hand, I would argue that ...
However, I'm not sure I agree. I tend to think that ...

Giving reasons and examples

One reason why ...
For this reason, ...
For example, ...
For instance, ...
such as ...

Answer key

1 Our people

Starting off

- 2 *Usually positive*: competent, conscientious, genuine, imaginative, modest, open-minded, outgoing
Usually negative: insecure, insensitive, naïve, self-centred
Could be either: idealistic, protective, unconventional

Listening | Part 4

2 Suggested answers

- A underwater adventures, out in all weathers
- B out in all weathers
- C complete dedication to his/her craft
- D perform a new trick, complete dedication to his/her craft
- E a few of his/her recordings
- F suffer from stage fright
- G digging at some excavation or other, out in all weathers, the first person to set foot in a place
- H the first person to set foot in a place, out in all weathers, underwater adventures

4 1 B 2 G 3 D 4 A 5 E 6 E 7 F 8 D 9 G 10 A

CD 1 Track 02

Speaker 1

It's funny because I was never really aware of just what an extraordinary woman my Aunt Patty was. I mean, she was always away working so I didn't really see too much of her. When she invited me to come out on one of her trips it was a real eye-opener to see what she was doing. I suppose she was unconventional in that not many women are attracted to that sort of job. She'd be out in all weathers, even in these really mountainous seas, but, you know, she never used to panic – she just got on with the job, whatever the danger. She was totally competent, even when things got really rough. And, do you know, she'd never learnt to swim!

Speaker 2

For my dad nothing was too much trouble, especially when people showed a bit of interest in what he was up to. You know, when he was working he'd be digging away at some excavation or other and members of the public, visitors, would just come up to him and start talking to him and he'd drop whatever he was doing and, you know, even if he'd been working all day, he'd be really conscientious about giving them a complete tour of the site with a free lecture thrown in. Personally, I wouldn't have that sort of patience, but then I guess I take more after my mother, who's always in a rush.

Speaker 3

My brother's a real perfectionist. You know, he's been spending a lot of time recently getting this new show ready and he's been going to incredible lengths to get this new trick right, like he's been practising and practising in front of this video camera he's got for weeks, it seems – it's been driving the rest of us mad! What he does is play it back afterwards, the camera I mean, to check you can't see how it's done from any angle. He just wants to hoodwink absolutely everyone – you know how observant kids are, especially – so he goes on and on till he's totally satisfied.

Speaker 4

Ivan was really one of my dad's mates, but we counted him as one of the family. And he was one of those outgoing types who could speak to anyone and incredibly generous with us kids – always came back with some unusual gift or other from his trips. And then he'd sit down with us and help us do our schoolwork and so on. We loved him and we loved his stories of his underwater adventures and the strange creatures he'd seen. He made it sound as if he'd been doing something extremely dangerous and he'd been incredibly brave. No doubt we were a bit naïve, but we lapped it all up.

Speaker 5

Margo was one of my mother's cousins, actually. Personally, I never got to know her well because she was always travelling here and there – she had so many engagements. I've got a few of her recordings from her younger days, though. The sound quality's not too good now because we've listened to them so many times, and you know, after a time the vinyl gets worn out, but I think her playing really does reflect her optimism and joy. You just wouldn't suspect that she was going blind at the time. What courage in the face of such an affliction, don't you think?

Grammar

Verb forms to talk about the past

1 1 d 2 c 3 a 4 g 5 b 6 b 7 e 8 f

2 1 left 2 has been studying, hasn't gone/been
3 came, started, was making, continued 4 had, had
been working / had worked, hadn't been wearing /
wasn't wearing 5 grew, belonged / had belonged,
have sold

3 1 often used to get 2 never used to bring 3 would
always ask 4 used to be 5 built 6 used to know
7 have come 8 have gradually been changing
9 used to go 10 were 11 would look

4 1 have had 2 were 3 was 4 hadn't organised
5 didn't take 6 have been invited 7 have only been
living, has lived 8 haven't noticed

Reading and Use of English | Part 8

2 a Suggested underlining

1 one / parents / unnecessarily protective
2 changed during / working life 3 parents never
imagined / consequences of something they said
4 discovered / job / in an unlikely place 5 one
parent saw / project / opportunity for both the
parents 6 gain satisfaction / work affects others
7 future promised / surprising experiences
8 upbringing / unusual 9 enthusiastic / nervous
about the job 10 promotion by staying / longer
than other people

b Suggested answers

- 2 I've changed during the time when I've been working.
- 3 They never expected that what they had said would have that result.
- 4 I never thought I'd find the job by looking there.
- 5 He thought it was something they could both take advantage of.
- 6 I feel good about the way my work affects other people.
- 7 My future will be unpredictable and contain unexpected events.
- 8 My childhood wasn't normal.
- 9 I realised with some trepidation that I wanted it very much indeed.
- 10 I was given a better position because all my colleagues left the company.

3 1 C 2 B 3 A 4 D 5 C 6 B 7 D 8 A 9 D 10 A

Vocabulary

Collocations with give and make

1 B

2 1 give make 2 did not show did not give 3 give
make 4 correct 5 made given 6 give make
7 correct 8 made given 9 give make

3 1 give 2 give 3 make 4 give 5 give 6 make
7 make 8 give

Reading and Use of English | Part 4

1 1 B (A contains seven words where the maximum is six; C does not contain the word given.)

2 A (B is not correct English; C does not contain the word given.)

3 C (A does not mean the same; B contains too many words.)

4 B (A is not correct English; C is both incorrect and contains too many words.)

2 1 often used to take me

2 had made an/his apology

3 best she can to look

4 more persuasive than any

5 was never my aim to make/get

6 first time my car has given/caused

Speaking | Part 1

1 a 1, 3, 4 b 2, 5, 6, 7, 8

2 Marta: 2 Lukas: 6

► CD 1 Track 03

Marta: Yes, I was able to give a friend a room once when she had to move out of her house quite quickly. She'd been having problems with one of her flatmates, so she came to stay with us for a while, just for a few months, and I think that helped her quite a lot in her situation, which wasn't easy for her because she was studying at university and it was a long way from her family home.

Lukas: One of the best is from the summer vacations which we always used to spend together as a family at the seaside. I used to do quite a lot of sport with my dad, you know, playing tennis, swimming, that

sort of thing, and I remember one time we went water-skiing, which was a great new experience for me. Yes, that's a very good one, because I loved being close to my dad and doing things with him, you know, things I wouldn't have done with my mum.

3 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 T

► CD 1 Track 04

Examiner: Marta, can you tell me, have you ever had the opportunity to really help a friend?

Marta: Yes, I was able to give a friend a room once when she had to move out of her house quite quickly. She'd been having problems with one of her flatmates, so she came to stay with us for a while, just for a few months, and I think that helped her quite a lot in her situation, which wasn't easy for her because she was studying at university and it was a long way from her family home.

Examiner: Thank you. Lukas, a question for you. What's your happiest childhood memory?

Lukas: One of the best is really from the summer vacations which we always used to spend together as a family at the seaside. I used to do quite a lot of sport with my dad, you know, playing tennis, swimming, that sort of thing, and I remember one time we went water-skiing, which was a great new experience for me. Yes, that's a very good one, because I loved being close to my dad and doing things with him, you know, things I wouldn't have done with my mum.

Writing | Part 1

An essay

1 Suggested underlining

education system does enough to help young people to find jobs / fit / abilities and interests / courses and qualifications / work experience / careers advice / two methods / more effective / giving reasons / own words

- 3 1 F** (You must discuss two methods.)
- 2 T** ('explain which method is more effective')
- 3 F** (It's not obligatory – you can use the opinions if you wish.)
- 4 T** (They're written in an informal style, whereas an essay should be fairly formal.)

- 5 T** ('giving reasons in support of your answer')
- 6 F** (You should ensure that everything you write is relevant to the task.)
- 7 F** (You should write in a formal academic style using complete sentences and structured paragraphs.)
- 8 F** (You should aim to complete the task as stated.)

4 Para 1: d Para 2: c Para 3: a Para 4: e Para 5: b

- 5 1** To make sure you deal with the task as exactly as possible
- 2** You will score higher marks if you write a coherent, structured answer.
- 3** Not exactly – she also included how students can learn necessary skills while working.
- 4** Yes
- 5** While I understand this viewpoint, I do not entirely share it; I believe; I do not think; I would therefore argue that
- 6 Student's own answer**
- 7** An academic essay always requires students to develop and express their opinion. If this is not done, the task has not been completed.
- 6 1** the fact that many young people find it hard to find the sort of job they aspire to
- 2** employers
- 3** students
- 4** students
- 5** the idea that courses are too theoretical and do not teach students the practical skills they will need in the workplace
- 6** this viewpoint
- 7** critical thinking skills
- 8** developing critical thinking skills
- 9** work experience
- 10** students'
- 11** an excellent general education

2 Mastering languages

Starting off

- 1** 1 bilingual 2 switch 3 fashionable loanwords
4 mother tongue 5 a bit rusty 6 pick up
7 an excellent command 8 highly articulate
9 accurately 10 fluency 11 aims

2



CD 1 Track 05

- 1 Where I live people tend to be bilingual – they speak the regional and the national language and they switch between languages with ease. As a result, they seem to find it easier to learn other languages as well. At least I know quite a lot of people who speak several foreign languages.
- 2: People do worry a bit about how the language is changing. I think, due to globalisation I suppose, lots of fashionable loanwords are coming into the language, particularly from English, so my mother tongue's not at all the same as it was, say, fifty years ago. Personally, I don't know if that's a bad thing – I mean, if people find it easier to express themselves using loanwords, then perhaps they should.
- 3 I find it frustrating because I spent years trying to reach an advanced level but now my English has got a bit rusty because I don't use it very often and that's a pity.
- 4 I spent years at school studying Spanish and never learnt to speak it well. I guess I should have been sent on an exchange to a Spanish or a Mexican school for six months or thereabouts 'cause everyone knows that living in the country, you just pick up the language naturally and that's just about the best way to learn it.
- 5 I'm really dedicated to studying languages. I aim to achieve an excellent command of English, which means becoming highly articulate and being able to use the language accurately and effortlessly.
- 6 Language is a tool for achieving other things and, frankly, I wouldn't consider accuracy to be as important as fluency when learning a foreign language. I think the main thing is to make oneself understood.

7 We live in a highly competitive world. Countries compete with each other, employers compete with each other and people compete. Consequently, we should be teaching young people to use language for persuasion rather than self-expression. It's all very well being able to say what you think and feel, but you've got to be able to sell yourself, sell your product, achieve your aims.

Listening | Part 1

- 2** 1C 2B 3A 4A 5C 6B



CD 1 Track 06

Extract One

Woman: I find not knowing the local language is the most frustrating thing when travelling, but you made a conscious decision to learn it when you were in Mongolia, didn't you?

Man: Not so much conscious. I sort of picked it up after I arrived and I found it really helped me settle into the area and talk to folk there. Otherwise I'd have had to use an interpreter, which I certainly couldn't afford.

Woman: How long were you there?

Man: Oh, nearly a year and it was great really being able to get some understanding of people's real interests and concerns.

Woman: And now you speak the language fluently?

Man: Well, I reckon I can more or less hold my own in a conversation.

Woman: So do you think the key to good language learning is to be naturally gifted?

Man: It certainly helps, and it's not a gift we all have. I'm fairly outgoing and uninhibited and that helps too. I mean, you won't get very far if you're scared of making a fool of yourself. What's essential, though, is application – you know, just getting stuck into it and making the effort.

Woman: Well, that's the key to learning almost anything. I mean, you don't learn other things like maths or tennis just by being uninhibited!

Extract Two

Rajiv: I came across something in a magazine recently that mentioned that spelling reform would cut the space writing takes up by about fifteen percent.

Imagine: newspapers, libraries and bookshops with fifteen percent more room! And then I remembered

the trauma of learning spelling at primary school – you know, doing those dictations where we had to put a double 'p' in *approve* and spelling *right* with 'ght'. It's frankly absurd and I'd support the idea of simplified spelling just to save kids that.

Susan: But it's part of the character and beauty of the language. Not everything has to be reduced to something functional.

Rajiv: Maybe not, but as a language teacher it'd make my life a lot easier because my students would immediately know how to say new words correctly, so I wouldn't have to spend so much time teaching pronunciation.

Susan: You hope! But think of the downside of reprinting every book and replacing every road sign. What a cost! I think you're being unrealistic, quite honestly. Mind you, I've heard a lot about how long it takes some English kids to learn to read and apparently our spelling system's a major factor there ...

Rajiv: If you can call it a system.

Susan: So you might have something there.

Extract Three

Woman: You know, the problem for overseas candidates at job interviews is that the candidates often lack the sort of cultural background that would stand them in good stead in these situations, so while their English is up to scratch, their responses take the interviewer by surprise. They get a question like 'What do you most enjoy about your present job?', where the interviewer is expecting something about the challenge or working with friendly colleagues or such like, and the interviewee is completely thrown. Perhaps in their culture they don't equate work with pleasure at all so they talk about the status the job gives them, or the money. This is often combined with sort of closed facial expressions, so the interviewer finds the response difficult to interpret.

Man: You're right and I think the evidence shows that for many jobs a better approach might be to set up a job simulation to see whether the candidate has the requisite skills and attitude.

Woman: Exactly, and although interviews will always be necessary, interviewers need to be trained not to read too much into people's answers, but to give people practical opportunities to demonstrate their usefulness.

Man: Though getting the questions right and learning to interpret the responses more accurately would also be useful training for many interviewers, I think.

Vocabulary

Collocations with *make*, *get* and *do*

- 1** 1 made 2 to make / making 3 doing 4 make
5 Getting

2 *make*: a decision, a mistake, an effort, a point, a proposal, a suggestion, an apology, complaints, changes, friends, the right choice, use of something, an improvement

get: a qualification, exercise, further information, one's money back

do: a course, activities, business, exercise, harm, one's best, some shopping, sport, household chores, the cooking

- 3** 1 **make** do 2 **receive** get 3 **turn** make 4 **make** do
5 achieve do 6 given made 7 make do
8 practising doing

Reading and Use of English | Part 3

1 Suggested answers

care: carer, caring, uncaring, careful, carefully, careless, carelessly, carefree

critic: criticise, criticism, critical, critically, uncritical, uncritically

child: children, childhood, childlike, childish, childishly, childishness, childless

break: broken, unbroken, breakable, unbreakable, unbreakably, outbreak, breakdown

occasion: occasional, occasionally

force: forceful, forcefully, forcible, forcibly, enforce, reinforce, reinforcement

deep: deepen, depth, deeply, deepening

fragile: fragility

friend: friendly, friendliness, unfriendly, unfriendliness, friendship, befriend, friendless

repair: repairable, irreparable, irreparably

- 2** 1 -ise, -en 2 -ion, -ment, -hood, -ity, -ship 3 -less, -able, -ly, -ful 4 -ally, -ly

3 Suggested answers

Verbs: -ify (intense – intensify)

Nouns: -age (bag – baggage), -al (arrive – arrival), -ant (participate – participant), -ance/-ence (interfere – interference), -dom (free – freedom), -ee (employ – employee), -er/-or (instruct – instructor), -ism (liberal – liberalism), -ist (motor – motorist)

Adjectives: -al (logic – logical), -ial (face – facial), -ed (embarrass – embarrassed), -en (wood – wooden), -ese (Japan – Japanese), -ic (base – basic), -ing (embarrass – embarrassing), -ish (child – childish), -ive (act – active), -ian (Mars – Martian), -like (business – businesslike), -ous (mountain – mountainous), -y (snow – snowy)

Adverbs: -wards (back – backwards), -wise (clock – anticlockwise)

4 Corrections: happening, development, reference, really, beautifully, truthful, dissatisfied, irregularity, undeniable, usable, refusing, basically, argument

5 1 advertisement 2 beginning 3 successful
4 government 5 environment 6 really

7 1 They investigate thousands of possible names, they run competitions amongst their employees, they check possible names for legal problems.
2 The names are not legally available in all countries.

8 1 universally 2 savings 3 reality 4 innovation
5 acceptable 6 unsuccessfully 7 competition
8 submissions

Reading and Use of English | Part 6

2 Suggested answers

- 1 Fewer people speak them as they have access to languages which promise education, success and a better life.
- 2 educating children bilingually
- 3 National languages unite and create wealth while regional languages divide.
- 4 that it's better to allow languages to die naturally by neglecting them
- 5 They lack resources to develop their language skills, so have to rely on translators, which has a negative effect on the quality of their research.
- 6 They contain a unique body of knowledge and culture.

7 when children stop learning it

8 We do not know what will be lost with the loss of a language; diversity is important.

3 Text A: 1 languages which dominate communications and business 2 their children's shift away from the language of their ancestors towards languages which promise education, etc. 3 the promotion of bilingualism

Text B: 4 young people 5 the fact that people speaking regional languages have limited prospects 6 the local language

Text C: 7 PhD students 8 lacking the resources to develop their language skills and therefore relying on interpreters and translators 9 PhD students 10 minority languages serve no useful purpose and should be allowed to die a natural death

11 language extinction and species extinction

Text D: 12 a language 13 the language 14 the disappearance of a language 15 people who don't speak the language 16 When an animal or plant becomes extinct, we seldom realise how its existence might have benefited us.

4 1 A B: 'national languages ... help to create wealth' – A: major languages 'promise ... the chance of a better life ... the opportunity to achieve the sort of prosperity they see on television'. (C and D do not discuss the economic significance of major languages.)

2 B A, C and D suggest that there is an inherent value in the existence of minority languages and put forward reasons for preserving them. However, B does not see any need to preserve them.

3 A B, C and D see the disappearance of these languages as inevitable. However, A believes that there is reason to hope that 'many endangered languages will survive' (due to bilingual language teaching).

4 D C: 'language extinction and species extinction are different facets of the same process ... part of an impending global catastrophe' – D: 'language diversity is as necessary as biological diversity ... When an animal or plant becomes extinct, we seldom realise how its existence might have benefited us. The same is true for many small languages.'

Speaking | Part 2

1 Compare two of the photos, say what the speakers might be explaining, say what problems the speakers might have.

2 Suggested answers

photo 1: boost morale, decide on / discuss / explain tactics, encourage the team, influence the outcome,

photo 2: give a demonstration, take people through the steps

photo 3: argue a case, defend a client, influence the outcome, persuade the judge/jury, reach a verdict

3 **1** explain tactics, boost morale, argue a case, defend a client, persuade the jury, reach a verdict **2** He also mentions similarities. **3** Yes

CD 1 Track 07

Examiner: In this part of the test I'm going to give each of you three pictures. I'd like you to talk about two of them on your own for about a minute, and also to answer a question briefly about your partner's pictures. Here are your pictures. They show people explaining things. I'd like you to compare two of the pictures and say what the speakers might be explaining and what problems the speakers might have.

Ivan: OK. In this photo there's a team coach who looks as if he's explaining tactics to a team of teenage boys, perhaps at half time. The boys give the impression that they're a bit tired or perhaps disheartened, judging by the expressions on their faces, so perhaps he's trying to boost their morale. In the other photo there's a lawyer, a barrister I think they're called, who seems to be arguing a case to the court. She appears to be defending her client and trying to persuade the jury that he's innocent. In both photos, I imagine the explanation is vital: the coach wants his team to go back on the pitch and win the match while the barrister wants to win her case by persuading the jury to reach a verdict of not guilty. I think both speakers have very similar problems because their success depends entirely on the words they use, although the outcome is something they have no direct control over.

Examiner: Thank you.

4 From the recording script: **1** he's explaining tactics. **2** they're a bit tired or perhaps disheartened ... the expressions on their faces. **3** to be arguing a case. **4** to be defending her client. **5** his team to go back on the pitch and win the match ... to win her case. **6** the explanation is vital.

6 **1 Suggested answer:** Choose the two you find easiest – the photos are not graded to be easier or more difficult; the examiners will assess you on the quality of your speaking. **2** No, also the adults.

7 Suggested answers

1 cheer someone up, give encouragement, put a brave face on things

2 bond with each other, spend quality time together, teach someone basic skills

3 bond with each other, look through an album, remember good times, share family history, spend quality time together

Grammar

Expressing reason, purpose and result

1 **1 c 2 g 3 f 4 h 5 b 6 a 7 e 8 d**

2 **1 a 1, 2, 4, 6 b 5, 7, 8 c 3**

2 **a** so as to, to **b** with the intention of, due to **c** so, with the result that, in case, otherwise

3 **1 because 2 For 3 because of 4 so that 5 in order not to**

Writing | Part 2

A report

1 **1 people in an international media company 2 formal 3 how popular, why, the effect on local culture, recommended changes 4 Suggested answer: probably the same order as in the question**

2 **1 The aim 2 accounted for 3 means 4 the result 5 meant 6 As a consequence 7 resulted 8 due to 9 so as 10 the effect**

3 **1 It has a title and sections with section headings. 2 Yes 3 Yes**

4 **1 the languages people learn / who learns them and where / recommendations for improving language learning 2 people at an educational publishing company 3 formal**

Vocabulary and grammar review |

Unit 1

1 1 gave 2 making 3 give 4 made, giving 5 give
6 gave 7 give 8 making

2 1 found the advice (that) Gustavo gave 2 should be given the opportunity/chance 3 had never been/gone skiing before/until/till 4 Paola gave made a favourable impression 5 has changed in/over the last/past 6 give you a refund / refund your money unless

3 1 had stopped 2 We'd been standing, were feeling 3 I've driven 4 she's been studying 5 had been eating 6 used to work 7 had been coming, were repairing 8 went

Vocabulary and grammar review |

Unit 2

1 1 universal 2 explosion 3 variety 4 characteristics
5 influential 6 enrich 7 tendency 8 changeable

2 1 accurately 2 articulate 3 command 4 fluency
5 pick up 6 mother tongue 7 bilingual

3 1 get 2 making 3 doing 4 made 5 make 6 do

4 1 with the intention of 2 so as 3 in case
4 otherwise 5 due to 6 so that

3 All in the mind

Listening | Part 2

3 Face-blindness

CD 1 Track 08

Presenter: This week's *All in the Mind* examines an unusual condition you may never have heard of before: prosopagnosia. Here's Professor Alexander Scharma to explain.

Professor: Hello. Well, let's start with an image some of you may be familiar with: a painting called *The Son of Man*, by the surrealist artist René Magritte. In the picture, an apple floats in front of a man's face, covering the features that would normally allow him to be recognised. The painting perfectly illustrates the concept of prosopagnosia, or face-blindness.

4 1 F (He compares face-blindness to tone-deafness: that is, the inability to distinguish between different musical notes.) 2 T 3 F (They could not distinguish between the faces, but they could distinguish between the pictures of other things.)

CD 1 Track 09

Presenter: This week's *All in the Mind* examines an unusual condition you may never have heard of before: prosopagnosia. Here's Professor Alexander Scharma to explain.

Professor: Hello. Well, let's start with an image some of you may be familiar with: a painting called *The Son of Man*, by the surrealist artist René Magritte. In the picture, an apple floats in front of a man's face, covering the features that would normally allow him to be recognised. The painting perfectly illustrates the concept of prosopagnosia, or face-blindness. To people with this condition, as soon as someone leaves their sight the memory of that person's face is blank – or, at best, a set of jumbled features. Face-blindness is a little like tone-deafness: the tone can be heard, or the face seen, but distinguishing between different tones or faces is nearly impossible. The effects of prosopagnosia can be so bad that people severely affected can't recognise their own parents or children. If we understood how the normal brain recalls faces, we'd be well on the way to understanding this strange disorder. It might also help us to understand human evolution, since the ability to recognise faces is more or less equal to the ability to recognise individuals. This ability helps to hold society together and has enabled human beings to develop a complex culture which is unique in the animal kingdom.

The question scientists need to answer is whether this basic ability has its own private brain mechanism, or whether it's simply one aspect of a general ability to recognise individual members of a particular class of objects. Researchers have used face-blind volunteers to explore this question. The subjects were shown images of cars, tools, guns, houses and landscapes, and also black-and-white pictures of faces with no hair on their heads. Ten of these images were repeated. The subjects were asked to indicate, as quickly as possible, whether each image they saw was new or repeated. The results were surprising. None of the face-blind subjects could recognise the faces in the series well, but they could distinguish between the other repeated pictures as easily as people without prosopagnosia could. That confirms the idea that faces are handled differently by the brain from other objects. It's been shown in experiments that people with face-blindness

can be taught to improve their face recognition skills, but it's still not known what prosopagnosia sufferers are missing when they recall a blur instead of a face.

This is not to say that prosopagnosia has no advantages. As one person with the condition writes on her website, 'You can wake up in the morning and pretend you don't know your own kids. Then you don't have to give them any pocket money.'

- 6** **1** perfectly illustrates **2** leaves **3** severely affected
4 human evolution **5** private brain mechanism
6 face-blind volunteers **7** other objects **8** face recognition skills

Vocabulary

Nouns which can be countable or uncountable

- 1** **1** sight: UC (= the general ability to see)
 memory: C (= something that is remembered)
2 ability: C (= a certain thing that people can do)
 society: UC (= society as a whole, not a particular community)
 culture: C (= a certain set of customs, beliefs and values)

2 Examples

- 1** The Eiffel Tower in Paris is one of the most famous *sights* in the world. (C)
 After the accident he suffered loss of *memory*. (UC)
2 My brother has great linguistic *ability*. (UC)
 Sociologists believe we can learn a lot from primitive *societies*. (C)
 You won't find much *culture* in this sleepy little town. (UC)

3 Examples

- My favourite subject at school was *art*. (= art as a subject, UC)
 I'm applying for a job at the local *arts* centre.
 (= individual forms of art, e.g. painting, sculpture, music, etc., C)
 He has no interest in the world of *business*.
 (= the activity of buying and selling goods, UC)
 I'd like to run an internet *business*. (= a single organisation or company, C)

I love grilled *chicken*. (= meat from a chicken, UC)
 We get eggs from our own *chickens*. (= animals, C)

Starvation and *disease* have killed thousands of refugees. (= illness in general, UC)

Flu can be a serious *disease*. (= a specific illness, C)
Exercise is good for you. (= physical activity in general, UC)

I do stomach *exercises* every day. (=individual activities, C)

Children usually develop *speech* in the second year of life. (= the ability to speak, UC)

I gave a *speech* at my sister's wedding. (= a talk, C)

Grammar

no, none, not

- 1** **1** no **2** None **3** not, no

- 2** **1** not no **2** no not **3** no any **4** correct **5** nothing anything (or I know nothing) **6** none no

Grammar

The passive

- 1** Passive verbs are formed by using the appropriate tense of the verb *be* and adding the past participle of the main verb.

- 2** **a** were asked **b** are handled **c** has been shown, can be taught

- 3** **1** b ('by the brain')
2 **a** researchers **c** researchers, psychologists
3 The identity of the researchers is not important or may not be known. The writer wants to focus attention on the action rather than who did it.
4 in an essay, a scientific report, a job application

- 4** **1** This YouTube clip has been watched by over a million people.
2 The film was made over twenty years ago.
3 At the time nothing like it had been seen.
4 Apparently, a new version of the film is being made at the moment.
5 It is going to be released next year.

- 6** A new study on Albert Einstein **(1) has been completed** and **(2) will be published** next month in a journal on neurology. The study suggests that Einstein's extraordinary genius **(3) may have been influenced by** a uniquely shaped brain. When anthropologist Dean Falk and her team made a comparison with 85 'normal' human brains, **(4) it was found** that Einstein's brain possessed some remarkable features.

The researchers were using 14 photos of the genius's brain which **(5) had only recently been rediscovered**. With permission from his family, Einstein's brain **(6) was removed and photographed** (by scientists) after his death in 1955. The photographs **(7) are held by** the National Museum of Health and Medicine but **(8) (they) had never been fully investigated before**.

Reading and Use of English | Part 5

3 1 C 2 A 3 C 4 D 5 C 6 B

Vocabulary

Formal or informal?

- 1** *Formal*: 3 We will, the fog has (full, uncontracted verb forms); 4 contemplated residing, neighbourhood (formal vocabulary – longer words); 6 with whom (preposition placed before relative pronoun in relative clause); 7 is believed (passive construction)

Informal: 1 They've, they're (contracted verb forms); 2 What on earth are you doing? (colloquial language); 5 put up with (phrasal verb – more colloquial); 8 Grub's up (slang); 9 the girl I go to school with (omission of relative pronoun and preposition at the end of the sentence)

2 Suggested answers

- 1 They have telephoned to say / inform us that they are coming tomorrow.
- 2 Could you please tell me what you are doing?
- 3 We'll be leaving as soon as the fog's gone.
- 4 We've never thought about living anywhere else.
- 5 I cannot tolerate this situation for much longer.
- 6 'Community' means anyone or any organisation we mix with.
- 7 They think it was a teenager who started the fire.
- 8 The food/meal is ready. Come and eat.
- 9 That is the girl with whom I go to school.

3 Suggested answers

Formal: instant communication, charting a new course, it need not be, increasingly, exert, discrimination, did not have to, human–computer interaction, determines, skills, values and limits are instilled, educationalists, do not pay attention, parameters are increasingly set, peer groups, has been built collective knowledge, contributors, shape their interests

Informal: The other day, I'd, have it on me, I don't know where I'd be without it, That's, zip, she's, It's non-stop, glued to computer screens, end up as zombies, full of junk, fighting a losing battle

Serious and authoritative factual information tends to be expressed in formal language. But the writer wants to engage and interest ordinary readers, so less formal, more colloquial language is also used to lighten the text and to convey personal impressions. When Emily is quoted directly, we get the very informal language of her colloquial speech.

Reading and Use of English | Part 2

- 1 2** The article concludes that heredity plays a part in forming our personalities, but it is not known to what extent.
- 2 1 by 2 an 3 is 4 other 5 which 6 are 7 is/has 8 It**
- 3 1 their 2 at 3 little 4 like 5 when 6 me 7 with 8 an**

Speaking | Part 3

2

► CD 1 Track 10

Woman 1: I have to admit it's only recently that I started getting stressed about things – I think it coincides with when I started my new job.

Woman 2: Really? So what makes you feel stressed?

Woman 1: Oh, all kinds of things. Obviously having too much to do, you know, not having enough time to do everything they want me to do. Then I start thinking: my manager's got it in for me – or that she doesn't like me and is making my life difficult deliberately. Do you know what I mean?

Woman 2: Yes, I know exactly what you mean. You start by blaming someone else and then you decide it's your fault – that you're inadequate. That's when the stress starts.

Woman 1: Exactly! Then because you're working so hard and thinking about work even when you're not there, it starts to affect other parts of your life. I lost my temper with my boyfriend last week – for no real reason – just because I'd had a hard day at work. I apologised afterwards of course, but I could tell he was quite upset. That's one of the worst effects of stress, isn't it?

Woman 2: Yes, it is. Other people are affected if you're stressed, often people you care about. But you know, you're lucky – at least you have a job. I've been really stressed recently because I can't find a job. And I'm running out of money.

Woman 1: What will you do?

Woman 2: I don't know. I could borrow some from my parents, but I'd prefer not to. And if I tell them I'm short of money, they'll start to worry and I don't want them worrying because of me. That'll make everything worse and I'll get even more stressed. It's a vicious circle. So what do you do if you're feeling stressed?

Woman 1: Well, I thought about going to the doctor and asking for some pills, but then I thought: 'There must be better ways of dealing with it than drugs.' So if I'm feeling particularly stressed after a day at work, I do one of two things: either I phone a friend and suggest we go out for the evening, or I go to the gym. What about you?

Woman 2: I find talking about my problems is quite helpful. You often find there are lots of people in the same situation or even a worse situation than you – that helps me get things into perspective. And I always try to find reasons to be optimistic. For example, I've got two interviews next week and I'm determined to get one of the jobs. That'll make things easier for me. And I spend time with friends and I try relaxation techniques. Have you tried that?

Woman 1: No, but perhaps I will.

3 1 mean 2 isn't it 3 do you do 4 about 5 tried

Writing | Part 1

An essay

2 Suggested answers

1 established channels of communication between colleagues and between employees and their managers. Regular meetings might be a part of this.

2 having enough time for work and enough to have a personal/social life; a balance between what you have to do and what you like to do

3 to feel that you are important as a person and that people recognise your worth

3 Suggested answers

1 a Yes **b** Yes **c** Not entirely. When making use of the second opinion given in the task ('The happier the employees ...'), the writer has used almost the same words; also it would be better to find alternative ways of expressing 'happy and motivated'.

2 Generally yes, but there is some inappropriate informality: I'll (I will), I've (I have)

3 Yes

4 Suggested answers

1 Para 2: One of the methods employers could use to ensure employees are happy and motivated

Para 3: The second method employers could use

Para 4: Conclusion: the writer's opinion

2 Paragraph 1 shows the writer's general grasp of the topic. Paragraphs 2 and 3 discuss two of the methods listed in the task. Paragraph 2 takes up the opinion about communication but expresses it in a different way. Paragraph 2 also makes it clear which method the writer thinks is the more important and this is restated in a different way in the concluding paragraph.

3 Opinions are expressed in all four paragraphs.

6 Suggested answers

Para 1: 5 and 9 **Para 2:** 1 and 4 **Para 3:** 6 and 10

Para 4: 2 and 8

3 and 7 are not appropriate, as they are too informal and personal.

4 Just the job!

Reading and Use of English | Part 1

2 ideas 1 and 4

3 1 A 2 D 3 C 4 B 5 D 6 A 7 B 8 C

Reading and Use of English | Part 8

2 *Suggested answer:* Graduates should have lots of opportunities to be successful, but in fact for them the future is frightening.

3 *Suggested underlining*

- 1** advise / continue job-hunting while already working
- 2** why / accept / certain type of employment opportunity
- 3** suggestion / job hunting / unsuccessful
- 4** variety of ways of obtaining employment
- 5** how / create a good impression
- 6** need to maintain relationships
- 7** recommend / way of thinking positively
- 8** why / some jobs / fewer applicants
- 9** some information / difficult to hide
- 10** employment opportunity / disapproves

4 1 C 2 C 3 B 4 B 5 A 6 D 7 D 8 B 9 A 10 C

Vocabulary

Dependent prepositions

1 of **2** from, of **3** for, for **4** for **5** to **6** on **7** with

Adjective–noun collocations (1)

1 1 major **2** long, wide

2 1 wide **2** extreme **3** big **4** high **5** big **6** high
7 big **8** strong **9** high **10** strong

Listening | Part 2

2 *Suggested answers*

- 2** a person or group of people **3** an item sold in a store (not food) **4** an area of activity **5** types of people who might be members **6** something connected with decisions – interest/influence? **7** something special that present-day co-operatives have **8** a harmful product

- 3** 1 industrial revolution **2** textile workers
- 3** candles **4** wind farms **5** residents **6** equal say
- 7** ethical code **8** fossil fuel(s)

► CD 1 Track 11

Hi, well, as you know, I've been doing a project on co-operatives, their history and what they're like today. Erm, although farmers and people have always worked together from prehistory onwards, what we know today as co-operatives really got going during the industrial revolution. They were frequently started by workers in situations where perhaps their companies were exploiting them or mistreating them in some way and they were seen as a way of providing protection for employees.

The first one to really last and make a go of things was set up in a town in the north of England, Rochdale, about a hundred and seventy years ago. The local textile workers had gone on strike, but then their employer, who ran the local shop, the company shop, retaliated by refusing to sell them food. Rather than starve, they started a co-operative food store whose purpose was to provide basic foodstuffs just so people could survive. The employer in question then went a step further by refusing to sell gas to the striking employees, so because they had no light, the co-operative started selling candles as well, even though that hadn't been part of their original plan.

Well, from those conflictive origins, the movement was born and there are still co-operatives around today, ones which have been around for more than a hundred years running whole groups of shops in a region or over the whole country or offering banking and insurance. There are also ones which have been started very recently and are involved in all sorts of new technologies such as wind farms or designing internet sites and the like.

So what is a co-operative, exactly? Well, they're regulated by law and are run as competitive businesses – they of course have to compete with conventional commercial businesses, the difference being that instead of having shareholders they have members and these people can be almost anyone. They may be residents in the case of a housing co-operative or customers, perhaps if it's a chain of stores, as well as members of staff, anyone really who might benefit from the existence of the co-operative.

Any money the co-operative makes can be shared out between members if they so wish, because when it comes to determining what the co-operative should do in any given situation, everyone has an equal say.

So, what makes them different from commercial businesses? Well, for many people the strong attraction which sets them apart and is really boosting their popularity at the moment is that they follow a tough

ethical code. Co-operatives believe they should go about things in a different way from conventional companies and this means that, for example, a financial co-operative like the Co-operative Bank, won't put money into a company whose activities it disapproves of, you know, a company involved in selling weapons to dodgy regimes or one which might be contributing to global warming by being a fossil fuel producer. That sort of thing.

All in all, the co-operative movement offers an alternative to people who are disenchanted with conventional business models and a way forward for people who want to bring real change to the world. Thank you.

4 1 i 2 e 3 h 4 d 5 c 6 a 7 g 8 b 9 f

Grammar

Expressing possibility, probability and certainty

1 1 a 2 b 3 a

3 1 probably likely 2 you bound you are bound 3 most more 4 possible possible 5 one of the possibly best possibly one of the best 6 the worst trip I probably have probably the worst trip I have 7 That may be the possible reason That may possibly be the reason

4 1 was bound to be 2 likelihood of Boris winning / that Boris will win 3 may/could/might well have seen 4 must have forgotten to 5 is (quite/very) likely to lose 6 there any chance of (you) helping / you could help

Speaking | Part 4

3 a 3, 4 b 1, 2, 5, 6

5 Suggested answers

- 1 a reasonable/heavy/light workload, a work environment, a workplace
- 2 achieve a good work-life balance, commute, a feeling of isolation, a work environment
- 3 feel valued
- 4 feel valued
- 5 a job vacancy, recruit, take somebody on, a trainee
- 6 give praise, a good communicator, motivate/motivation

6 1 commute, workplace, motivation, feel valued, a good communicator, a reasonable workload, give praise

CD 1 Track 12

Examiner: Daniel, many people dream of being able to work from home. What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of working from home?

Daniel: Well, let me think, yes, I think I'd say that for most people there are a number of positive features. The most important one, perhaps, is that you don't waste time commuting, which can be quite stressful, especially if your train is late or you can't find a parking space, and that you work in your own time and at your own pace. Also, you don't have to dress smartly to go to work, which for me would be a definite plus. On the down side it might be quite difficult to, how do you say it, to disconnect from your job, because your office is at home, so you're always checking your emails. Although I think that's a problem people have even if they work in an office – their email follows them everywhere.

Examiner: Laura, do you agree with Daniel?

Laura: Yes, although for people with small children, the biggest advantage is that they can combine working life with family life. I mean they don't have to give up work when they start a family.

Examiner: Laura, which do you think is more important in a job: friendly colleagues or a good salary?

Laura: Oh, I think both are essential. Unless there's a good atmosphere in the workplace, people soon lose motivation or lose interest and this affects the quality of their work. Also, employees need to feel valued and in the end this comes down to how much they are paid. If they're not well paid for the job they do, they'll feel that their work is not respected.

Examiner: And Daniel. What do you think?

Daniel: Well, I'm not sure, because I think for me the most important thing is to feel that you're doing something useful, achieving something worthwhile in your job. If people have that impression, then they're not so worried about their pay and they can get their social life in their free time. I'd say it's more important to be efficient than friendly.

Examiner: Daniel, many people complain about their managers. What qualities would you look for in a perfect manager, and why?

Daniel: I think he or she has to be a good communicator, who tells you what's going on, and is also pleasant to work with. He or she should be someone who gives

you a reasonable workload and provides you with the support you need to do your job well and also someone who recognises when you're working hard and gives you praise when you deserve it.

Laura: Oh, I wish my boss was like that!

7 1 T 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T

Writing | Part 2

A report

1 Suggested underlining

money available / improvements to the work environment / office / more productive / report for your manager / outline problems / summarise improvements / you and your colleagues / recommend two changes

1 to make it more productive **2** your manager

5 **1** outline **2** the deficiencies in **3** make recommendations **4** a number of **5** antiquated **6** hold telephone conversations **7** concentrate on **8** distracted **9** long hours **10** consulted **11** reduce **12** necessary work discussions **13** As a first measure, I would recommend **14** have a direct effect on productivity **15** absence due to sick leave **16** enabling staff

6 **1** A suitable style reflects the subject matter, the status of the reader and possibly the reader's relationship with the writer. A serious subject like improving working conditions, written for a manager, requires a formal style.

2 The improvements will reduce tiredness, improve morale, enable staff to work more productively, reduce sick leave absence, enable staff to work more efficiently.

8 Suggested underlining

international hotel chain / work experience / training manager / report / describe tasks and activities / explain problems / recommendations for two improvements

Vocabulary and grammar review |

Unit 3

- 1** **1** relationships **2** communication(s) **3** rarely **4** neighbourhood **5** increasingly **6** arguments **7** violence **8** disagreements

- 2** **1** not no **2** no not / no my sister my sister doesn't **3** none any / didn't get none got none **4** correct **5** no none **6** correct (*None of Patrick's friends* is also possible.) **7** no not **8** none no

3 Suggested answers

- The term 'amnesia' is used to refer to a partial or complete loss of memory ... Amnesia can be caused by specific medical conditions.
- It is very well known that our memory is formed by our real experiences. But could a false memory be put into our heads? Could we be persuaded (to believe) that we had experienced something that never actually took place?
- Our semantic memory is used to store our knowledge of the world ... The meanings of words and the names of people and places are included in our semantic memory.
- ... It can be thought of as the ability to remember and use a limited amount of information for a short amount of time ... If you are distracted, the information can be lost and the task has to be started again.

Vocabulary and grammar review |

Unit 4

- 1** **1** B **2** A **3** D **4** D **5** C **6** C **7** B **8** D

- 2** **1** extensive/huge/specialist/vast **2** huge/powerful **3** constant/huge **4** excellent **5** fierce **6** huge/vast **7** extensive/specialist/vast **8** excellent/specialist

- 3** **1** could **2** might not **3** couldn't have **4** possible **5** highly **6** can't **7** bound

5 Dramatic events

Listening | Part 1

1 1 i 2 g 3 d 4 b 5 h 6 e 7 c 8 a 9 j 10 f

3 Suggested answers

- 1 He has been to the gym. He has had an accident, probably to do with running and/or a machine. It might have been his own / the gym company's fault.
- 2 He had some kind of accident while driving – he was hit by a stone. Perhaps the man had been driving dangerously / a crime had been committed / someone was injured.
- 3 Perhaps her home has been hit by some disaster (fire/flood/gale/explosion, etc.). It may be very badly damaged.

4 1 C 2 B 3 C 4 A 5 C 6 A

CD 1 Track 13

Extract One

Jasmine: Are you all right now?

Harry: Hmm, so so – it comes and goes. I'm still having occasional flashbacks.

Jasmine: What happened, exactly?

Harry: Well, I was doing my normal workout on the treadmill. I started with a gentle jog for ten minutes or so, then I decided to run fast for ten minutes. So I pressed the increase button.

Jasmine: So then what happened?

Harry: Well, nothing for a few seconds, but then the belt suddenly speeded up. I tried to slow it down, but nothing happened. When I tried pressing the slow-down button, it was as if I was putting my foot on a car accelerator.

Jasmine: That must have been terrifying! I've never trusted those control buttons. That's why I stopped going to the gym. Anyway, sorry. Go on. What did you do?

Harry: I looked round for help – I thought maybe someone could switch the electricity off. It would have been a very sudden jolt, but better than not stopping at all. In the end, all I could do was jump off and keep my fingers crossed.

Jasmine: And that's how you broke your leg? Are you going to do anything about it?

Harry: I'm not sure yet. I'm considering taking the company that runs the gym to court – that's what my solicitor suggests, but I'm in two minds about it.

Extract Two

Police officer: OK, just tell me in your own words what happened, Mr Philips.

Driver: It's all a bit of a blur, I'm afraid.

Police officer: I understand you were on your way back from a holiday at around midnight. Is that correct?

Driver: Yes, but I'd say it was nearer one o'clock. We were coming home from a holiday. We'd spent all day travelling, so I suppose we were pretty tired.

Police officer: How far were you from home?

Driver: About half an hour. We were travelling fairly fast – the roads were empty and we were looking forward to a good night's sleep.

Police officer: What's the first thing that happened?

Driver: We were driving under a bridge when there was a crash of breaking glass and something hit my left arm. I managed to keep my right hand on the steering wheel but I didn't have much control over the car. Before I knew what was happening, we'd left the road and were heading for a clump of trees. I was sure we'd had it.

Police officer: What's the next thing you remember?

Driver: Well, everything happened so quickly. I remember coming round with people looking down at me.

Police officer: And when did you realise what had actually happened?

Driver: When one of the paramedics showed me the stone that had come through the window and landed on the back seat.

Extract Three

Reporter: So, what's your situation at the moment?

Resident: We're sleeping at the local secondary school, like many of our neighbours. We're all in the same situation – just doing our best to look on the bright side.

Reporter: I've interviewed families in other towns and villages who are in more or less the same situation. Everyone's worried because they haven't been told when they can move back in. Have you heard anything?

Resident: No, nothing. Apparently, all our houses are still under a metre of water – and it's still rising. It hasn't stopped raining since Tuesday.

Reporter: Can you tell me what happened in your case?

Resident: Well, there's a river at the bottom of our garden – more of a sluggish stream most of the time, actually. Last weekend, with all the rain we'd had, it burst its banks. It was very quick once it started. I was frantically trying to stop it by digging ditches to take the water away – but there was too much of it, and in the end I just gave up digging and got out as quickly as possible.

Reporter: And what's the damage?

Resident: Well, everything downstairs is ruined. We'll need new furniture and carpets, and we'll probably need to have the walls replastered. I keep thinking how disastrous it could have been. At one stage I imagined seeing the whole building collapse.

- 3 1 a** I have a memory of doing this.
b Don't forget to do it.
- 2 a** This was an experiment, to see what would happen.
b I attempted to do this but failed.
- 3 a** We saw part of the taking-off process.
b We saw the entire landing process.
- 4 a** I wish I hadn't said anything.
b I'm sorry to tell you that ...
- 5 a** It involves paying attention.
b I didn't intend to offend you.
- 4 1 to take** taking **2 maintaining** maintain / to maintain **3 to sail** sailing **4 to do** doing **5 work** working **6 going** to go

Vocabulary

Idiomatic language

- 1 1** Flashbacks can be either pleasant or unpleasant; they are often caused by traumatic events.
- 2** a hard, boring and repetitive routine
- 3** For example, if something happens really fast and the events aren't clear.
- 4** He thought he and his passengers were going to die.
- 2 1** hope for good luck
- 2** try hard to persuade me (but without force)
- 3** betray you or be disloyal to you when you are not expecting it
- 4** pretend not to notice something
- 5** joking/teasing

Grammar

Verbs followed by **to + infinitive** or the **-ing form**

- 1 1** to run **2** taking **3** thinking **4** to stop **5** digging
- 2** *Verb + to + infinitive:* afford, agree, choose, expect, hope, offer, pretend, promise, refuse
Verb + -ing: admit, avoid, can't help, deny, enjoy, finish, involve, keep on, mind, put off, resent, risk, suggest

Reading and Use of English | Part 4

- 1 1 Yes** **2 Yes** **3 No** – it doesn't use the key word (*until*) and it uses more than six words to complete the sentence. **4** was not / wasn't until we were
- 2 Answers to the clues are in brackets.**
- 1** don't / do not appeal to me (preposition: *to*)
- 2** he could protect / would be able to protect (a full clause, with subject and verb)
- 3** is against the law to drive (*against the law*)
- 4** is generally considered (to be) (The sentence becomes passive.)
- 5** inland, the more primitive (*the + comparative adjective/adverb, the + comparative adjective/adverb*)
- 6** should avoid climbing (modal verb: *should*)
- 3 1 f** **2 d** **3 e** **4 a** **5 c** **6 b**

Reading and Use of English | Part 7

- 2 1 C** **2 D** **3 F** **4 A** **5 G** **6 B** (Para E is not used.)

Speaking | Part 2

- 1 1** three **2** two **3** one minute **4** The other candidate has to answer a question related to what his/her partner was talking about.
- 4 1** photos 1 and 3
2 The words and phrases express varying degrees of doubt or certainty.

► CD 1 Track 14

Examiner: Here are your pictures. They show people doing dangerous jobs. I'd like you to compare two of the pictures and say what the dangers of the jobs might be and why people choose to do jobs like these.

Lukas: OK, well, in this photo there's a fire fighter putting out a fire and he's almost certainly doing it to save lives and property. It's a pretty dangerous job because obviously he could die in a fire or get seriously burnt. And I suppose he's doing it because someone's got to do it. It must be a worthwhile occupation – you know, very rewarding when you save someone's life. And in this photo there's a diver – he could be a police diver – he seems to be in a lake, or it could be a river. It's probably quite dangerous because the water could be deep or there might be strong currents. There could be glass or other dangerous things in the water. I suppose police divers find their work quite exciting – I'm sure it's never boring and it's very worthwhile – though they must never know what they're going to find in the water. I don't really know why people do jobs like these; perhaps they're people who get excitement from doing dangerous things.

5 Suggested answers

Skills and personal qualities: concentration, control, courage, daring, fit, self-confident, stamina, steady nerves, strength

How activities make people feel: adrenalin rush, excitement, exhausted, exhilarated, proud, satisfaction, a sense of achievement, terrified, thrill

Writing | Part 2

A proposal

- 3 1 not well ('not someone I know personally')
- 2 She rescued a lorry driver from his burning lorry.
- 3 She could have driven home and left the ambulance to deal with the accident.
- 4 She has shown that you don't need special training to help other people.
- 5 She should have an annual award named after her.

- 4 a 1 in my opinion 2 mother 3 reached 4 suffered burns 5 driven home 6 emergency services
7 make a difference 8 set up a fund 9 an annual prize
- b Yes – including two reasons for choice of hero

- 5 1 working, relaxing 2 looking, going, leaving
3 writing, driving, coming 4 hesitating, choosing
5 training

- 6 1 charge charging 2 keep keeping 3 correct
4 hardwork hardworking; interested interesting;
for improve for improving / to improve; be offered
offered / being offered / that/which is offered
5 To bring By bringing 6 to leave leaving

- 7 All the adjectives could be used except *cautious*, *greedy*, *narrow-minded* and *self-interested*.

8 Suggested answers

- 1 courageously / fearlessly 2 enthusiastically / tirelessly 3 exceptionally / extraordinarily
- 4 significantly 5 exceptionally / extraordinarily / remarkably 6 passionately 7 kindly 8 creatively
- 9 enthusiastically

6 Picture yourself

Starting off

2 Suggested answers

Speaker A: 1 Speaker B: 5 Speaker C: 3

► CD 1 Track 15

(These are invented monologues.)

A: This portrait's one which I started from a photo of myself actually, but after a time I came to the conclusion that photos aren't that good when you're trying to be creative. You know, I found myself sort of imitating the photo and that wasn't very satisfying. So I switched to drawing in front of a mirror instead. Anyway, I like this self-portrait because I think it reveals a bit about me, like that I'm quite neat, for example, perhaps a little unadventurous in the way I dress – not like most artists – but I think I've captured quite a sincere and thoughtful expression on my face. Also, I think I look quite sort of approachable, not at all threatening, someone it's nice to be around. At least I hope so.

B: You know, I've done quite a few portraits of friends and classmates and so on, normally from photos, and people are usually quite complimentary about them, but you should have heard some of the things my friends said about this one! 'We never see you

concentrating like that!' 'You're not like that at all – you're looking really serious!' You see, I did the drawing in front of a mirror as a sort of experiment to see if I could do a self-portrait from life like Rembrandt or Dalí or someone, and I found I kept having to move my head, so my hair kept getting in the way and I got quite frustrated. It took me hours! Still, I'm quite proud of the way my eyes turned out, sort of thoughtful and sincere.

C: I've been looking at quite a few self-portraits recently because this one didn't turn out at all how I expected. Most artists look like they're really concentrating hard and you don't catch them smiling much. In this one I look sort of uptight, moody, even a bit aggressive or perhaps a bit self-conscious. I'd just come back from holiday and my face was pretty tanned. I found it really hard to capture that tanned look combined with my fair hair in a black-and-white portrait. I'd like to look more relaxed, though.

- 3** **A** approachable, neat, nice to be around, not threatening, sincere, thoughtful, unadventurous
B really serious, sincere, thoughtful
C a bit self-conscious, aggressive, moody, uptight

Listening | Part 3

2 Suggested underlining

1 Mike painted / in Emily's home because 2 Emily feel / beginning 3 Mike / main reason / people have their portrait painted 4 Mike / prefer / sitter in front of him 5 surprised Emily 6 Mike / personality of the person

3 1 B 2 A 3 C 4 C 5 A 6 D

CD 1 Track 16

Interviewer: I'm delighted to be talking to artist Mike Byatt about his new portrait of actress Emily Curran, soon to be hung in the Bristol City Theatre, and to Emily herself, who's also with us to share her experience. Mike, you didn't paint Emily in your studio, did you?

Mike: No, I put the finishing touches to my work in the studio, but I always prefer to paint my subjects in their own surroundings, with their objects and furniture around them. I find, because they're on their own territory, so to speak, that they're more self-assured and comfortable, so they pose in a way that's more typical of them. That's what I attempt to capture: the person in their element, physically how they are. I've done a

fair number of portraits that way and it seems to work better.

Interviewer: And Emily, a new experience for you?

Emily: Entirely, although as an actress, I'm used to directors and colleagues looking at me and being highly critical of my work, how I move, and paying very, very close attention to my performance. In this case the attention was extremely intense right from the outset and even in my own home it was quite awkward to find a way of sitting that I felt happy with, so in the end, as you can see, I stood. As an actress, I'm quite used to doing so for hours on end, so that was no hardship and I thought, mistakenly as it turned out, that I'd be able to daydream my way through the whole process and relax.

Interviewer: Mike, Emily's portrait was commissioned by the Bristol Theatre Society, but speaking more generally, why do people commission portraits of themselves?

Mike: There can be any number of reasons. Unlike photos, which are mechanically produced images, portraits are an artist's interpretation of reality, the artist trying to see and present an image of the real person. They really are, visually, trying to tell the truth about that person, and in Emily's case that's important because you normally see her in the theatre playing someone else. Speaking more generally, though, if you visit people's homes, you'll often see portraits hanging over the mantelpiece which have been in the family for generations, often with their favourite horse, in front of their house, or in the library with their books, and by and large I'd say people have regarded their portraits as status symbols. Not that I'm suggesting that in Emily's case.

Emily: Although I am very proud of it and where it's going to hang!

Interviewer: You don't paint from photographs, do you, Mike?

Mike: No, during the painting process a very personal connection's formed between the painter and the sitter. You watch the shadows pass across their face as you paint, so to speak, and as the hours pass with the changing lights and shades, you see the person in three dimensions as you never would in a photo and you paint that, so that what you have, I believe, when you're successful is a closer likeness than you could ever manage from copying a photo.

Emily: I'm totally with Mike in his last remark. For me the whole experience was nothing like what I'd been expecting. It was so much more intense and unsettling.

As I said before, I'd been expecting to daydream all day, but Mike painted me standing staring directly at him and I had to stand still with this very intense, concentrated man's eyes boring into me. Whenever my attention wandered, he'd say, 'You're not really looking at me, your mind's elsewhere.' And I had to come back to the present. It was harder than any acting job because I had to be myself through the entire process. I felt a huge sense of release when Mike announced he'd finished with me.

Interviewer: So, Mike, do you feel you capture the personality of your sitters?

Mike: No doubt I get some intuition about my subjects' personalities as I work with them, though we don't normally talk much, because the process of painting takes up all my attention. Critics say that the person's personality comes through in great portraits, but I think that argument's a bit overstated. I feel that if I capture anything, it's my subject's passing moods and emotions. People looking at the portraits later draw their own conclusions about character – and that's how the best art should be, shouldn't it? An interaction between the subject, the artist and the observer, where each one makes a contribution to something which never has one definitive result but where each individual takes from it what they see at that moment.

Reading and Use of English | Part 5

1 1 a 2 i 3 d 4 b 5 g 6 j 7 e 8 f 9 c 10 h

2 *Suggested answer:* portraits which were unselfconsciously presented, less 'finished', more natural and spontaneous, drawn from life using a mirror not a photo

4 1 C 2 D 3 A 4 D 5 A 6 B

Grammar

Avoiding repetition

1 1 which 2 themselves, another 3 those, they
4 this 5 whose 6 that

2 1 (said) it so/this 2 it one 3 it one 4 these this
5 all everything / it all / them all 6 it one/some
7 it that/this 8 yourself you

3 Suggested answers

- 2 Fewer and fewer people listen to classical music. This means that less of it is being recorded.
- 3 I have to read lots of books for my Business Studies course. The ones / Those I enjoy most are those / the ones on management theory.
- 4 I'm hoping to be given a pay rise. This/That/It pay rise, which will mean I can buy a better car.
- 5 I want Karl, Pau, Ludmila and Mar to come to the meeting. I've told Karl. Can you tell the others?
- 6 Marina doesn't like spending a lot of money on clothes, so she tends to buy second-hand ones / buy them second hand.
- 7 My mother asked you to help her and she'd have been so happy if you'd done so / if you had.
- 8 When Raul feels strongly about something, he says so.
- 9 She didn't do the shopping because no one asked her to / asked her to do so/it.
- 10 Someone left a message on the answering machine but they didn't leave their name.

Vocabulary

Adjective–noun collocations (2)

1 big

- 2 1 large / considerable / huge / tremendous
- 2 amazing / good / great / huge / wide
- 3 loud / terrible / tremendous
- 4 considerable / great / huge / tremendous
- 5 heavy / terrible
- 6 amazing / good / great / tremendous / valuable
- 7 good / high / large
- 8 amazing / considerable / good / great / huge / satisfactory / tremendous
- 9 considerable / huge / wide
- 10 amazing / considerable / endless / great / huge / tremendous / wide

3 Suggested answers

Words like *huge* and *tremendous* have a more extreme meaning than *great*, *considerable* or *large*; they also tend to be used in more colloquial speech. *Amazing* conveys surprise at how much. *Terrible* conveys a negative attitude. *Good*, *valuable*, *satisfactory* and *great* (in most contexts) convey a positive attitude.

Reading and Use of English | Part 2

- 1** It reduces stress, raises productivity and creative thinking, and inspires people.
- 2** **1** what **2** down **3** one **4** When/If **5** an **6** about
7 longer **8** for
- 5** The writer thinks some of it is art and more may be considered art in the future, although some is also vandalism.
- 6** **1** whose **2** it **3** to/into **4** far **5** after **6** No
7 though **8** themselves

Speaking | Part 3

- 1** **1** Pair A **2** Pair B **3** Pair A **4** Both **5** Pair A

CD 1 Track 17

Pair A

Examiner: Now I'd like you to talk about something together for about two minutes. Here are some ways of encouraging young people to spend more time reading and a question for you to discuss. Talk to each other about how useful each of these experiences might be in encouraging young people to read more for pleasure.

Anna: Do you read many books, Ivan?

Ivan: Not many, to tell you the truth.

Anna: Well, I do. I'm studying literature at university, so I read a huge number of books – not all for my own enjoyment, though I do read some because they give me pleasure as well.

Ivan: Well, let's look at the task. Yes, I remember when I was at school that we used to read books together in class, you know, the teacher would read a bit, then we would take turns round the class and then from time to time we'd discuss the book.

Anna: Yes, I loved doing that. For me, it was the high point of the week. I think that's what made me determined to study literature. That and reading with my mother when I was very small.

Ivan: Hmm, I'm not so sure about reading in class. I found it rather, how do you say, tedious, especially when it was the turn of someone who couldn't read very well. That was sort of painful.

Anna: Yes, but I had a teacher who loved books and was able to communicate her enthusiasm, which was fantastic. And she helped us to dig below the surface, so we could really understand what the book was all about.

Ivan: Well, maybe you were luckier with your teacher than I was. I often felt I was just reading out of obligation, you know, something we had to do.

Anna: Are you a fan of e-books? I guess not if you don't read much yourself.

Ivan: Well, actually I think they might work quite well at getting young people to read more because kids get more involved if they can interact. I remember books when I was a child where you could choose options and then you were directed to another page depending on the option, so you were really choosing how the story developed. I like that idea ...

Pair B

Examiner: Now I'd like you to talk about something together for about two minutes. Here are some ways of encouraging young people to spend more time reading and a question for you to discuss. Talk to each other about how useful each of these experiences might be in encouraging young people to read more for pleasure.

Daniel: Well, I think reading the book when you've seen the film is really effective because people want to continue the experience or find out more.

Marta: Yes, although they're often disappointed by the book, or the film. I mean, one is usually much better than the other. Then using e-books: I'm not sure. I think children often get distracted, especially when they're using one of those tablets and there are lots of other things, games and so on not connected with the book.

Daniel: Yes, I agree. Now reading a book in class. Hmm. I think this is OK for small children, but do you think it really works with teenagers, for example? I'm not too sure.

Marta: Well, maybe if they haven't picked up a reading habit by the time they're teenagers, it's too late.

Daniel: Yeah, maybe. I don't think library visits on their own are enough, do you? I mean, young people have got to take out a book and do something at the end, like discuss it or write a review.

Marta: You're probably right, but I used to hate writing reviews. I think if you do that, you're not encouraging young people to read for pleasure. It sort of becomes just another chore, another piece of homework ...

2 Suggested answers

- 1** Although the pair A speakers don't follow the instructions immediately, they have a much more in-depth, meaningful discussion of a few of the options and are therefore dealing with the task better. The pair B speakers tend to flit from option to option with little to say.
- 2** Pair A could get started on the task right away – two minutes is not a lot. Pair B should look at each option they choose to discuss in more depth, without necessarily trying to cover them all.

- 3 1** I do read some (books) because they give me pleasure.
- 2** For me, reading in class was the high point of the week.
- 3** It (reading in class) is what made me determined to study literature.
- 4** I found it (reading in class) rather tedious.
- 5** I had a teacher who was able to communicate her enthusiasm.
- 6** I often felt I was just reading out of obligation.
- 7** Kids get more involved if they can interact.
- 8** Children often get distracted, especially when they're using one of those tablets.
- 9** If they haven't picked up a reading habit by the time they're teenagers, it's too late.
- 10** It (reading) becomes just another chore.

- 5 2** Yes. You need to support your opinion and also involve your partner.
- 3** No. You'll find it hard to keep going for the whole minute.
- 4** Yes. This builds up the discussion.
- 5** Yes. This builds up the discussion.
- 6** No. This is not a way of having a constructive discussion. You don't need to reach agreement in the minute, but you should be reasonable.

- 6** They use strategies 2 and 5.

CD 1 Track 18

Examiner: Now you have about a minute to decide which experience you think would be the most successful in encouraging young people to read more.

Ivan: Well, I think for me seeing a film of the book would be the most effective because I can think of two or three books I've read as a result of going to the cinema, so it might well get young people into the habit. Do you agree?

Anna: I think you're probably right perhaps for older children, although I'd strongly suggest reading in class as a great way to get kids into reading at a younger age as long as they have the right sort of teacher to encourage them.

Ivan: Yes, with young children it does come down to the quality of the teacher, doesn't it? That's perhaps where I missed out.

Examiner: Thank you.

Writing | Part 2**A review****1 Suggested underlining**

international magazine / recommend novels to read / reviews of novels / particularly enjoyed / describes the novel / what you liked / why you recommend it

2 Suggested answers: c, d, e, f**3 Suggested answers**

Para 2: the characters, their motivation and development

Para 3: what I like: descriptions of rural life, suspense; recommendation: dialogue, detail, love contrasting with horror

- 4 1** self-sufficient **2** thoughtful **3** vivid **4** hazardous
- 5** unlike **6** desperate **7** observant **8** sheltered
- 9** well-off **10** tough **11** harsh **12** remote

Vocabulary and grammar review | Unit 5

- 1 1 C 2 A 3 B 4 D 5 B 6 B 7 A**

2 1 looking forward to starting

2 were (very/extremely) lucky to avoid / to have avoided

3 regret making / having made

4 can't afford to buy

5 denies (ever) seeing / having seen

6 we checked out that we settled

- 3 1** to climb **2** to leave **3** to be rescued **4** waiting

5 phoning **6** to put out **7** realising **8** putting

9 to take **10** getting **11** snowing / to snow

12 climbing **13** to admit **14** to phone **15** to ask

16 contact **17** regretting **18** to ignore

Vocabulary and grammar review |

Unit 6

- 1** 1 big 2 wide 3 large 4 deep 5 high 6 heavy
7 big 8 high

2 Suggested answers

- 2** When a child feels unhappy, they will ask for their mother more often than for their father.
- 3** Gustav bought a large house by the sea about ten years ago, which / ago. This/It turned out to be a good investment.
- 4** Leonardo lived in Canada as a child, which is / child. That's why he speaks such fluent English.
- 5** Svetlana spent several months trying to decide which car to buy and she finally bought one last week.
- 6** Matthew likes reading novels, especially romantic ones.
- 7** Violeta bought some apples in the market. She put some (of them) in the fruit bowl and used the others to make an apple pie.
- 8** Narayan has had two jobs. Both were in a bank but unfortunately neither was well paid.
- 9** There are five official languages in Spain and Manolo speaks all of them.
- 10** Pete had never spoken to Ann, although he'd often wanted to.

- 3** 1 any difference between
2 tended to be keener
3 does not / doesn't look as if/though / like it
4 were passed over due/owing
5 what matters (the) most to
6 not only talent but enthusiasm / enthusiasm but talent

7 Leisure and entertainment

Listening | Part 4

- 1** 1 disco 2 opera 3 rap 4 classical 5 pop 6 folk
7 rock 8 jazz 9 Latin

► CD 1 Track 19

[music extracts]

- 4** 1 D 2 H 3 E 4 A 5 B 6 H 7 G 8 A 9 C 10 E

► CD 1 Track 20

Speaker 1

I've been involved in traditional music for about 15 years, in fact, ever since I was a kid. My father was very well known around here as a singer of the old songs. He sang at family gatherings and played in a local dance band. Before that, my grandfather was a genuine traditional singer who had a whole repertoire of family songs that had been passed down from generation to generation. They were all neatly handwritten in a notebook. I'm proud to say I continue to sing some of the family songs – but not just in our village. I've travelled all over the world, and played in front of audiences of thousands.

Speaker 2

I used to think tango was something only people of my parents' generation did, but then I went to a concert by the Gotan Project in London, and I couldn't believe how exciting tango could be. For a start, the music was incredible. As well as the kind of instruments I was familiar with, you know, violins, guitars and piano, they used a bandoneon – that's a sort large square-shaped accordion – but they also used electronic music – samples and beats. The rhythm was so infectious that some of the audience got up and bopped about, whether they could tango or not. Since then, I've joined a class and learned some of the basic moves. It's very exciting.

Speaker 3

I'd be completely lost without my iPod. So I say thanks to whoever came up with the idea. I have it with me nearly all the time, whether I'm commuting to work, exercising at the local gym, trying to drown out some noise or just chilling. I've got over seven thousand songs on mine – most of them downloads from the Internet – some whole albums but mostly individual tracks. I listen mainly to rock music, but I quite like jazz and I even play classical stuff if I'm stressed – Mozart and other classical composers can be very relaxing if you're sitting on a crowded train or waiting at the dentist's or whatever.

Speaker 4

I'm hoping to start a jazz band with a friend I studied music at university with – I play percussion and Ed plays trombone, but our main interest is writing music. The band will have parts for seventeen players. One of the difficulties is that most of the musicians we're approaching already play in other groups, so they won't be available all the time. We're planning to make a recording but the logistics are a nightmare. Rehearsals and recording would be tricky – getting so many people into a studio at the same time. At the moment it's just something we're looking into, but we're hoping it'll become a reality sometime in the next year or so.

Speaker 5

I've just come back from Womad in Singapore – it was awesome. I went with a few friends and we got in for free because we were in the stage crew. We had to carry loads of stuff from one place to the next, but we still had time to get into the music. We got to talk to quite a lot of the acts – we got signatures and photos. It was a great experience, especially when the artists thank you for doing such a good job. I'd never heard of lots of the bands and singers before, but I'll be trying to catch them live whenever I can – until I go again next year.

- 5** 1 gatherings 2 infectious 3 commuting
4 logistics 5 awesome

Vocabulary**Complex prepositions**

- 1** 1 in aid of 2 by means of 3 in place of
4 on account of 5 On behalf of 6 with regard to
7 in keeping with 8 in exchange for

- 2** 1 d 2 h 3 g 4 a 5 f 6 c 7 b 8 e

Reading and Use of English | Part 7

- 2** 1 in the early 1970s 2 It requires sophisticated computer systems and a lot of practice. 3 He/She expects dozens of new virtual worlds to spring up in the future.

3 Suggested answers

- Para B:* problems for businesses using Second Life
Para C: increased popularity of virtual worlds due to the Internet/web
Para D: Second Life activities and users
Para E: effects of media interest in Second Life

Para F: another stage in the development of virtual worlds

Para G: difference between these (virtual) worlds and online games

- 4** 1 G 2 F 3 C 4 A 5 E 6 B (Para D is not used.)

- 5** 1 games in which many players interact
2 something that preceded the Internet
3 gain unauthorised entry into the computer system
4 designed mainly for social conversations
5 a lot of excited interest in the media
6 didn't receive much financial reward in return
7 all together as a group

Grammar**Linking ideas: relative and particle clauses**

- 1** 1 where 2 which 3 played 4 in which 5 making
6 that/which 7 who 8 explaining 9 based

- 2** 1 **a** 1, 2, 4, 6 and 7 **b** 1, 4 and 6 **c** 2 and 7

- 2** **a** 3, 5, 8 and 9 **b** *present:* 5 (making) and 8 (explaining); *past:* 3 (played) and 9 (based)
c 3 and 9 **d** 5 and 8

- 3** In sentence 6 *that/which* can be left out. Also in sentence 4 *in which* can be left out. They each introduce a defining relative clause and they are the object of the verb in that clause.

- 3** 1 which 2 where 3 in which 4 who/that 5 who
6 whose 7 for whom 8 who
In sentence 3 *in which* can be left out. In sentence 4 *who/that* can be left out.

- 4** 1 quivering 2 based 3 Having read 4 made
5 specialising

Linking ideas: apposition**5 Suggested answers**

- 1** *The Matrix*, a science fiction film, came out in 1999.
2 Thomas Anderson, the central character, is a computer programmer and a hacker. / Thomas Anderson, a computer programmer and a hacker, is the central character.
3 The star of the film is Keanu Reeves, a famous American actor. / The star of the film, Keanu Reeves, is a famous American actor.
4 The film popularised 'bullet time', an effect which allows actions to be filmed at different speeds.

Reading and Use of English | Part 1

3 1 C 2 D 3 B 4 A 5 B 6 B 7 C 8 A

Vocabulary

Money words

1 1 renting 2 earn, buying, selling 3 hiring 4 lend, pay 5 borrow

2 1 sell 2 make 3 buy 4 pay 5 afford, costs
6 meet 7 take out 8 burn 9 raise

3 1 mouth 2 trees 3 cash 4 nose 5 way 6 water
7 purse 8 bank

4 1 gaining earning 2 afford cover, spend pay
3 pay buy / pay for 4 borrow lend 5 rent borrow
6 buy spend 7 earned raised

Speaking | Part 4

3 1 They are answering questions 1 and 4.

2 Extract 1: Her main point is that the activities are worthwhile and people enjoy them.

Extract 2: Her main point is that the activities are more useful in large clubs because members find it harder to get to know each other.

3 Extract 1: She partly agrees.

Extract 2: She agrees.

CD 1 Track 21

Extract 1

Laura: No, not at all. I think it's really important for people who are going to be spending time together to get to know each other properly as quickly as possible. I don't have any experience of these activities myself, but I imagine if they're well thought out, they can be very worthwhile for the people who go on them as well as for any clubs and organisations they belong to. There are probably a few individuals who can't see the point of them – and ironically, these may be the people who most need these activities – but I'd say the majority find them enjoyable and useful.

Examiner: What do you think, Marta?

Marta: Well, I think I'd benefit from them personally, but not everyone would be comfortable with activities like these and I don't think they should be forced to take part if they don't want to.

Extract 2

Marta: I'd say it's easy for individuals to feel a bit lost in a large club, and particularly when they first join, especially if they don't already know anyone who belongs. In this situation team-building activities provide opportunities for people to get to know each other better more effectively than simply leaving things to chance, so that when they start joining in club activities, they feel more comfortable. That's not likely to be such a problem for members of smaller clubs where everyone gets to know everyone else quite quickly.

Examiner: Do you agree, Laura?

Laura: Yes, I do. I think in smaller organisations people tend to get together socially, and maybe don't need things organised for them.

Writing | Part 2

An informal letter

1 2 *Suggested answer:* when the contact needs to be official, formal or serious, e.g. a letter of application, resignation, condolence or complaint

2 *Suggested order:* 1 A 2 C 3 D 4 E 5 B

- 1 A asking a friend let him/her stay for a few days
- B a holiday rental company confirming payment and reminding the client of conditions
- C inviting staff and students to an end-of-term party
- D thanking musicians who played at party
- E apologising to a customer for damage to a CD in transit

2 *Suggested answers*

- A The two people know each other well.
- B This is part of a business transaction between the company and the person renting the property.
- C The tutor or student who is writing has a friendly relationship with the people involved in the course.
- D The party organiser/host was pleased with the music and wants to show his/her appreciation.
- E The company is making a polite apology to a customer who has complained.

- 3** **A** am looking (leaving out *I*), put me up, didn't, meet up, I'd, I'll be around, Don't worry, it's, loads of, it'd be good
B no informal features
C to get everyone together, we're asking, ask someone over, It's, hopefully, shouldn't
D Just a short note (leaving out *This is*), as well, set the evening up
E no informal features

3 Suggested answers

- 1** (This is) Just to let you know (that) ...
- 2** your holiday that's coming up soon / the holiday you've got coming up
- 3** will be taken from your credit card
- 4** the week after you leave
- 5** I'm very sorry about this
- 6** We try really hard
- 7** To start with, I wanted to know about / I asked about
- 8** If you want / you'd like me to do it for you
- 9** There's something else we need to think about
- 10** I can't tell you what to do about this

4 Suggested answers

- A** Good to hear from you – it'll be great to get together when you're over here in November. Unfortunately, we've got people staying at that time, so we won't be able to put you up – sorry.
C Thanks for the/your invitation to the college get-together in June. It sounds great and I'll certainly be there.

6 Suggested answers

At the beginning: comment on the fact that your friend is planning to learn your language, ask about the language course your friend is attending, give some general information about your town

At the end: say you're looking forward to seeing your friend, suggest meeting during your friend's stay

7 **a** 4 and 9 **b** 1, 3, 6 and 10 **c** 2, 3, 5, 7 and 8

8 Media matters**Listening | Part 3**

- 1** 1 when it was still a new medium available to mass audiences – probably in the 1950s
- 2** a detailed study
- 3** They enjoy it greatly.
- 4** Citizen journalism is written by ordinary people rather than trained journalists.

2 **1 C** **2 D** **3 A** **4 D** **5 C** **6 B**

 **CD 2 Track 02**

Interviewer: In today's *On Message* I'm joined by Harry Cameron, the veteran journalist, who has witnessed many changes in his profession over the last nearly sixty years. Harry, welcome.

Cameron: Thank you.

Interviewer: Harry, can you tell me what being a journalist was like when you started as a junior reporter?

Cameron: My main memory of those far-off days is the sense of pride I felt at writing for a respected national newspaper. It was a real honour. What you have to remember is that in those days people got most of their information about the world from their daily newspapers. Television was in its infancy – something only the rich could afford. The radio broadcast regular news bulletins, but newspapers gave people the pictures to go with the stories. Journalists like me travelled the world and filed reports which kept people up to date with everything important. I remember in the early 1950s reporting from a war zone in East Asia. I wrote my report in my hotel bedroom. I could hear gunfire and see plumes of smoke. I phoned the report through to my editor for publication a day or two later. I was reporting something thousands of miles from home – something the public didn't already know.

Interviewer: But people still read newspapers today, don't they?

Cameron: Yes, of course, but I believe the function of newspapers has changed. If you want to know what's going on in the world at any particular time, you don't read a newspaper, do you? You look on the Internet or turn on the telly. Whatever channel you're watching, there'll be regular news updates.

Interviewer: So, what can newspapers provide if not current news?

Cameron: Well, I suppose different newspapers provide different things, don't they? The broadsheets give us

background to the news stories and an in-depth analysis of the issues involved. I think they do this very well. At the more popular end of the market, papers these days focus more and more on stories involving celebrities from the world of sport, TV, cinema, and of course, sport itself. People lap all this up, and I suppose it is news of a kind.

Interviewer: And what about 'citizen journalism'? Is this a term you're familiar with?

Cameron: Yes, it is, and it's something I have some sympathy with, even though it may put some of my own colleagues out of work in the long run.

Interviewer: So how would you explain its sudden appearance as a source of information?

Cameron: It's quite simple – the fact is that the Internet has given everyone access to a wealth of information and to a worldwide audience. So a citizen journalist in a war zone, like me all those years ago, doesn't have to write a story and send it to an editor who can decide whether or not to run the story in their newspaper – they can simply add information to a news website or write their own blog. Bloggers are the new journalists.

Interviewer: And how reliable are bloggers and citizen journalists?

Cameron: At least as reliable as the traditional news providers, whose stories are usually revised and cut by editors who may be under political pressure from a newspaper owner or even their government. Some news websites allow other members of the public to add to, update or correct stories that are already there. It's a very democratic process.

Interviewer: So, this is not something you think should be controlled?

Cameron: Absolutely not! And of course you couldn't control it even if you wanted to.

Interviewer: And you have no regrets about the effect of this form of journalism on the profession you were so proud to be part of when you first became a reporter?

Cameron: I suppose I'm a little sad – I mean, things will never be the same again. But the important thing is that people have reliable sources of up-to-date information. Of course there will always be a role, in newspapers and elsewhere, for intelligent comment and analysis of the news, and if I were starting out again now, that's the kind of journalism I'd get into.

Interviewer: And you'd do it extremely well, I have no doubt. Harry Cameron, thanks for being my guest today.

Cameron: It's been my pleasure.

- 3 1 junior reporter 2 daily newspaper 3 in-depth analysis 4 news broadcast 5 war zone 6 far-off days

Grammar

Reported speech

- 1 1 Can you tell me what being a journalist was like?
 2 My main memory of those far-off days is the sense of pride I felt.
 3 Journalists like me travelled the world and filed reports.
 4 I wrote my report in my hotel bedroom.
 5 I believe that the function of newspapers has changed.
 6 Things will never be the same again.

2

CD 2 Track 03

- 1 Harry, can you tell me what being a journalist was like when you started ...
 2 My main memory of those far-off days is the sense of pride I felt at writing ...
 3 Journalists like me travelled the world and filed reports, which kept people ...
 4 I wrote my report in my hotel bedroom.
 5 Yes of course, but I believe the function of newspapers has changed.
 6 I mean, things will never be the same again.

- 3 1 When the speaker said this, the date of publication was in the future, but that date has now passed.
 2 The speaker said this today and the situation remains unchanged – the publication date is still tomorrow.
 3 When the reporting verb is in the present tense (*says*), the verbs in reported speech remain in the tense that the speaker used – there is no change of tense.

4

CD 2 Track 04

- 1 Hazel: Have you ever used Wikipedia?
 Tom: Yes, I have. I used it yesterday.
 2 Tom: How well do you know my sister?
 Hazel: We're best friends.
 3 Hazel: What will you do after university?
 Tom: I'll probably work abroad.

- 4 Tom: What are you doing tomorrow?
Hazel: Taking my driving test.

5 Suggested answers

- 1 Hazel asked Tom if/whether he had ever used Wikipedia. Tom said (that) he had used it the day before / the previous day.
- 2 Tom wondered how well Hazel knew his sister. Hazel explained that they were best friends.
- 3 Hazel wanted to know what Tom would do after university. Tom replied that he would probably work abroad.
- 4 Tom asked Hazel what she was doing the following day. Hazel told him (that) she was taking her driving test.

Reading and Use of English | Part 3

- 1** 1 inaccurate 2 unimportant 3 unselfish
4 illegal 5 impossible 6 irregular 7 dissimilar
8 intolerant
Nouns: 1 inaccuracy 2 unimportance
3 unselfishness 4 illegality 5 impossibility
6 irregularity 7 dissimilarity 8 intolerance
- 2** 1 disappear 2 reclaim 3 misinform 4 prejudgete
5 overreact 6 destabilise 7 understate
Nouns: 1 disappearance 2 reclamation
3 misinformation 4 pre-judgement 5 overreaction
6 destabilisation 7 understatement
- 3** 1 autobiography 2 co-owner 3 ex-politician
4 mistrust/distrust 5 semi-circle
Adjectives: 1 autobiographical 2 co-owned
3 no adjective 4 mistrustful (but not distrustful)
5 semi-circular
- 4** 1 They have taught their students 'that there is no such thing as truth in television products'.
2 He says that according to current theories, there is little difference between the two.
- 5** 1 intellectual 2 journalism 3 accuracy
4 decode 5 difference 6 insistent 7 impartiality
8 argument

Speaking | Part 3

- 3** 1 They talk about all five of them.
2 *Suggested answers:* Not entirely. They skim over the topics of radio/TV and the Internet, referring to the power/popularity of these media but without saying how they influence people's ideas and behaviour. They address the question more successfully when discussing advertising and multinational corporations.
3 *Suggested answer:* Generally yes, but the topic of newspapers is treated rather briefly and superficially.
4 Yes

CD 2 Track 05

Anna: They're all quite important influences, aren't they? But I'd say that nearly everyone watches television so it's got to be a big influence on people.

Lukas: And the radio – there are loads of people who have the radio on all the time, whatever they're doing.

Anna: Yeah, that's because it's pretty easy to do things at the same time as you're listening. TV's not like that, you know, you've got to watch to make sense of it.

Lukas: The point is, does radio have as powerful an influence as the TV?

Anna: No, probably not, but we're not supposed to be thinking about radio and TV separately, are we?

Lukas: No, I suppose not. I'd say things like the news on TV can have a greater influence because you can actually see what's happening.

Anna: OK – now we've got newspapers. I'd say quite a few people read these, but I think people tend to read the newspapers that agree with their political opinions, so they probably don't actually change many people's ideas or opinions.

Lukas: That's true or if they just want amusement, sport and things like that, they read one of the tabloids. OK, so on to, erm, advertising.

Anna: Advertising's just everywhere. You couldn't get away from it even if you wanted to.

Lukas: There's so much brand management now – it's all sort of subconscious. Companies sponsoring things and ...

Anna: Too much money spent on advertising.

Lukas: Do you think it has much effect on people?

Anna: It must do, or the companies wouldn't spend so much money on it, would they?

Lukas: I suppose not, but I'm not sure advertising affects me that much. I'm fairly sure I haven't bought anything because of an advert I've seen.

Anna: Ah – that's what you say, but are you sure? We've already agreed that advertising can affect you sort of subconsciously – so that you don't think you've been persuaded, but in fact you have.

Lukas: That's the problem – you can never be sure, can you?

Anna: OK – let's move on to the Internet, which is massive, isn't it? In some countries it must be the most influential of all these things.

Lukas: You can just find out anything.

Anna: Yeah, absolutely anything – Wikipedia, and all the social networking sites and stuff.

Lukas: And at least with the Internet people have a huge choice.

Anna: But don't forget all the banner ads and the pop-ups.

Lukas: You see, you can never get away from advertising of some kind.

Anna: I know – and almost all games people play online are packed with ads.

Lukas: In the end multinational corporations are responsible for that. They're a lot more influential than we realise – because their wealth gives them power.

Anna: Yeah – but it's less direct power, isn't it?

Lukas: I don't think it's less direct. It may be less obvious, but there's no doubt that large sections of the media are owned and controlled by the business interests of a few powerful individuals. This means they influence people's political views and control advertising. So in the end they do have a huge influence on how we spend our money.

Anna: It's all a bit sinister, don't you think?

Lukas: Yeah, a bit Big Brother-ish – being told what to think.

4 some kind, sort of, stuff, things like that
a bit, quite a few, a lot
nearly, fairly, quite, almost, probably
the suffix *-ish* (Big Brother-ish)

7 2 Suggested answer: They interact well, each putting forward ideas and negotiating to reach their final decision.

CD 2 Track 06

Examiner Now you have about a minute to decide which two of these influences have the greatest effect on people.

Anna: I think we've more or less decided, haven't we?

Lukas: I'm not sure we have. I mean, we both think the Internet is very powerful, but lots of internet sites are packed with advertising, and that's how multinational corporations make their money, isn't it?

Anna: Yes, so what are we saying? That multinational corporations are the most powerful influence of all?

Lukas: Well, that's what I think.

Anna: I'm not so sure. I'd say TV and radio were pretty powerful too.

Lukas: Yes, but a lot of broadcasting stations are funded by advertising, aren't they?

Anna: Yes, I'd never thought of that.

Lukas: OK, so we think that multinational corporations are the most powerful. What's next?

Anna: Well, I'd say advertising – because that's everywhere. In newspapers, on the Internet and on TV.

Lukas: So, do we agree?

Anna: Yes, I think we do.

Vocabulary

'Talking' verbs

1 **1** tells **2** talk/speak **3** discussed **4** saying
5 comment **6** spoke/talked

2 **1** tell **2** saying, speak **3** mention **4** expressed
5 says **6** comment **7** told, mention **8** speak

Reading and Use of English | Part 6

- 4** **1** a craze for immediate fame
- 2** shameless advertising of oneself
- 3** a less intelligent generation
- 4** doing things without instructions to follow
- 5** controlled in a cold-hearted way for some advantage that can be gained
- 6** something which creates a sense of community
- 7** times when people meet informally at work
- 8** something people feel obliged to do as members of their society
- 9** an extremely careful procedure for choosing

- 5** **1** a **2** b **3** b **4** a

- 6 1** **B** C and B make different points, but they both suggest that there are positive benefits to be gained from reality TV. C: ‘reality programmes provide “an important social glue” ... help to bind people together’ – B: ‘the educational value of observing how the contestants cope ... This insight into the human condition is invaluable.’ (A and D express no positive opinions about reality TV shows.)
- 2** **A** A claims that the popularity of reality TV is bad for young people: ‘Although it is impossible to ignore their popularity, ... many reality shows send an unfortunate message encouraging a cult of instant celebrity ... this addiction to celebrity culture is creating a dumbed-down generation.’ B, C and D express the view that it has no harmful effect on the audience.
- 3** **D** B: ‘characters have been selected to encourage disagreements or tension and then cynically manipulated’ – D: ‘contestants who have undergone a meticulous selection process ... This situation is then stage-managed’, ‘in order to create tensions ... encouraging conflict ... provoking behaviour’. (A and C do not mention the way participants are controlled.)
- 4** **B** A, C and D all express the view that reality shows are inauthentic (A: ‘pretending to imitate real life’; C: ‘they do not reflect reality’; D: ‘provoking behaviour very different from what would happen in real-life survival situations’). However, B’s view is that what is shown is authentic: ‘reality shows ... feature real people operating without scripts’, engineering by the programme makers ‘does not take away from the reality of the programmes; in fact it adds to it.’

Grammar

Transitive verbs

- 1** **1** allowed, warned, instructed, required
2 told, reminded, convinced, informed
- 2** **1** **a** intransitive, visit someone’s home
b transitive, give a name to (somebody)
- 2** **a** intransitive, move very quickly
b transitive, manage (an organisation)
- 3** **a** intransitive, succeed in doing something difficult
b transitive, be in charge of (an organisation)
- 4** **a** intransitive, depart
b transitive, let (something) remain where it is
- 5** **a** intransitive, go to live in a different place
b transitive, change the position of (something)

- 3** **1** assure you **2** tell me **3** gave it to me **4** allow us to **5** introduced me to **6** wish you

Writing | Part 2

A proposal

- 2** **1** Yes **2** Yes **3** *Suggested answer:* In the second paragraph some verbs can be strengthened to sound less tentative and more confident: *The first programme should focus on ... The programme should/would highlight ... with which many viewers can/will identify ... It is / will be important ...* In the fourth paragraph *Hopefully* is rather weak – the sentence could be rephrased: *I am sure/certain that this will/would encourage viewers ...*

3 *Suggested answers*

- 1** I suggest that the company should consider making a programme about wildlife in the region.
- 2** This would/should include a feature on animals native to the region.
- 3** I am sure/certain/convinced that viewers would find this fascinating / very appealing / of great interest.
- 4** Programmes about animals appeal to the majority of people.
- 5** Research suggests that many young people would welcome such a programme / a programme of this kind.

- 4** **1** from **2** to **3** to **4** on **5** with, with **6** to **7** in, in

Vocabulary and grammar review |

Unit 7

- 1** **1** afford **2** rent **3** earns/makes **4** sell
5 hired **6** earn/make **7** cost, paying **8** spend

- 2** **1** B **2** A **3** D **4** C **5** A **6** B **7** D **8** A

3 *Suggested answers*

- 1** (While) dealing with his mother’s absence, an eleven-year-old boy tries to understand his family and stop it from breaking apart, (all of) which he finds very difficult.
- 2** A man called Black, whose brain becomes magnetised, unintentionally destroys every tape in a video store, (which is) owned by his best friend. Feeling sorry for the store’s most loyal customer, an elderly woman who is losing her memory, Black and his friend set out to remake the lost

films, which include / including *The Lion King* and *RoboCop*.

- 3** In this film, (which is) based on a sci-fi novel by Richard Matheson, a military scientist, played by Will Smith, is left completely alone in New York, which is deserted after a virus has wiped out the human race.

Vocabulary and grammar review |

Unit 8

- 1** 1 ex-politician 2 mistrust 3 illegal 4 disappear
5 autobiography 6 reclamation 7 prejude
8 destabilise

- 2** 1 (un)ethical 2 entertainment/entertainer, entertaining 3 cooperation, (un)cooperative
4 produce, (un)productive 5 consideration, (in) considerate/considerable 6 create, creation/creator

3 Suggested answers

- 1 Roland told Joanna that she mustn't tell / not to tell anyone what she had seen.
2 Clare said it was / had been a surprise seeing Tom last week / the previous week. She said she hadn't seen him since they were / had been at school together.
3 Ben asked Jerry if he should do the shopping that afternoon.
4 The doctor told me that I had to stop smoking if I wanted to get rid of my cough.
5 Bogdan asked me how many languages I could/ can speak.

- 4** 1 'What are you doing out so late?'
2 'Do you have / Have you got any plans for tomorrow evening?'
3 'This is the worst programme I've ever seen.'
4 'I'll phone you as soon as I get home.'
5 'I hope I'll be going there tomorrow.'

- 5** 1 promised never to / (that) she would never
2 advised me to apply for that 3 asked (me) if/ whether I'd / I had 4 suggested meeting the following / suggested (that) we (should) meet the following 5 warned the motorist not to drink
6 announced that they were getting married

9 At top speed

Listening | Part 1

- 2** 1 B 2 A

CD 2 Track 07

Extract One

Man: Yes, well of course when the steam train was invented, it completely changed nineteenth-century society, didn't it?

Woman: Yes, it was a tremendous change. People's entire world view underwent a profound transformation. There were things we find laughable today, such as the fear that the vibration would shatter passengers' skeletons. And over the next hundred years railways had a radical impact on the countryside, making it possible to live there and commute to work in cities. Outlying villages which had been quiet, sleepy places before trains arrived became busy suburbs.

Man: That's right and humans underwent a sudden evolution from being comparatively slow and clumsy to becoming the fastest living creatures. This had a subtle but distinct effect in the following years on the way people regarded their place in the world. They began to believe they were no longer totally at the mercy of natural events but that they were somehow above them and could take action to harness these phenomena. I doubt if any other invention has had such a profound influence on the human psyche. Nineteenth-century literature and art's full of it.

Woman: And early steam trains were to blame for some quite horrific accidents ...

- 5** 3 A 4 C

CD 2 Track 08

Extract Two

Woman: Do you think people will lose interest in Olympic events when athletes no longer break records?

Man: Well, they're only just managing to now. Previously when they broke records, their feats were often mind-blowing. Take Bob Beamon's long jump record in 1968: 55 centimetres longer than the previous record! I can't imagine anyone making such a difference nowadays.

Woman: Yeah but there'll always be some individuals who manage to grab the headlines.

Man: Maybe, but they'll be relatively few and far between. And newspapers and TV will always blow them out

of proportion when they occur because they need a sensation.

Woman: Hmm. Well I think breaking a record even by a millisecond is a sensation.

Man: But I guess we're getting close to the limits of human ability now.

Woman: Maybe. The key change occurred when top sports people stopped being amateurs and devoted themselves full time to their sport, not to mention new technologies which affected shoe or track design. Perhaps the next big step could be to modify human genes to produce better athletes.

Man: Yeah, that used to sound like science fiction, didn't it? But if they can do it to rats, they'll soon be able to do it to humans too.

Woman: Ha, rat Olympics!

8 5 B 6 C

CD 2 Track 09

Extract Three

Woman: When you think that the nearest star's 4.2 light years away, a spaceship using current technology would take seventy-two thousand years to get there, an unimaginable length of time.

Man: So to make interstellar space travel a realistic possibility, the spaceship would need a nuclear explosion to propel it at close to the speed of light.

Woman: Well, that may be technically feasible, but there are treaties which prohibit nuclear explosions from being used in space programmes. Who knows what effect such explosions might have on the environment?

Man: True, but a spaceship using more conventional technology would take so long to get anywhere that the original occupants wouldn't live to reach their destination, nor would their great-grandchildren, but only their descendants many generations later would. Even if there were a couple of hundred people prepared to embark on a journey like this, they and their descendants would have to live together on the ship all their lives, travelling through the emptiness of space. What activities would they engage in during all this time? What'd be the point of their existence? That really would be the central concern. I can imagine them degenerating into barbarism and fighting after they've spent several generations in space.

Woman: What a horrific thought!

9 1 underwent **2** had **3** had **4** has had **5** lose,
break **6** making **7** embark **8** engage in

Grammar

Time clauses

1 1 was invented **2** arrived **3** no longer break
4 occur **5** stopped **6** have spent

2 1 retires **2** had been working / had worked
3 are driving **4** got **5** am **6** was accepted
7 get / have got, have passed **8** had written

3 1 at work until she has **2** the last customer(s) had
3 soon as I have got back **4** had almost/nearly run
out of

Prepositions in time expressions

4 1 at on **2** at in **3** of in **4** in at **5** of in **6** in at
7 in on **8** in at **9** in on **10** in at

Vocabulary

action, activity, event and programme

1 1 c, e **2** d, i **3** b, h **4** a, f, g

2 1 events, b **2** action, c **3** events, h
4 programmes, f **5** activities, i

3 1 activity **2** programme **3** action **4** programme
5 action **6** event **7** activity **8** programme
9 event **10** activity **11** action **12** event

4 social event, spare-time activity, programme of
(social) events, flurry of activity, call for swift action

Reading and Use of English | Part 7

2 Suggested answers

Para 1: the effects of driving very fast

Para 2: the problems of driving at high speed

Para 3: comparison with a Formula One car

Para 4: how the engineers produced enough power

Para 5: the problem of aerodynamics

Para 6: the solution to the aerodynamics

Para 7: how it feels to drive this car

Suggested underlining: But once you go past 320 km/h, at this juncture, when you look at the history of its development, His engineers were horrified. Then things got tricky. When this had been done, they hit on the idea, I didn't care

3 1 C **2** A **3** D **4** B **5** E **6** G (Para F is not used.)

Speaking | Part 2

1 Suggested answers

- 1 deal with infringements, give somebody a fine, have a criminal record, traffic/parking offences, check identity
- 2 clear up leaves, keep public spaces tidy
- 3 cover large areas, find suitable pastures, protect from predators, round up the flock, conserve energy
- 3 1 Yes 2 Yes 3 No (She suggests two ways.)
- 4 No (But she uses two possible words to express the meaning and then moves on.) 5 Yes 6 Yes 7 Yes

CD 2 Track 10

Examiner: Now in this part of the test I'm going to give each of you three pictures. I'd like you to talk about two of them on your own for about a minute, and also to answer a question briefly about your partner's pictures. Anna, it's your turn first. Here are your pictures. They show people using different machines or devices. I'd like you to compare two of the pictures and say what problems the people might have in their jobs and how the machines or devices might help the people to do their jobs better.

Anna: Well, the first one is a policeman using what I think must be a tablet – you know, with an internet connection so he can check or send data. He's probably checking the identity of a driver to see if he has a criminal record or he could be checking to see if the car is stolen or something. The other picture shows – what do you call the person? – a cowboy or a shepherd, I'm not sure, and he's rounding up his herd, I mean his flock of sheep. I think the policeman might have problems with angry drivers he's giving a fine to, or if he's dealing with traffic offences. The device helps him because he can check information in – what's the phrase? – in real time: he doesn't have to call someone at the police station or go there to check things. He might even have a mobile printer in the police car and be able to give the driver a fine automatically. The shepherd might have trouble finding all his sheep and protecting them from predators. Also, he has to cover a large area. By using a, a – I'm not sure of the name of the vehicle, is it a quad bike? – he doesn't have to walk or use a horse all day, so he can conserve his energy and not get worn out – and so can his dog!

Examiner: Thank you. Daniel, which job do you think is the most demanding?

Daniel: Hmm, good question! For me, I think the most demanding job is probably the shepherd. I mean, how do you keep track of all those sheep and not lose one? And you're out there working whatever the weather.

Examiner: Now, Daniel, here are your pictures ...

- 4 1 must be 2 what do 3 I mean 4 what's 5 sure of
- 5 a 3 b 1, 2 and 5 c 2, 4 and 5

6 Suggested answers

- 1 become disorientated, combat the cold, deep-sea diver, lack of oxygen, take strict safety precautions, underwater archaeology
- 2 become disorientated, deep in the woods, lose your way
- 3 backbreaking work, deep underground, hard physical labour, heat and noise, take strict safety precautions
- 4 take pride in your work, handed down from father to son
- 5 skilled craftsmanship, take pride in your work
- 6 backbreaking work, handed down from father to son, hard physical labour, plough a field, take pride in your work

7

CD 2 Track 11

Set A

Examiner: Now in this part of the test I'm going to give each of you three pictures. I'd like you to talk about two of them on your own for about a minute, and also to answer a question briefly about your partner's pictures. Here are your pictures. They show people doing activities in remote environments. I'd like you to compare two of the pictures and say why the people might have chosen to do these activities in these remote places, and what the dangers of doing each of them might be.

CD 2 Track 12

Set B

Examiner: Now in this part of the test I'm going to give each of you three pictures. I'd like you to talk about two of them on your own for about a minute, and also to answer a question briefly about your partner's pictures.

Here are your pictures. They show people doing things in a traditional way instead of using a machine. I'd like you to compare two of the pictures and say why the people might be doing these activities in a traditional way and how difficult it might be to do these activities.

Reading and Use of English | Part 4

- 1** 1 by the time you get/arrive/come 2 have driven as fast 3 the problem solved, they tried (out)
- 2** 1 there is / there's no point (in) taking/getting 2 ahead with the project without 3 was to blame for 4 took/was far longer than 5 left by the time we got 6 had/made an impact on how / the way

Writing | Part 1

An essay

1 Suggested underlining

Technological progress makes us live faster / less time for the important things in life / entertainment / working life / health / two of the areas / your own opinion(s) / giving reasons / your own words

- 3 2 Opinions:** In the past, large amounts of time were spent on chores. Our great-grandparents could not have imagined the opportunities open to us today.

The writer uses her own words.

- 4 1** to some extent **2** As a result **3** However
4 In contrast to ourselves **5** What is more
6 in general **7** In conclusion **8** On the contrary

- 5 1** Para 3 **2** Para 2 **3** Para 4 **4** Para 1

10 A lifelong process

Listening | Part 2

- 3** She comments on all these things except climate, transport and exams.

CD 2 Track 13

Three friends and I have come here for an Arabic course at the Advanced Language Centre as part of our degree at London University. In our first year we were offered the choice of several modern languages. Persian, Turkish and Arabic were available, but I was charmed by the Arabic lecturer, who had a huge smile and a passion for his subject. As the course developed, so did my fascination with Arabic, its different alphabet – and the culture. I researched the possibility of studying in a Middle Eastern country. In the end I decided this was the best place: the city has a lively cultural scene, and its colloquial dialect is the most widely understood throughout the Arab world.

We arrived in September and got to our hotel at about ten pm. Unfortunately, the staff were nervous about letting us stay, as we were a mixed group who were all unmarried. We eventually found another hotel, where we haggled over the price of rooms. We spent the next few days settling in and getting to know the city. Then our course leader arranged flats for us to look around. We chose a light, spacious flat, with a friendly and helpful landlady. It's much better than I was used to in London. It was a fascinating time for us, but the culture shock was so great that within the first week one of our group returned home.

The area around our language centre is crowded with shops and cafés, where people sit and drink tea. We usually have lunch at the centre: small flatbreads stuffed with falafel or beans; or large circular pieces of bread, filled with strips of beef and pieces of cheese. We have two teachers. Rania is a young woman who wears a hijab that always matches her jeans. In her lessons we learn how to greet, congratulate and explain why we are studying here. Ingy dresses in a more western style: jeans, short sleeves, no hijab. With her, we do role plays – we shop for groceries and other everyday items, and we also arrange visits to places of interest. It's Ramadan at the moment, but the teachers seem relatively unaffected by it. They teach for four and a half hours a day, Sunday to Thursday, with no food or water from sunrise until sunset.

One of the most difficult challenges in learning Arabic is that to us there seems to be no connection between the written and the spoken forms. Quite apart from the

different script, the written form of the language has no vowels, making some words very difficult to understand. Also pronunciation is very tricky because lots of Arabic sounds are made at the back of the throat – something that I find really difficult and, to be honest, a bit embarrassing.

At weekends we relax at the country club – membership costs £10 a month – and lie by the pool, where the dress rules are more relaxed. In the evenings we sit in cafés by the sea and smoke apple sheesha. Soon the crescent moon will signal the end of Ramadan, and the country will show us another face.

- 5** 1 passion 2 colloquial dialect 3 mixed group
 4 culture shock 5 language centre 6 role plays
 7 of the throat 8 country club

Reading and Use of English | Part 1

- 1** 1 eight 2 four 3 before

2 Suggested answers

lifelong learning: learning that can take place at any time during a person's life, learning not limited to years of formal/compulsory education

retraining: learning how to do a different job

upgrade (your) skills: to improve how good you are at doing something, to learn new, higher-level, more up-to-date skills

- 5** 1 A 2 B 3 B 4 C 5 D 6 C 7 D 8 A

Speaking | Part 4

- 2** a 4 and 5 b 1 c 3 and 6 d 2

- 4** They discuss questions 4 and 2.

CD 2 Track 14

Laura: I'd say probably older students, for the simple reason that they're more able to work independently than younger students. This kind of learning only works if students are motivated and interested. For this reason, it works more effectively when students work in pairs or groups. Members of the group can decide what needs to be done and share out the different tasks. Later they can get back together to report the results of their efforts. I would say that anyone below secondary school age would find this difficult to do successfully.

Ivan: I agree with most of what you say, but I think we should introduce children to this kind of work while they're still in primary school, just to get them used to the idea of managing their own learning. Of course teachers need to make sure they prepare their students well; that means giving very clear instructions to make sure students know what they're supposed to be doing ...

Ivan: I think the main advantage is that students get a programme of study which is specifically designed for them. This approach lets the teacher focus on specific problems or difficulties that the individual student has, as well as adopting a learning style which suits that student. In most class teaching situations, teachers have to cater for a wide range of abilities and learning styles.

Laura: I don't disagree with that, but I think you're only looking at one aspect of education and learning. When students are in classes they're not just absorbing information. They're learning to get on with other people. Some people would say that this is at least as important as academic study.

Reading and Use of English | Part 8

3 Suggested underlining

- 1** chose / university / sold itself more convincingly
2 feels / really belongs
3 degree course / precedes / professional training
4 hoping to pass on knowledge
5 chose not to live in student accommodation / though / impressed
6 initially / location of campus / negative feature
7 impressed by teachers' enthusiasm
8 impressed / knowledgeable / people / met on open day
9 won over / friendly welcome
10 will leave university / dual qualification

- 4** 1 C 2 B 3 D 4 E 5 C 6 A 7 D 8 A
 9 B 10 E

Grammar

Expressing ability, possibility and obligation

- 1** **1** **a** possibility **b** ability **c** obligation **d** possibility
e obligation **f** obligation **g** possibility
- 2** **a** past **b** past **c** past **d** future **e** past **f** past
g future
- 2** **1** Both are correct.
a The pressure to finish is from an external source.
b The pressure to finish comes from within the speaker himself/herself.
- 2** Both are correct.
a I didn't catch a taxi because it wasn't necessary.
b I caught a taxi but it wasn't necessary.
- 3** Both are correct.
a It isn't necessary for you to go to the lecture.
b You are prohibited from going to the lecture.
- 4** **a** incorrect (We cannot use the affirmative *could* [ability] to refer to a single past occasion.)
b correct (We use *managed to* / *succeeded in* + -ing or *was able to* to refer to a single past occasion.)
- 5** Both are correct.
a It is possible for him to stay, and it is quite likely that he wants to.
b It would be possible for him to stay, but he probably doesn't want to.
- 6** **a** correct
b incorrect (We do not use *could not* to refer to a future possibility.)
- 3** **1** correct corrected **2** can't couldn't **3** He have lied
4 could can (This is a definite offer – *could* would suggest it is only a possibility.) **5** would be able to will be able to / can **6** we afford we can afford

Vocabulary

chance, occasion, opportunity and possibility

- 1** **1** opportunity **2** occasions **3** opportunity
4 possibility **5** occasion **6** possibility
- 2** **1** chance/opportunity **2** opportunity **3** possibility
4 chance **5** opportunity/chance **6** possibility/chance **7** occasion **8** chance/possibility

3 Examples

- 1** to visit / of visiting China.
2 be moved to our Paris office.
3 finding out what happened to my grandparents.
4 lose my temper with a colleague.

Writing | Part 2

A report

- 4** **a** need **b** are not **c** the main topic
Suggested headings: **1** Introduction/Aim
2 Computers **3** The canteen **4** Parking facilities / Car parking **5** Sports facilities **6** Conclusion and recommendations
- 5** **1** *Suggested answer:* It starts with an announcement of aims and ends with a general conclusion. It is organised into clear sections with informative headings. It is mostly factual, giving information based on evidence.
2 *suggest* + noun (*suggest ways*); *suggest* + *that* + *should* clause (*suggested that the gym ... should be enlarged*); *suggest* + -ing (*suggest urging drivers*) *recommend* + noun (*recommended a reduction*); *recommend* + -ing (*recommend implementing*)
3 commented on, felt (strongly) that, expressed the view that, did not mention, suggested
4 would welcome, would appreciate, would be grateful for

6 Suggested answers

- 1** host families **2** computer-assisted / computer-based learning **3** socialise **4** increased opportunities to speak **5** acquire **6** well-qualified / experienced teachers **7** class size **8** leisure activities **9** teaching methods **10** independent learning

- 7** **1** the school principal and the governors' committee
2 five
3 *Suggested answers:* Introduction/Aim, Town attractions, Educational innovations, Improvements to leisure facilities and social activities, Conclusions and recommendations

Vocabulary and grammar review |

Unit 9

- 1** 1 activity 2 action 3 activity 4 programme
5 events 6 event 7 action 8 programme
- 2** 1 apparently 2 offence 3 interviewee 4 daily
5 graphic 6 inconsiderate 7 availability
8 superiority
- 3** 1 has finished 2 is working 3 was 4 has been
working 5 I'm having 6 was working
7 arrived 8 played

Vocabulary and grammar review |

Unit 10

- 1** 1 an equal 2 last 3 historic 4 slight 5 miss,
golden 6 real 7 solemn 8 second
- 2** 1 knowledge 2 activities 3 realistic 4 valuable
5 readily 6 learning 7 majority 8 relevance
- 3** 1 won't have to / won't need to
2 must, didn't have to / didn't need to
3 must / have to, have to / need to
4 needn't / don't need to / don't have to
5 mustn't, have to 6 need to / must / have to
- 4** 1 could can / will be able to 2 correct 3 could can
4 could pass managed to pass / succeeded in passing
5 could be able to could / would be able to

11 Being somewhere else

Starting off

1 Possible answers

Photo 2: traditional market, stalls, sellers, bargaining-hunting, souvenir-hunting, haggle, traditional craftwork, local products

Photo 3: Arctic/Antarctic cruise, cruise ship, ice floes, icebergs, glaciers, sub-zero temperatures, melting ice, global warming

Photo 4: jungle trail, deep in the jungle, thick vegetation, heavy undergrowth, easy to get lost, exhaustion, dangerous animals, off the beaten track

Photo 5: mountain track, steep slope, high peaks, remote region, long trek, rough path, heavy backpacks, rugged landscape

Photo 6: using local transport, crowded decks, stifling heat, off the beaten track, away from other tourists, seeing how people live, meeting local people

Listening | Part 1

- 1** 1 three 2 different themes 3 A, B or C, twice
4 read the questions and underline the key ideas
5 listen to the whole extract before making your choices

2 Suggested underlining:

1 1 complaint / man / the journey 2 woman react
3 man / journey should go ahead 4 agree / if /
don't reach their objective 5 man / travellers gain
more 6 woman / feel / now

- 3** 1 A 2 C 3 C 4 B 5 B 6 C

CD 2 Track 15

Extract One

Woman: It'll be getting dark soon, won't it? What about over there? That looks quite a good place to stop and camp for the night, doesn't it?

Man: Maybe.

Woman: Very peaceful.

Man: Don't count on it! If I'd known about the mosquitoes, I'd never have signed up for this. But none of that would matter if, you know, there were rapids, white water, crocodiles and panoramic landscapes. I mean, we're just getting bitten on a muddy river closed

in by dull, monotonous little trees! It's not as if we had to come here. There were lots of other places we could have gone if only we'd realised.

Woman: Oh, Don. If only you'd put on some repellent! And if you'd please just stop moaning for a while, perhaps we could start enjoying ourselves a bit. Just think what a lovely change this is from city life!

Man: Some change! Even if we'd stayed at home, it'd be better because I'd be relaxing in front of the telly right now, instead of paddling up this miserable river.

Woman: Don!

Extract Two

Woman: So, what will we do if the weather breaks? Do you think we'll have to call it a day?

Man: Call it a day? No way! Not after all the hassle we've had to get this far, all the money we're raising and all those people we'd be letting down! Look, we're taking all the right equipment – wet weather gear, good boots, you really can't ask for more. Anyway, we've committed ourselves to this thing, so we've got to go through with it. Look, if things start looking really bad, we can always put the walk off for a while and set off a bit later.

Woman: OK, but we were warned about this, you remember. North-west Spain can be pretty icy at this time of year.

Man: Of course, but that's all part of it, isn't it? And if we don't do it, we'll never live it down. I'm sure we'll make it, I mean, our names will be dirt if we don't.

Woman: That's a good point, and I guess they'd pay up anyway even if we didn't make it, wouldn't they?

Man: Hopefully, and anyway a little hardship never did anyone any harm.

Extract Three

Man: So, you managed to get off the beaten tourist track during your trip too, Kate.

Woman: That's right, and, like you, to places which are really for the more intrepid traveller.

Man: Right. It's a good idea for people going there on their own to do bit of advance planning, but not too much, because I think if you leave yourself open to whatever comes up, it can be very rewarding. Of course you'll form all sorts of opinions about what you see more or less on the spur of the moment, but that doesn't matter, because if you're open-minded about things, you'll soon discover you were mistaken about a lot of them. And you have to take the rough with the

smooth – you can't expect it to be all plain sailing when you're travelling to oases and places like that.

Woman: I agree, and I really appreciated sharing buses and ferries with all sorts of interesting people – you know, I learned a lot about the country just from chatting to them. It could all have been quite dull otherwise, you know, waiting for transport in villages and so on. At times, I felt I wanted the journey to go on forever. It wasn't all delightful, but there was something unexpected round every corner.

Man: That's right.

Vocabulary

Phrasal verbs

1 1 f 2 b 3 e 4 d 5 i 6 a 7 c 8 g 9 h

**2 1 come up 2 signed up 3 never live it/them down
4 let ... down 5 put off 6 pay up 7 setting off
8 count on 9 go through with**

Grammar

Conditionals

1 1 a and j 2 d 3 b and c 4 e, f, g and h, 5 i

2 Suggested answers

- 1 Because the speaker is imagining an activity in progress at the moment, as an alternative to what he is actually doing.
- 2 past time (they're both 3rd conditional)
- 3 Because it was snowing throughout the period in which they were waiting. If the speaker had said 'hadn't snowed', we would understand that the snow started and stopped during this period.
- 4 wouldn't have insisted
- 5 'If he hadn't been so stubborn' would describe how he was at the time when he insisted; 'If he wasn't so stubborn' describes how his behaviour or personality is generally.

- 3 **1 hadn't left, wouldn't be wandering 2 wasn't/ weren't rushing, would/'d be 3 wasn't/weren't, would/'d probably have reached / probably would have reached 4 would/'d try, were/was, would/'d have 5 were, would/'d carry 6 wouldn't have happened, had been concentrating 7 would ever abandon, was travelling 8 would/'d like, will/'ll show**

4 1 wouldn't won't 2 send would send 3 am will be
4 stand be standing 5 won't wouldn't 6 have-
travelled travel

5 1 can count on you to
2 as/so long as we set
3 be working late tonight unless
4 would not / wouldn't have presented her with
5 would be grateful if you would / you'd / you could
6 had not / hadn't come up

Reading and Use of English | Part 5

1 1 T 2 F Read the text quickly to get an idea of its structure and what it is about before dealing with the questions. 3 F The questions are answered in the same order. 4 T

3 Any or all of these reasons: to disappear, to break out of his predictable routine, to be inaccessible / unobtainable / out of touch; also for pleasure, for untold tales, hope, comedy and sweetness, to wander the hinterland, for revenge for being kept waiting, to get away from domestic life and modern technology, in the spirit of discovery

4 1 A 2 D 3 A 4 B 5 D 6 C

Vocabulary

at, in and on to express location

1 1 in 2 in 3 on, at, in 4 on 5 at, at 6 at 7 in

2 b on (4) c on (3) d in (1, 2, 3, 7)

3 1 of in 2 at on 3 of in 4 at in 5 at on 6 at on
7 at in 8 in on 9 at on 10 to in

Reading and Use of English | Part 2

- 1** 1 eight
 - 2 Read the whole text quickly, read before and after each gap.
 - 3 Think about what type of word you need.
 - 4 It is essential: if you spell the word wrongly, you lose the mark.
 - 5 Read through the completed text to make sure your answers make sense.
- 3** 1 They looked for it on the Internet, but they finally found it through an island broker.

4 1 What 2 on 3 about 4 else 5 providing/
provided 6 until 7 enough 8 sooner

6 1 Unless 2 on 3 far 4 out 5 what 6 most 7 not
8 as

Speaking | Part 1

1 Suggested answer: all except 3 and 7

- 2** 1 Laura: 6 Daniel: 4 Marta: 1 or 8
- 2 Laura and Marta
- 3 No, because sometimes they're describing reality rather than an imagined situation or event.
- 4 Marta – wonderful, such a lovely area, fabulous, great, I'd really love that, the chance of a lifetime. She also shows enthusiasm through her intonation.
- 5 They use their own vocabulary. This shows range of vocabulary, knowledge of synonyms, understanding of the question, confidence with English.

► CD 2 Track 16

Laura: Well, it depends where to. I'm certainly not afraid of taking risks for a bit of excitement and I get a real buzz from a bit of danger. But it would have to be a journey to somewhere interesting, somewhere that was worth visiting. I wouldn't want to do it just for the excitement.

Daniel: Well, it certainly helps with the day-to-day problems like buying tickets, getting information and so on. But I'd say it's generally better to try to speak the local language if you can, because then you can get to know people, talk to them on their own terms, and that's when real communication starts happening. On the other hand, you can't learn the language of every country you want to visit, and in those cases English is definitely better than nothing.

Marta: Normally I go to Croatia and the Adriatic Sea for a couple of weeks in the summer, which is wonderful, it's such a lovely area, but the chance to go even further afield and have some completely different experiences, well, for example to spend two or three months travelling round Africa, would be fabulous. It'd be great to see some of those places you only normally see on television, for example the Ngorongoro Crater or the Kruger National Park. I'd really love that. It'd be the chance of a lifetime!

Writing | Part 2

A review

- 1** *Suggested underlining:* local people / hotels / help visitors to choose / review recommends two hotels in your area / two different types of visitor / what sort of visitor / why
- 3** Plans A and B are both fine but other ways of organising the review (C) are also possible. The important thing is that the plans cover all the task requirements.
- 4** Plan C
- Para 1:* Introduction: why business travellers don't like the same hotels as tourists
- Para 2:* Rooms and prices in hotel 1 – suits low-budget tourists
- Para 3:* Other features of hotel 1 – some positive and negative points
- Para 4:* Features of hotel 2 – suits business travellers
- Para 5:* Brief rounding off
- 5** 1 However 2 Equally 3 though 4 as 5 both
6 An added attraction is that 7 As 8 together with 9 not only
- 6** 1 compact, moderately-priced, elegant, moderately-sized
2 clean, airy, quite basic, luxurious, spacious, well-equipped
3 friendly, helpful, competent, professional
- 7** 1 b (There is a lot of information, but it uses contractions and addresses the reader as 'you'.)
2 using contractions and addressing the reader as 'you'

12 The living world

Starting off

- 1** 1 A and F
2 *Suggested answers*
- A** green energy / alternative sources of energy / greenhouse gases
- B** animal conservation / protection of endangered species
- C** effects of pollution on human health
- D** pollution / greenhouse gases / global warming
- E** energy conservation
- F** climate change / global warming
- 3** A and B

Listening | Part 2

- 1** 1 F You have to complete eight sentences.
2 F No more than three words will be missing from each sentence.
3 T
4 F You should read the gapped sentences before you listen.
5 F Write what you think you hear, even if you are not sure. (Your answer may be correct. If left blank, it will always be wrong.)
- 3** *Resources for food:* aquatic mammals such as seals, walruses, and whales
Other resources: stone (for houses), wood, animal skins, snow

CD 2 Track 17

Presenter: The Inuit, or Eskimo people, live in the Arctic and sub-Arctic regions of Siberia, Greenland and Canada. Altogether there are more than 100,000 Inuit, most of whom live near the sea, hunting aquatic mammals such as seals, walruses and whales. European whalers, who arrived in the latter part of the nineteenth century, had a great impact on the Inuit. They brought their religion but they also brought their infectious diseases, diseases to which the Inuit had no immunity and which, as a direct consequence of this, reduced the population in some areas.

In the past, the Inuit had several different forms of traditional housing. In Greenland, they often lived in

permanent stone houses. Along the shores of Siberia, they lived in villages made up of wooden houses. Summer housing for many Inuit was a skin tent, while in the winter igloos, houses made of snow, were common.

Wherever they live today, the Inuit are involved in the modern world. They have wholeheartedly adopted much of its technology, as well as its clothing, and the design of their living spaces. Their economic, religious and governmental institutions have also been heavily influenced by the cultures of their near neighbours in Europe and America.

- 4 1** educated adults
- 2** physical surroundings
- 3** (daily) weather markers
- 4** disturbing accounts
- 5** (strong) scientific evidence
- 6** coastlines
- 7** deep understanding
- 8** adapt

CD 2 Track 18

Professor: Today I'm going to be looking at some of the ways in which climate change is affecting the life and culture of the Inuit people. I suppose it would be true to say that in today's world most educated adults are aware of global warming and climate change. But how many of us living in modern cities, cities with a seemingly inexhaustible supply of electricity into our homes and places of work, how many of us are actually affected by these phenomena in our daily lives? The Inuit, however, are being affected in a very real way, on a daily basis, by a frightening deterioration in their physical surroundings. They see melting ice sheets, changing tides, and notice the thinning of the polar bear population. They see how the daily weather markers on which they've relied for thousands of years are becoming less predictable as their fragile climate changes. In the past, if there was a ring around the moon, it meant a change of weather in the next few days. Now such signs mean nothing.

But these are just the most immediately visible indications of the changes taking place. Talk to the Inuit elders and hunters who depend on the land and you'll hear disturbing accounts of deformed fish, diseased caribou and baby seals left by their mothers to starve. In the last year or so, robins have appeared where robins have never been seen before. Interestingly, there's no word for 'robin' in the Inuit language.

These ideas are not simply based on what the Inuit themselves have observed; there's increasingly strong scientific evidence that the Arctic, this desert of snow, ice and killing cold wind, is thawing. Glaciers are receding; coastlines are receding and other large bodies of fresh water are no longer there. Autumn freezes are coming later and the winters are not as cold.

For years, what the Inuit elders and hunters understood about the Arctic climate, known as 'traditional knowledge', was largely disregarded by the Western world. It was often dismissed as anecdotal and unreliable by scientists who visited the area with their recording devices and their theories. Some even viewed the Inuit as ignorant about a land which they've inhabited for thousands of years. But more recently, scientists have begun paying attention to what the Inuit are reporting. According to geophysicist George Hobson, traditional Inuit knowledge was just waiting to be passed down. He says this deep understanding of the land and its wildlife have enabled the Inuit people to survive in the harsh Arctic environment.

For thousands of years, the Inuit have lived by rules that require them to respect animals and the land. They've adapted to the cold climate as they hunted seals, walruses and whales. Siloah Atagoojuk, an elderly Inuit woman who lives in the city of Iqaluit, doesn't want to pretend she knows more than anyone else – nor does she try to blame anyone for the change in her environment. She's simply worried. Her world is not as it used to be and her people may not have the capacity to adapt to it. She says that the Inuit have known all along that there would be a time when the Earth would be destroyed or would destroy itself. She believes that this process has begun.

Vocabulary

Prepositions following verbs

1 1 on **2** on **3** on **4** into **5** to **6** for

2 **1** to in **2** in on **3** on in **4** in on **5** in on
6 with to **7** in on **8** for to

Reading and Use of English | Part 7

1 1 six 2 is one 3 gapped text 4 the structure of the text

3 1 a The article does not explain exactly how parrots learn, but does give these suggestions for why they have the ability to speak: their intelligence has evolved, they can 'vocalise' words, they live a long time so have time to learn.

b Yes – see paragraph 6.

c No others are mentioned (primates, e.g. chimpanzees, can communicate but can't speak).

2 The photos show the parrot communicating with Dr Pepperberg and choosing letters.

4 1 D 2 G 3 C 4 E 5 A 6 B (Para F not used.)

Grammar

Nouns and articles

1 1 elephant, plant **2** trees, elephants, years
3 bark, skin, tissue **4** skin, tissue (a skin = the whole covering of an animal, especially used when this covering has been removed from a dead animal; a tissue = a paper handkerchief) **5** Africa, Earth

- 2 1 a** the taste or the drink in general **b** a cup of coffee
2 a mass of hair **b** a single strand of hair
3 a the substance **b** different types of cheese
4 a heaviness **b** individual pieces of metal used in weight-lifting
5 a the substance **b** spectacles used to help your eyesight
6 a knowledge, understanding **b** events or activities
7 a physical activity **b** sets of questions

3 1 The **2 a** **3 a** **4 a** **5 Ø, Ø, Ø** **6** the **7 a, a**
8 the **9 the** **10 Ø, a**

4 (The numbers 1–10 refer to the sentences in Exercise 3.)
1 1b **2 2a** **3 2d** **4 2c** **5 3b, 3b, 3a** **6 1a** **7 2a, 2b**
8 1d **9 1b** **10 3a, 2a**

5 1 The **2 the** **3 the** **4 a** **5 the** **6 Ø** **7 a** **8 the**
9 a **10 the** **11 Ø** **12 a** **13 Ø** **14 a**

- 6 1** a suit and tie, a formal occasion
2 the/a job (the job = the particular one we're referring to)
3 the advantages and (the) disadvantages
4 the Internet
5 the homeless
6 A The most important thing
7 a the capital
8 the technology
9 a basic knowledge
10 the-a degree, the work in the IT

Vocabulary

Word formation

1 apology; communication, communicator; conclusion; conviction; description; performance, performer; proposition, proposal; prosperity; suspect, suspicion

2 assume, behave, combine, evolve, explain, progress, respond

3 Examples

The fraudster admitted the offence and said he wouldn't con'test the case.

Even though my team lost the match, it was a great 'contest.'

A lot of evidence is needed if they are ever going to con'vect him.

Three 'convicts' have escaped from the prison on the outskirts of the city.

They say the price of oil is going to in'crease.

There was a significant 'increase' in rainfall last year.

Don't in'sult me like that again.

Don't take that as an 'insult.' I'm just saying what I think.

Many countries ex'port goods to other countries.

There was a fall in the value of our 'exports' last year.

They're going to pre'sent the best students with special awards.

I need to buy a birthday 'present' for my brother.

The company I work for pro'duces components for laptop computers.

I always prefer to buy fresh farm 'produce' if I can.

If students do well in the test, they can pro'gress to the next level.

I think I'm making good 'progress.'

Students are planning to protest about the increase in their university fees.

They're having a meeting to plan their 'protest tomorrow evening.

The chief of police expects people to rebel against the recent rise in taxes.

He's always been a bit of a 'rebel, even when he was a small child.

They made me an offer I couldn't refuse.

Our 'refuse is collected every Friday.

You shouldn't reject ideas out of hand.

The things in that shop are very cheap because they're factory 'rejects.

CD 2 Track 19

Examiner: Now I'd like you to talk about something together for about two minutes. Here are some environmental threats that can affect people's lives. Talk to each other about how these threats can affect people's lives.

Anna: Well, this one's really relevant at the moment because it's in the news now – literally as we speak. There are lots of forest fires all over Australia and they're having a terrible effect on people's lives. The experts seem to think it's one of the results of climate change and global warming.

Lukas: Yes, but forest fires only affect certain parts of the world, don't they? I mean, I'd say flooding is probably more widespread, it affects more different places – Asia, America and Europe. They say that's also connected with global warming, don't they?

Anna: Yes, and that's only going to get worse if the ice caps continue melting at the current rate. And flooding can cause terrible damage – at least as bad as fires.

Lukas: And the opposite, drought, of course. In some ways that's worse than floods because more people are affected. Droughts often lead to poor harvests, which means people have no food and have to travel for days, often on foot, to refugee camps where they're given food. But their lives can be ruined.

Anna: That used to just be in Africa, didn't it? I think it's now beginning to happen in parts of southern Europe. I remember a few years ago when all those people died in a heat wave in France.

Lukas: I'm not sure that was quite like the situation in Africa, but drought and flooding are definitely more common than they used to be, and that's really worrying. And what about pollution as well, especially air pollution, which seems to be on the minds of many people at the moment? I'm sure that's going to affect us – perhaps more in the long term than now.

Anna: Do you think so? It already does affect us, doesn't it? I mean, think about how many more people there are now with allergies and breathing problems than there used to be.

Lukas: Very true. And finally, there's fossil fuel consumption. Do you think that's really a threat?

Anna: Yes, I do – in two different ways. When we burn fossil fuels like coal and oil to make energy, that causes air pollution, doesn't it? And secondly if the price of oil

Speaking | Part 3

- 1** 1 your partner 2 written prompts 3 three 4 more
5 need not

- 2** 1 *photo 1: forest fires*

photo 2: drought conditions

photo 3: rainforest clearance

- 2 air pollution, flood damage, fossil fuel consumption

3 Suggested answers

forest fires: arson, carelessness, discarded cigarettes

drought conditions: global warming, burning of fossil fuels

rainforest clearance: wood used for timber, land used for grazing animals

air pollution: vehicle exhaust fumes, heavy industry, factory emissions

flood damage: climate change, global warming

fossil fuel consumption: population growth, increase in number of vehicles

4 Suggested answers

- 1 They cover all the threats in their discussion, but on forest fires and flooding they don't talk directly enough about how people's lives are affected – too much time is spent talking about causes rather than effects. They are better when detailing the effects of droughts, pollution and fossil fuel consumption.

- 2 They could focus more directly on the question asked by the examiner in the first part of their discussion.

goes on rising, this will damage the world economy, and that'll probably lead to all kinds of political tensions – perhaps even wars. Who knows?

Examiner: Thank you.

- 5 Yes, they reach agreement. They decide that drought poses the greatest threat.

CD 2 Track 20

Examiner Thank you. Now you have about a minute to decide which of the problems poses the greatest threat to us.

Anna: Which one of these five do we think is going to be the biggest threat?

Lukas: It's very difficult to say, isn't it? They all pose terrible dangers – but perhaps the time scale is different.

Anna: What do you mean?

Lukas: Well, they all affect us now, but in the future some will get worse and some will improve.

Anna: Do you think so?

Lukas: Yes, I do. For example, in the short term, I think fossil fuel consumption poses the greatest threat, because it affects us now, but eventually we'll run out of fossil fuels, which means that in the future we won't be able to consume them. By that time of course the other threats like air pollution, fires, flooding and droughts will be worse because of increases in global warming.

Anna: You could be right. So what are we going to decide? Personally, I think drought is going to pose the greatest threat, especially if the population of the world goes on growing.

Lukas: Yes, I think I agree. If harvests fail, millions of people can starve to death, whereas at least in the case of forest fires and flooding, people usually escape, even though their lives may be changed for ever.

Anna: OK, let's say we think that drought poses the greatest long-term threat.

Reading and Use of English | Part 3

1 Suggested answers

friend: friendship, friendliness, unfriendliness; befriend (unfriend – Facebook); friendly, unfriendly

help: helper, helpfulness, helplessness; helpful, unhelpful, helpless; helpfully, unhelpfully, helplessly

know: knowledge; knowledgeable, knowing, unknowing, unknown, unknowable; knowledgeably, knowingly, unknowingly

live: life, liveliness; lively, alive, lifeless

move: movement, removal; remove; moving, unmoved, movable, immovable; movingly, movably, immovably

nation: nationality, nationalist, nationhood; nationalise, denationalise, renationalise; national, international, multinational; nationally, internationally

sense: sensitivity, sensibility, sensitisation, desensitisation; sensitise, desensitise; sensitive, insensitive, sensible, insensible, senseless, sensitised, desensitised; sensitively, insensitively, sensibly, insensibly

2 1 impossible impossible 2 demonstrators demonstrators, unstabilise destabilise

3 uncomfortable uncomfortable 4 earing careful,
breakable breakable 5 unsatisfaction dissatisfaction

6 innovatant innovative 7 mistract distract

8 edable edible

3 1 finding 2 disappearance 3 environmentalists 4 creatures 5 clearance(s) 6 determination 7 national 8 reduction

Writing | Part 1

A proposal

1 F Proposals are normally written for organisations, clubs, colleagues, etc.

2 T

3 F You should support suggestions and recommendations with factual information.

4 T

5 F The style can be less formal if you are writing for colleagues or fellow members of a club.

3 Suggested answers

- 1** In general the question is well answered, though the inclusion of unnecessary travel may be outside the direct control of the college authorities. Factual information is included, e.g. *The college currently uses twice as much printing paper as it did two years ago. This is despite the fact that information is stored on computers.*
- 2** Yes. The clear, simple headings help the organisation.

4 1 the college

- 2** the fact that the college is using twice as much paper as it did before
3 printing documents
4 lights and equipment
5 the fact that students are making unnecessary journeys
6 students
7 the use of public transport or bicycles

Reference words like these are used to link sentences to each other and to avoid repetition.

- 5 1** is stored, should be printed, should be required, are not turned off, are left, should be reminded, are not needed, should be advised, should be used, were implemented

2 *Suggested answer:* The passive is commonly used in formal contexts. It focuses on the action rather than the person who does the action – this makes the language impersonal, which is appropriate for a text of this kind.

3 a, b, d, f

4 a People need to be encouraged to use the recycling bins.

b If the air conditioning system was/were replaced, less electricity would be wasted.

c *Cannot be changed. The verb has no direct object which could become the subject of a passive verb.*

d The roof should have been insulated when the building was constructed.

e *Cannot be changed. Neither verb has a direct object.*

f At present the problem is not being taken seriously enough.

g *Cannot be changed. There is no passive form for the present perfect continuous.*

Vocabulary and grammar review |**Unit 11**

- 1** 1 sign up 2 call ... up 3 called off 4 drop out
 5 put off 6 pay up

- 2** 1 nothing to do with 2 out of touch 3 kept waiting
 4 sick and tired of 5 the whole point of 6 without a trace 7 get your hands on

- 3** 1 at 2 at 3 in, at 4 on 5 at/in, on 6 on

- 4** 1 not overslept, he would not / wouldn't have
 2 had arrived/been on time for
 3 were better, she could have applied
 4 would be (most/very/extremely/sincerely) grateful if you
 5 had not / hadn't been for Bruno's advice
 6 would not / wouldn't be taking part in

Vocabulary and grammar review |**Unit 12**

- 1** 1 unfriendly 2 environmental 3 disabilities
 4 knowledge 5 appearance 6 creatively 7 clarify
 8 movement

- 2** 1 with in 2 to on 3 in to 4 correct 5 for to 6 for on 7 to on 8 correct

- 3** 1 Ø 2 the 3 a 4 the 5 Ø 6 the 7 Ø 8 the 9 Ø
 10 Ø 11 the 12 Ø 13 an 14 Ø 15 Ø 16 the

- 4** 1 to 2 In 3 with 4 not 5 need 6 out 7 The
 8 rather

13 Health and lifestyle

Starting off

1 Suggested answers

- 1 Advantages:** keeps you physically fit, helps keep heart and lungs healthy, helps prevent obesity
Disadvantages: can cause injury and pain – bruises, muscle strain, fractures, etc.
- 2 Advantages:** prevents childhood diseases, reduces the spread of infectious diseases
Disadvantages: some vaccinations may cause illness in a minority, some people have a fear of needles
- 3 Advantages:** clean air and environment, less stressful life, less traffic
Disadvantages: allergic reactions to plants, venomous spiders and snakes, fewer medical services, smaller hospitals
- 4 Advantages:** more medical services, larger hospitals
Disadvantages: pollution, risk of catching contagious diseases, heavy traffic causing pollution and accidents

Listening | Part 3

- 1** 1 conversation 2 four 3 six 4 four 5 express the same ideas 6 before 7 after the speaker has finished talking
- 3** 1 Yes. (Every year more people visit their doctor with asthma and various food allergies.)
2 20%–30% of the population of Britain and the USA
3 air conditioning and central heating

CD 2 Track 21

Presenter: These days we're all too familiar with the word *allergy* and phrases like 'I'm allergic to pollen or eggs or cats', and it's generally accepted that allergies are more widespread in the population than in the past. Is this because the subject is getting increased exposure in the media, or are we really becoming less able to protect ourselves against those substances which cause allergies? These are just some of the questions we'll be tackling in today's phone-in programme. In the studio today is allergy specialist Dr Mohamed Bawadi to answer your questions. Welcome, Dr Bawadi.

Dr Bawadi: Thank you. I should start by saying that the medical profession takes allergies very seriously and we

recognise that severe allergies can be a cause of great anxiety for some individuals.

Presenter: OK, thank you. Our first caller today is Tim from Edinburgh. Tim, what's your question?

Tim: Hi, right, well, I'm a hay fever sufferer – I'm very allergic to pollen from grass and certain trees, especially in the spring. What I don't understand is that my allergy didn't begin until I was in my mid-thirties. I'd really like to know why it appeared so late, and am I stuck with it now?

Presenter: Dr Bawadi?

Dr Bawadi: Hello, Tim. Your story's a very common one. The fact is that allergies don't discriminate – they're no more likely to affect children than old people. I'm afraid they can develop at any time of life from birth to sixty and beyond. This is because an allergy is a mistaken response of our immune system to a harmless substance. As to whether you're stuck with your allergy, that's a less straightforward question. The best way to treat any allergy is to avoid contact with whatever causes the allergic reaction. Someone who was allergic to eggs would find it fairly easy to avoid eating anything containing eggs, whereas you would find it impossible to avoid all contact with pollen unless you lived in a desert or a coastal area. And I'd add, Tim, that there's now research evidence from around the world that the most common age to develop an allergy is in your late teens, so you've not done too badly.

Presenter: Our next caller is Arabella from Amsterdam in the Netherlands. What's your question, Arabella?

Arabella: Hello. I'm allergic to peanuts – so of course I have to be really careful about foods which contain even the smallest traces of peanuts, but what I'd like to know is whether I'm likely to pass this allergy on to any children I may have in the future.

Presenter: Thank you. Dr Bawadi?

Dr Bawadi: Hello, Arabella. This is an interesting question. In developed countries all children have a twelve percent risk of developing an allergy. In the case of your child, this would rise to twenty percent. However, if the child's father also had an allergy of some kind, this risk would increase to forty percent.

Arabella: So, what about if the father and the mother have the same allergy?

Dr Bawadi: Then I'm afraid there's a seventy percent chance that the child will develop that allergy.

Presenter: Thank you, Arabella. I hope that answers your question. Just before we move on to the next caller, can I ask you whether we are in fact seeing a higher

incidence of allergies in the population than in the past?

Dr Bawadi: We most certainly are. Even though we're getting better at diagnosing and treating some allergies, there's a year-on-year increase in the number of patients visiting their doctor with asthma and a wide range of food allergies. Recent research has shown that in Britain and the USA, between twenty and thirty percent of the population suffer from some kind of allergy.

Presenter: Why is this happening?

Dr Bawadi: Well, it's a complex problem. There are many theories about why more people are affected by allergies. Certain aspects of modern living are blamed by some experts. For example, the widespread use of air conditioning and central heating, combined with the fact that more of us now work in offices, is thought to have led to a significant increase in allergic reactions to dust and mould. Vehicle exhaust fumes are widely regarded as the main factor responsible for the increase in asthma in the under-fives. You only have to walk through the streets of a large modern city to understand the strength of that argument. On the other hand, some experts believe that in this modern age we're obsessed with cleanliness, while others believe that vaccinations to protect our children from certain diseases may actually weaken their immune system and so make them less resistant to allergens.

Presenter: Thank you, that's very interesting. Let's move on, we have several people waiting on the phone-in line. Let's speak to ...

5 1 B 2 C 3 C 4 D 5 D 6 B

Vocabulary

Prepositions following adjectives

1 1 with 2 to 3 to 4 at 5 with

2 1 by to 2 correct 3 for with 4 to for 5 for to
6 for to 7 with of 8 to of

Grammar

Ways of contrasting ideas

1 1 whereas 2 but 3 However 4 Even though
5 while

2 1 whereas, but, Even though, while
2 but
3 However

4 *Suggested answers:* although, though, despite /
in spite of (the fact that), (and) yet, Nevertheless,
Even so, All the same, Still, On the other hand

5 In sentence 1 *but* could replace *whereas*.
In sentence 4 *Although* or *Despite* / *In spite of the fact that* could replace *Even though*.

3 1 although / even though 2 but 3 whereas/but
4 However 5 Although / Even though

4 *Sentence 1:* I recognised you as soon as I saw you, in spite of / despite the fact that we'd never met before. / I recognised you as soon as I saw you, in spite of / despite (my) never having met you before.

Sentence 5: In spite of / Despite the fact that I've been here twice before, I'd forgotten where the post office was. / In spite of / Despite having been here twice before, I'd forgotten where the post office was.

5 1 *Despite* Although / Even though / Despite the fact that 2 *however* but /. However, 3 *However* Even though / Although / Despite the fact that 4 *Though* However, 5 *where* whereas/but 6 *While* Although / Even though / Despite the fact that

Speaking | Part 2

1 1 F You have to speak about two photos.

2 F You have to answer two questions. 3 T 4 T
5 T 6 F Correct a mistake if you notice you have made one.

2 1 *Suggested answer:* They are all physical activities which people do to keep fit.

5 *Suggested answers*

1 The woman fulfils the task requirements better than the man, but although she talks coherently about why the activities are popular, she doesn't say how effective they are. She talks about her own personal preferences, which are irrelevant

here as they are not part of the task.

The man talks about all three activities instead of selecting two. He doesn't fulfil the requirements of either part of the task he is set, although he does say a little about the qualities needed for rock climbing. Like the woman, he talks about his own personal preferences instead of saying why people participate in the activities.

2 Advice to the woman: Listen carefully to what you are asked to do. Don't be sidetracked into talking about yourself.

Advice to the man: Select two of the photos to talk about. Listen carefully to what you are asked to do. Think for a few seconds before you start to talk. Once you have started talking, try not to pause too often.

CD 2 Track 22

Set A

Marta: OK, I'm going to choose gym exercises and walking, I think, because they seem to me to be quite different. I think gym exercises are becoming more and more popular because people don't have the opportunity to go out into the countryside, especially if they live in a town – so lots of people join a gym because they think that's a good way to keep fit. I think it's to do with time and space and not having the opportunity to walk. Whereas walking is something you can do only if you have access to the countryside – which a lot of people don't have these days. Anyone can join a gym and plan their visits to fit in with their other commitments. Personally, I prefer walking to gym exercises, which I think are dreadfully boring. Walking's more interesting because you get to see the countryside.

Set B

Ivan: The three photographs here show very demanding activities. Perhaps the most physically demanding would be either rowing or cycling because you're exercising more parts of the body, but then again for rock climbing you need a certain level of physical fitness ... I've never actually been rock climbing myself, but I know someone who does it regularly and he's very fit ... I suppose if I had to choose one activity to help me keep fit, it'd have to be rowing, I think, because it works the muscles in almost every part of your body – especially your arms, legs, back and stomach ... I did it a couple of times when I was a kid and I remember it was absolutely exhausting ... Cycling on the other hand is an everyday activity you can do at any time ... and you don't need anywhere special to do it.

Reading and Use of English | Part 8

1 1 ten 2 before 3 questions or statements 4 all
5 likely

2 1 photo 1: hurling photo 2: tossing the caber
photo 3: polo photo 4: judo
2 photo 1: teams, men (there is a similar game for women called camogie), Ireland
photo 2: individuals, men, Scotland
photo 3: teams, men and women, international
photo 4: individuals, men and women, international

3 Suggested underlining

- 1 hit a ball / equipment and parts of their body
- 2 traditional native sport
- 3 use their bodies to obstruct
- 4 protective equipment optional
- 5 disapproves of players looking
- 6 funding from business
- 7 not played all the year
- 8 mainly for pleasure and relaxation
- 9 ball / picked up easily
- 10 holding / each other's clothing

5 1 B 2 E 3 D 4 B 5 A 6 E 7 D 8 A 9 C 10 A

- 6 2 Turmeque, a much more ancient version of the sport, has been played for over 500 years
- 3 body-checking is an integral part of the men's game, and stick-checks to the arms and hands are considered legal
- 4 No special clothing or padding is worn by players, but a plastic helmet with a faceguard is recommended.
- 5 they should always look over each other's shoulders, because it is considered more gentlemanly to wrestle by touch and feel than by sight
- 6 Most teams are sponsored by local companies.
- 7 Lacrosse is Canada's national summer sport
- 8 This form of glíma has always been a friendly recreational sport
- 9 Teams fight for possession of a ball which has six conveniently sized handles
- 10 grasping a belt worn around their opponent's waist and thighs

Grammar

The language of comparison

- 1** 1 far the oldest 2 Most importantly 3 more gentlemanly 4 much more violently 5 Fewer points 6 no more than 7 further than 8 the most 9 more and more 10 more 11 much more ancient 12 no different

- 2** 1 nouns, long adjectives, adverbs

2 *Less* can be an adverb (e.g. *People smoke less than they used to.*) and may be followed by an adjective or another adverb (e.g. *He's less practical than his brother. She works less efficiently than her sister.*). *Less* can also be a determiner followed by an uncountable noun (e.g. *We have less money than we thought.*).

Fewer is a determiner and is followed by a plural noun (e.g. *These days fewer people smoke than in the past.*).

- 3 can be carried for no more than four steps = can be carried for up to four steps / cannot be carried for more than four steps

- 4 by far = easily, without any doubt, certainly

- 5 The modern game is not very different from this. (Notice that *no* becomes *not*.)

- 6 a bit, a little, slightly or no (I'm feeing a bit / a little / slightly / no better now.)

- 3 1 Many people earn less money than they did five years ago.

- 2 Finding a new job was less difficult than / not as difficult as I expected it to be.

- 3 That was the funniest film I've ever seen.

- 4 There are fewer unemployed people now than there were ten years ago. / Fewer people are unemployed now than ten years ago.

- 5 Working conditions aren't as good as / than they used to be.

- 6 Petrol is becoming more and more expensive.

- 4 1 much more 2 worst worse 3 like as 4 less fewer

- 5 harder hardest 6 fewer less 7 difficult even-more even more difficult 8 much far / a lot

Reading and Use of English | Part 3

- 1** 1 eight 2 one 3 yes 4 You can add a prefix or suffix. 5 Correct spelling is essential. 6 Read through the whole text, checking that the completed sentences make sense and are grammatically correct.

- 2** 2 intention; intentional, unintentional; intentionally, unintentionally

- 3 application, applicant, appliance; applicable, inapplicable; applicably

- 4 explosion, explosive; explosive; explosively

- 5 advice, adviser/advisor; advisory, advisable, inadvisable; advisedly

- 6 knowledge; knowledgeable, knowing, unknowing, known, unknown; knowledgeably, knowingly unknowingly

- 7 repetition, repetitiveness; repetitive, repetitious, repeated; repetitively, repeatedly

- 8 inclusion, inclusiveness; inclusive; inclusively

- 9 description; descriptive, describable, indescribable; descriptively, indescribably

- 3** 1 unlimited/limitless 2 incapable 3 soreness

- 4 involvement 5 satisfaction 6 evolution

- 7 logically 8 enable

Writing | Part 2

A letter

- 1** 1 three 2 review 3 (target) reader 4 260 5 sections, heading 6 persuade/convince

- 3** Yes, it covers all parts of the task.

- 4** *Suggested answers*

Para 1: introduction – a general statement of the purpose of the letter

Para 2: problems that are worrying club members

Para 3: suggested improvements

Para 4: closing remarks, urging action from the manager

- 5** 1 concerned about 2 the way it is being run

- 3 some time 4 noticeably less busy 5 Firstly

- 6 in the area 7 adjust 8 introduced 9 retired

- people 10 consider 11 as soon as possible

- 6** 1 representing
 2 very modern, using the most recent ideas and methods
 3 not able to do what they are supposed to do
 4 show their dissatisfaction by leaving or withdrawing their support

7 *Explanations:* In the view of members, there are two possible explanations. Firstly, we believe ..., Secondly, ...

Suggestions: As to what action can be taken, our main suggestions are ..., reduced fees could be ..., There could also be ..., We also believe that ...

14 Moving abroad

Starting off

2 1 C 2 F 3 B 4 G 5 D 6 A

CD 2 Track 23

Speaker 1

I've been here now for about fifteen years. It's a good life, though I work hard, but frankly I miss my country and the town where I grew up and dream of going back. I feel special ties to the place and when I retire I hope to return there to be among my friends and my family.

Speaker 2

We were utterly fed up with the crime and feeling of insecurity that surrounded us and it was precisely for that reason that we moved away. What really worried us was the effect it might have on the kids going to the local school. We felt it just wasn't worth the risk. On the other hand, it hasn't been easy coping with the language barrier, I have to admit. At least not for us parents. The kids integrated straight away, of course.

Speaker 3

I haven't changed countries, but I've moved from the country to the city because it has better services and more opportunities. I was absolutely astonished to find that many people looked down on me when I first arrived, which didn't exactly make things easy. I suppose they thought: here's some country bumpkin come to the city to make good, and I guess they were right because I have!

Speaker 4

I love lots of things about my country: the food, the sense of humour, the newspapers, lots of things. Actually, I have to admit it was the climate I couldn't stand any longer. I just found the short grey days and the continual rain totally depressing. Mind you, the heat's sometimes a problem here and then I dream of going home. But that's only the odd day here and there. Mostly it's fine.

Speaker 5

I guess you could call me a rolling stone, if people still use that expression – I mean, I've been abroad for so long I don't know all the latest slang. You see, unfortunately I'm one of those typical expatriates who spends two years working in this country and three years working in that. I don't think I could ever go back to my home country because, quite honestly, I just wouldn't fit in. I'd be completely out of touch.

Speaker 6

As a professional ballet dancer there's just no way I could have stayed in my home town. Obviously, you have to be prepared to move abroad if you want to get to the top and there's no point in being in this business unless that's your aim. I've been incredibly lucky, though, and I think everyone needs luck.

Grammar

Comment adverbials and intensifying adverbs

1 unfortunately, quite honestly

2 **1** fortunately **2** undoubtedly **3** Generally speaking **4** To be honest **5** Apparently **6** kindly **7** Obviously **8** Personally

3 **a** **1** utterly **2** absolutely **3** totally **4** completely **5** incredibly

b **1** absolutely, completely, totally **2** utterly **3** completely, incredibly, utterly **4** totally **5** *no other adverb*

c They make the adjective more emphatic.

4 **1** utterly, absolutely **2** absolutely **3** incredibly, perfectly **4** utterly, completely **5** extremely, incredibly **6** perfectly, absolutely **7** totally, utterly **8** incredibly **9** absolutely

Listening | Part 4

1 1 T 2 F You have to choose from eight options.
3 Maybe – you should decide whether this way suits you best or whether you perform better when you deal with both tasks each time you listen. **4** T

2 1 E 2 G 3 H 4 F 5 B 6 G 7 B 8 A 9 H 10 E

CD 2 Track 24

Speaker 1

I was watching this really interesting programme the other day about people who'd come over here to work and had originally meant to stay just a couple of years, but then ended up meeting someone and settling down and things. I thought it was quite remarkable actually, because we give the impression of being rather a nationalistic lot but that doesn't seem to be the case at all in fact. The camera went into people's houses and showed us how they'd been accepted by their new family who were adopting all sorts of new customs and behaviours you wouldn't expect. What impressed me most was seeing their new in-laws learning how to cook new dishes. It was fascinating, a real eye-opener.

Speaker 2

I go to dance classes every Thursday evening. Anyway, there's a student there, quite a young woman, who has only just recently come to this country, and the other day she was really looking dead tired so I offered to get her a coffee afterwards and we got talking. Anyway, I found out that she's working here as a nurse to support her family back home; they've stayed behind, you see. Apparently, there are lots of other people in the same situation as her. Her salary here's enough to provide their schooling, their clothing and all sorts of other things back home. But she's doing incredibly long hours. It's being away from your children and family that must be the worst thing. I think I'd find that unbearable.

Speaker 3

My daughter goes to school with this girl, Mariska. Her family's just arrived here. They sit together in class, they're friends, and we've got to know the parents a bit. Anyway, they've only been here what seems like a couple of months or so, but they've already set up a travel agency for people thinking of visiting their region. They've got all these local contacts, which is a bit of an advantage, I suppose, but they're already doing so well that they've even been able to give jobs to a couple of locals as well. I think that's absolutely amazing, don't you?

Speaker 4

Don't get me wrong, as far as I'm concerned immigration's fine. In fact I think it's really necessary considering the skills shortage we've got here. But what we've ended up with is quite a cultural mix in our office and that means it's sometimes quite hard for people to get their ideas across and, you know, sort of marry up their different approaches to work. I'm continually surprised by the sheer variety of different takes on a situation and the different expectations people have. Personally, I think this sort of intercultural mix is one of the biggest challenges at work today.

Speaker 5

When I started, everyone was born here and spoke the same language. Now it's a real melting pot and that gives rise to no end of problems. But you have to be flexible and turn these things to your advantage and having kids of five or ten different ethnic backgrounds learning together is a culturally enriching experience for everyone, including me! You have to see the kids from abroad. It's their ability to work hard that absolutely amazes me – and it's actually pressuring our local kids to put in more of an effort themselves too. They're getting better results now, which is just the opposite of what I'd have expected and quite a challenge to my preconceptions!

Vocabulary

learn, find out and know; provide, offer and give

1 1 c 2 a 3 b

2 1 provide 2 offer

3 1 find out 2 provide 3 find out 4 learn / find out 5 find out 6 provide 7 learned / found out 8 provide 9 offer 10 give 11 provided 12 gave

Reading and Use of English | Part 6

1 1 four texts and four questions

2 Read the texts carefully before you read the questions to make sure you've understood them. If you do this, you should find the questions easier to answer. If you don't read the texts carefully, you probably won't understand what the questions are referring to.

3 to understand attitudes and opinions and find where they are replicated or not across different texts

3 Suggested answers

- 1 Immigration was previously viewed as a problem, but is now regarded as key to economic success; countries are now less restrictive about immigration: they encourage movement of skilled labour.
- 2 places which attract outsiders and form a meeting place between different cultures; in the street / in public space
- 3 providing public facilities and spaces; encouraging participation in government from all residents; encouraging diversity in the workplace; encouraging immigrant businesses
- 4 advantages: cities will thrive economically and socially; danger: inter-ethnic conflict

4 1 a 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 b 6 a 7 a 8 b

- 5**
- 1 **A** C sees 'hiring immigrants and managing a diverse workforce' as 'good practices' that help to 'ensure that the city prospers'; 'labour market integration' is related to 'the success of local businesses across all sectors of the population'. A also focuses on the benefits of employing an integrated immigrant work force: "We are rich and happy because we have so many immigrants" ... The competition "Successful integration is no coincidence" ... their economic and strategic significance ... policies that focus on skilled labour ... upon whom to place our hopes for future prosperity'.
 - 2 **D** A, B and C emphasise the positive aspects of immigration in a thriving city. D makes a similar point in the first paragraph, but in the second paragraph warns of 'the fragility of cultural diversity' and the danger of a 'collapse into inter-ethnic conflict'.
 - 3 **C** B: 'successful integration may well begin on the street, as accepting diversity implies sharing public space.' – C: 'local governments encourage conditions in which immigrants and all residents thrive ... responsible for areas that affect our daily lives, such as schools, emergency services, swimming pools and soccer fields, parks and streets'
 - 4 **A** B, C and D refer to immigrants in general. However, A focuses specifically on skilled immigrant workers: 'immigration policies that focus on skilled labour ... information technology professionals, creative artists and highly skilled individuals'.

Speaking | Part 4

- 1** 1 five 2 subjects connected with the same theme as Speaking Part 3 3 are expected to discuss your ideas about the same questions 4 quite a long answer

2 Suggested answers

- 1 create cultural diversity, encourage tolerance towards other ways of life, live side by side, open up people's minds, make society a richer place, people from different backgrounds with different outlooks
- 2 create cultural diversity, encourage tolerance towards other ways of life, help them integrate, live side by side, people from different backgrounds with different outlooks
- 3 cover people's basic needs, help them integrate, provide housing, make the transition to a new society

3

► CD 2 Track 25

Examiner: Laura, what do you think are the benefits of a multicultural society?

Laura: I think it encourages understanding of other cultures and tolerance towards them and towards other ways of life, other religions perhaps, and that can be very educational. I think it can open up people's minds to experiences that they might not be able to have otherwise.

Examiner: And Daniel, do you agree with Laura?

Daniel: Yes, and also I personally think it can make society itself richer by having diversity within it and lots of people from different backgrounds, with different outlooks, different ways of doing things and different cultural experiences.

Examiner: Laura, should people who go to live in another country adopt the culture of the country where they go to live?

Laura: That's a contentious issue! Not necessarily. It's possible for different cultures to live side by side and I think with most cultures there's a certain overlap of similarity and I think people should be allowed to have some of the elements of their own culture as long as they're not detrimental to the good of the majority.

Examiner: Daniel, what do you think?

Daniel: Well, I'd go along with that. I think it's a question of sensitivity. It's unreasonable for immigrants to give up all aspects of their culture, but they do need to be sensitive towards the culture and the people in the country where they're choosing to live.

Examiner: And Daniel, how can governments help immigrants?

Daniel: What they need to do is provide lots of information at the beginning so that people can make the transition to a new society. Housing is something I think they should be providing, so they're covering people's basic needs to help them integrate as quickly as possible. Also, I think there should be offers of tuition in the new language, tuition about the new culture, possibly. I don't know if that should be compulsory, but at least it should be on offer.

- 4 1 can, might 2 can 3 should 4 need, can
5 should

CD 2 Track 26

- 1 I think it can open up people's minds to other experiences that they might not be able to have otherwise.
- 2 I personally think it can make society itself richer by having diversity within it.
- 3 I think people should be allowed to have some of the elements of their own culture as long as they're not detrimental to the good of the majority.
- 4 What they need to do is provide lots of information at the beginning so that people can make the transition to a new society.
- 5 Housing is something I think they should be providing.

- 4 It's living away from my family that makes me (feel) lonely.
- 5 All he does is listen to music in his room.
- 6 It was by living in the country that Franz learnt to speak the language perfectly.
- 7 What a good education teaches is tolerance / does is teach tolerance.
- 8 All I want is to be able to visit my family again.

Reading and Use of English | Part 4

- 1 1 six 2 three 3 word 4 Contractions
5 change 6 same 7 number 8 given
- 2 The correct answer is b. Answer a is incorrect grammatically; c exceeds the six-word limit; d doesn't use the word given.
- 3 1 be grateful if you could/would remind
2 in completing the project all by
3 to make much more / a much greater / a lot more effort
4 (yet) made up her mind whether
- 4 1 (well) be holding Katya up is
2 whose fault the accident
3 found out the truth,
4 was not/wasn't until lunchtime / lunch time that
5 put many people off emigrating was
6 the first time they had seen

Grammar

Cleft sentences for emphasis

- 1 1 I couldn't stand the climate any longer.
2 I was most impressed by/at seeing their new in-laws learning how to cook new dishes.
3 The worst thing must be being away from your children and family.
4 We've ended up with quite a cultural mix in our office.
5 I am absolutely amazed by their ability to work hard.
- 2 1 What I believe is that young people benefit from living and working abroad.
2 It's because they don't like the climate in their own country that many people move overseas.
3 What enriches our lives is living in a multicultural society.

Writing | Part 1

An essay

- 1 2 f 3 e 4 d 5 b 6 g 7 a

- 2 *Suggested underlining*
benefits / helping immigrants to integrate / Language / Culture / Work / two of the areas / explain why / important / provide reasons / own words
- 6 1 with the result that
2 Consequently
3 During the documentary it was suggested that
4 on the grounds that
5 so what I would suggest is that
6 I entirely agree with the point made during the documentary that
7 To offer some examples
8 it is through these experiences that
9 all of which
10 For this reason, I personally believe that

Vocabulary and grammar review |

Unit 13

1 1 messenger 2 approaching 3 incorrect
4 annually 5 dedication 6 successfully 7 healthy
8 overweight

2 1 to 2 for 3 to 4 with 5 at 6 to 7 for 8 to

3 1 however but / disease, however disease.
 However, 2 although whereas
 3 Despite Despite the fact that / Despite he didn't feel
 Despite not feeling 4 But Although / Even though
 5 doctor. Although doctor, although

4 1 not as good as it was
 2 have fewer qualified nurses than
 3 is more difficult than
 4 sooner we get home the
 5 didn't / did not earn as much money
 6 is no better than / isn't/is not any better than

Vocabulary and grammar review |

Unit 14

1 1 learned/learnt 2 find out 3 provide 4 know
 5 given 6 offered 7 find out 8 learn

2 1 was more time to take
 2 that everyone/everybody objected to
 3 to do is fill in/out
 4 the last thing I want to / will 5 do was (to) take
 things/it
 6 is (doing/the) paperwork that takes (up)

3 *Suggested answers*
 1 thoughtfully 2 almost certainly 3 To be
 honest / Actually 4 Actually / To be honest
 5 quite surprisingly 6 Obviously 7 apparently
 8 hopefully

Acknowledgements

The authors would like to thank everyone that has worked on this book and with particular thanks to Meredith Levy and Neil Holloway for their thoroughness and dedication. Thanks also to Brigit Viney (project manager), Lucy Edwards (production controller), Kevin Brown (picture researcher), Kay George (permissions controller) and Leon Chambers (audio producer). Special thanks to the design team at Wild Apple Design.

Guy Brook-Hart and Simon Haines

The authors and publishers are thankful for the following people for reviewing the material: Michael Black (UK), Igor Gzhko (Ukraine), Andreas Grundtvig (Germany), Catherine Hollings (Spain), Antoine Martin (Poland), Marjorie Rosenberg (Austria).

This product is informed by the English Vocabulary Profile, built as part of English Profile, a collaborative programme designed to enhance the learning, teaching and assessment of English worldwide. Its main funding partners are Cambridge University Press and Cambridge English Language Assessment and its aim is to create a 'profile' for English linked to the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEF). English Profile outcomes, such as the English Vocabulary Profile, will provide detailed information about the language that learners can be expected to demonstrate at each CEF level, offering a clear benchmark for learners' proficiency. For more information, please visit www.englishprofile.org.

Development of this publication has made use of the Cambridge English Corpus (CEC). The CEC is a computer database of contemporary spoken and written English, which currently stands at over one billion words. It includes British English, American English and other varieties of English. It also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, developed in collaboration with the University of Cambridge ESOL Examinations. Cambridge University Press has built up the CEC to provide evidence about language use that helps to produce better language-teaching materials.

The *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* is the world's most widely used dictionary for learners of English. Including all the words and phrases that learners are likely to come across, it also has easy-to-understand definitions and example sentences to show how the word is used in context. The *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* is available online at dictionary.cambridge.org. © Cambridge University Press. Reproduced with permission.

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting.

Hodder and Stoughton and Hachette Book Group for the text on p. 12 adapted from *The Hungry Ocean: A Swordboat Captain's Journey* by Linda Greenlaw, published by Hodder and Stoughton. Copyright © 1999 by Linda Greenlaw. Reproduced by permission of Hodder and Stoughton and Hachette Book Group, Inc. All rights reserved; The Orion Publishing Group for the text on p. 13 from *The Pythons: Autobiography by The Pythons* by John Cleese, Terry Gilliam, Michael Palin, Eric Idle, Terry Jones and the Estate of Graham Chapman, published by The Orion Publishing Group. Copyright © 2003. Reproduced by permission of The Orion Publishing Group, London and St. Martin's Press. All rights reserved. Pan Macmillan for the text on p. 13 adapted from *Around Alone* by Emma Richards, published by Macmillan, London. Copyright © Emma Richards 2004. Reproduced with permission; Headline Publishing Group and Louise Greenberg Books Ltd for the text on p. 13 adapted from *The Kindness of Strangers: The Autobiography* by Kate Adie, published by Headline Publishing Group, 2003. Reproduced by permission of Headline Publishing Group and Louise Greenberg Books Ltd; Cambridge University Press for the text on p. 21 adapted from *The Cambridge Encyclopedia of Language 2nd edition* by David Crystal. Copyright © Cambridge University Press 1997. Reproduced with permission of David Crystal and Cambridge University Press; BBC.co.uk for the text on p. 30 adapted from 'The different thinking styles', www.bbc.co.uk/science/leonardo/thinker_quiz/allresults.shtml. Reproduced with permission from bbc.co.uk; NI Syndication Limited for the text on p. 34 adapted from 'The next step in brain evolution' by Richard Woods, *The Sunday Times*, 9 July 2006. Copyright © NI Syndication Limited; Text on p. 36 taken from 'Can talent be inherited?' by BLaCKPoWeR, ATRL, <http://atrl.net/forums/showthread.php?t=227856>; NI Syndication Limited for the text on p. 41 adapted from 'Friends benefit firms', *The Times*, 20 October 2005. Copyright © NI Syndication Limited; Guardian News and Media Ltd for the text on pp. 42–43 adapted from 'Graduate jobs: Advice from

the experts', www.theguardian.com, 17 July 2011. Copyright © Guardian News & Media Ltd 2011; The Daily Telegraph for the text on p. 51 adapted from 'Career Coach: How to get a graduate job' by Jeremy I'Anson, *The Daily Telegraph*, 21 January 2013. Copyright © Telegraph Media Group Limited 2013; Random House LLC for the text on pp. 56–57 adapted from *A Walk in the Woods: Rediscovering America on the Appalachian Trail* by Bill Bryson, 1997. Used by permission of Broadway Books, an imprint of the Crown Publishing Group, a division of Random House LLC. All rights reserved; NI Syndication Limited for the text on pp. 64–65 adapted from 'Tate Times Drawing Challenge shortlist' by Rachel Campbell-Johnston, *The Times*, 25 May 2007. Copyright © NI Syndication Limited; Guardian News and Media Ltd for the text on p. 67 adapted from 'Offices down to a fine art' by Caroline Palmer, *The Observer*, 13 May 2001. Copyright © Guardian News & Media Ltd 2001; The Olive Press for the text on p. 68 adapted from 'Graffiti: Art or vandalism?', *The Olive Press*, 13 February 2012. Reproduced with permission; MediaShift LLC for the text on pp. 76–77 adapted from 'Your Guide to Virtual Worlds' by Mark Glaser, *MediaShift, PBS*, 10 October 2007. Reproduced with permission; Professor Greg Philo for the text on p. 87 adapted from 'BBC must restore faith in balance, accuracy and fairness', *The Guardian letters*, 23 July 2007. Reproduced by kind permission of Professor Greg Philo; International Debate Education Association for the text on p. 90–91 adapted from 'This house believes reality television does more harm than good' edited by Alexander Helling, *International Debate Education Association*, www.idebate.org. Reproduced with permission; Random House Group Limited for the text on p. 94 adapted from 'Desert Island Discs: 70 Years of Castaways' from *One of BBC Radio 4's Best-Loved Programmes* by Sean Magee, published by Bantam Press. Reprinted by permission of The Random House Group Limited; NI Syndication Limited for the text on pp. 100–101 adapted from 'Bugatti Veyron' by Jeremy Clarkson, *The Sunday Times*, 27 November 2005. Copyright © NI Syndication Limited; The Committee for Economic Development of Australia (CEDA) for the text on p. 108 adapted from 'CEDA – Lifelong learning: How to pass the test' by Professor Louise Roland, www.ceda.com.au. Reproduced with permission; Go Plymouth for text C on p. 111 adapted from 'Why I chose the University of Plymouth' by Emily Knight, *Go Plymouth*. Reproduced with permission; Adding Support Skills for European Teachers (ASSET) for the text on p. 117 adapted from 'Characteristics of adult learners' from *Learner Centred Methodologies* by Rhonda Wynne, www.assetproject.info. Reproduced with permission; Penguin Books Limited, The Wylie Agency and Houghton Mifflin Harcourt for the text on pp. 122–123 adapted from *Dark Star Safari: Overland from Cairo to Cape Town* by Paul Theroux, *Penguin Books*, 2002. Copyright © 2003 by Paul Theroux and Cape Cod Scriveners Co., 2002. Reproduced by permission of Penguin Books Limited, The Wylie Agency and Houghton Mifflin Harcourt Publishing Company. All rights reserved; Guardian News and Media Ltd for the text on p. 124 adapted from 'Meet the tribe' by Simon Orr, *The Observer*, 25 March 2007. Copyright Guardian News & Media Ltd 2007; NI Syndication Limited for the text on p. 125 adapted from 'Paradise found, in the Dominican Republic' by Fiona Dunlop, *The Independent*, 3 March 2013. Copyright © NI Syndication Limited; Environmental News Network (ENN), Inc. for the headlines on p. 128 'China to Build Offshore Wind Power Complex', 'BUS Fish and Wildlife Service to consider Black-footed Albatross for Protection', 'Pollutant linked to bronchitis in toddlers', 'Britons top table of carbon emissions from planes'. Reproduced by permission of ENN, Inc.; New Scientist for the headline on p. 128 'Is the bio fuel dream over?', *New Scientist*, 15 December 2007. Reproduced with permission; National Geographic Society for the headline on p. 128 'Arctic Melt Opens Northwest Passage', *National Geographic News*, 17 September 2007. Reproduced with permission; The Economist for the text on pp. 130–131 adapted from 'Alex the African Grey', *The Economist*, 20 September 2007. Copyright © The Economist Newspaper Limited, London 2007; WWF for the text on p. 133 adapted from 'South China tiger', www.wwf.panda.org. Used under the Creative Commons Licence 3.0, <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en>; Shelter Publications, Inc. for the text on p. 147 adapted from 'Galloway's Book on Running' by Jeff Galloway, *Shelter Publications*, 2002. Reproduced with permission; Maytree Foundation for the texts A, B and D on p. 155 adapted with permission from 'Good ideas from successful cities: municipal leadership on immigrant integration' from the Municipal leadership series, Toronto: Maytree Foundation, 2012–2013. Available online from the Cities of Migration website: <http://citiesofmigration.ca>; The Migration Policy Institute for text C on p. 155 adapted from 'The Role of Cities in Immigrant Integration' by Brian Ray, *Migration Information Source*, October 2003. Originally published by the Migration Information Source, the online journal of the Migration Policy Institute, an

independent, nonpartisan think tank in Washington, DC, dedicated to the study of the movement of people worldwide, www.migrationpolicy.org; Fitsense Sports for the text on p. 160 adapted from 'Marathon Training', *Fitsense*. Reproduced with permission; The Economist for the audio recording and recording script on p. 206 adapted from 'About, Face Prosopagnosia', *The Economist*, 13 December 2004. Copyright © The Economist Newspaper Limited, London 2004; Guardian News and Media Ltd for the audio recording and recording script on p. 231 adapted from 'Life Swap' by Amy Smith and Hoda Baraka, *The Guardian*, 31 October 2006. Copyright © Guardian News & Media Ltd 2006; The Washington Post for the audio recording and recording script on pp. 237–238 adapted from 'Signs of Thaw in a Desert of Snow' by DeNeen L. Brown, *Washington Post Foreign Services*, 28 May 2002. All rights reserved. Used by permission and protected by the Copyright Laws of the United States. The printing, copying, redistribution, or retransmission of this Content without express written permission is prohibited.

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting.
The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher has no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content is or will remain appropriate.

Photo acknowledgements:

p. 8 (BR): OJO Images/Rex Features; p. 8 (CR): William Ju/Alamy; p. 8 (TR): Woods Wharcroft/Aurora Photos/Corbis; p. 8 (BL): Derek Massey/Alamy; p. 9 (BL): Julie Edwards/Alamy; p. 9 (BC): Kenneth Garrett/National Geographic/Getty Images; p. 9 (BR): Mint Images - Tim Pannell/Getty Images; p. 11 (TL): Tristar Pictures/Ronald Grant Archive; p. 11 (TR): Matthew Stockman/Getty Images; p. 11 (BL): John Mottern/AFP/Getty Images; p. 11 (BR): Michael Buckner/Getty Images; p. 12: Ed Quinn/Corbis; p. 13 (L): Columbia Pictures/AF Archive/Alamy; p. 13 (BR): Reuters/Corbis; p. 13 (TR): David Montgomery/Hulton Archive/Getty Images; p. 15: paolo cordon/iStock/Thinkstock; p. 16: Isopix/Rex Features; p. 17: Monty Rakusen/Getty Images; p. 18 (TL): Stacey Newman/iStock/Thinkstock; p. 18 (TR): Yasuhide Fumoto/Getty Images; p. 18 (CL): Blend Images/Shutterstock; p. 18 (C): Purestock/Thinkstock; p. 18 (CR): Jupiterimages/Thinkstock; p. 18 (BL): Image Source/Getty Images; p. 18 (BR): martinplkang/iStock/Thinkstock; p. 19 (BL): imagebroker/Alamy; p. 19 (R): Image Source/Alamy; p. 23 (BR): Russian Look/UIG via Getty Images; p. 23 (TL): Photononstop/Superstock; p. 23 (TR): Janine Wiedel Photolibrary/Alamy; p. 24 (BL): Bananastock/Punchstock; p. 24 (BR): David Young-Wolff/Getty Images; p. 24 (TR): Jetta Productions/Getty Images; p. 25 (TR): M_a_y_a/iStock/Thinkstock; p. 25 (BL): Radius/Superstock; p. 25 (BR): Ken Huang/Getty Images; p. 27 (BL): ©2012 FOX via Getty Images; p. 27 (TC, BL): Rex Features; p. 27 (TL): Joan Wakeham/Rex Features; p. 27 (TR): ITV/Rex Features; p. 30 (TR, B/G): VOLODYMIR GRINKO/iStock/Thinkstock; p. 31 (Bourgeois): Arthur Mones/Brooklyn Museum/Corbis; p. 31 (Darwin): The Print Collector/Alamy; p. 31 (Achebe): ZUMA/Rex Features; p. 31 (Rand): Everett Collection/Rex Features; p. 31 (Polgar): APA-PictureDesk GmbH/Rex Features; p. 31 (Callas): Pierluigi Praturlon/Rex Features; p. 31 (Gaudi): INTERFOTO/Alamy; p. 31 (Messi): Miguel Benitez/Rex Features; p. 31 (BL): Son of Man, 1964 (oil on canvas); Magritte, Rene (1898–1967)/Private Collection/The Bridgeman Art Library, © ADAGP, Paris and DACS, London 2013.; p. 33: Fred Stein Archive/Archive Photos/Getty Images; p. 34: Itana/Shutterstock; p. 34 (TR): Richard G. Bingham II/Alamy; p. 36 (L): Tim Scott/iStock/Thinkstock; p. 36 (R): Jack Q/Shutterstock; p. 37 (BL): Jetta Productions/Getty Images; p. 37 (BC): Rex Features; p. 37 (BR): Blend Images/Alamy; p. 38: Corbis; p. 39 (R): Keith Morris/Alamy; p. 39 (L): Eric Dreyer/Getty Images; p. 40 (1): Blue Jean Images/Corbis; p. 40 (2): Gordon Saunders/iStock/Thinkstock; p. 40 (3): Monty Rakusen/Cultura/Corbis; p. 40 (4): Klaus Tiedge/Fancy/Corbis; p. 40 (5): Echo/Getty Images; p. 41: JGI/Jamie Grill/Blend Images; pp. 42/43 (B/G): Melpomene/Shutterstock; p. 43 (R): Comstock/Thinkstock; p. 43 (L): kpatyhka/Shutterstock; p. 44: Mary Evans/Retrograph Collection; p. 45: T.M.O. Buildings/Alamy; p. 46: Amanda Koster/Corbis; p. 47 (TC): Sipa Press/Rex Features; p. 47 (TL): Ian Shaw/Alamy; p. 47 (TR): James Boardman/Alamy; p. 52 (TL): Stock Connection/Superstock; p. 52 (BL): Roberto Mettifogo/Getty Images; p. 52 (TR): Buzz Pictures/Alamy; p. 53 (BR): Blend Images/Superstock; p. 53 (TL): Modfos/Shutterstock; p. 53 (BL): Christopher Furlong/Getty Images; pp. 56/57 (TC, B/G): Superstock/Alamy; p. 58 (1): Bill Stormont/Corbis; p. 58 (2): Michael Doolittle/Alamy; p. 58 (3): Oli Scarff/Getty Images; p. 59 (1): Mark A Johnson/Alamy; p. 59 (2): Chris Howes/Wild Places Photography/Alamy; p. 59 (3): Shannon Stent/Getty Images; p. 60: FirePhoto/Alamy; p. 61: Fuse/Thinkstock; p. 62 (1–5): News Syndication; p. 63 (T): NPG 6415 Helen Mirren by Ishbel Myerscough, oil on board, 1997 © National

Portrait Gallery, London; p. 63 (B): NPG 6361 *P.D. James* by Michael R. Taylor oil on canvas, 1996 © National Portrait Gallery, London; p. 64: Mike Booth/Alamy; p. 68 (B/G, T): Quentin Bargate/Loop Images/Superstock; p. 68 (B): Niels Poulsen DK/Alamy; p. 69 (BL): Estudi M6/Stock/Thinkstock; p. 69 (BR): Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock; p. 71 (T): Moviestore Collection Ltd/Alamy; p. 71 (B): Miramax/A F archive/Alamy; p. 74 (1): Image Studio/Getty Images; p. 74 (2): Gwyn Photography/Getty Images; p. 74 (3): Art Directors & TRIP/Alamy; p. 74 (4): Stevens Frémont/Corbis; p. 74 (5): Nicky J. Sims/Redferns/Getty Images; p. 76 (B/G): Bram Janssens/Hemera/Thinkstock; p. 77: Adrea Danti/Shutterstock; p. 79 (B/G): Veyronik/Shutterstock; p. 79 (T): Everett Collection/Rex Features; p. 79 (B): Sanjay Jha/Rex Features; p. 81 (T): Daniel Rooney/Alamy; p. 81 (B): Manchan/Getty Images; p. 83 (TR): Evlakhov Valeriy/Shutterstock; p. 83 (TC): Image Source/Rex Features; p. 83 (BC): Alan Crawford/iStock/Thinkstock; p. 83 (L): Raphael Fournier/Rex Features; p. 84: Radius Images/Corbis; p. 85: Radhar Images/Alamy; p. 86: Ute Grabowsky/photothek images UG/Alamy; p. 87: Chris Weeks/WireImage/Getty Images; p. 88 (T): Ken McKay/Rex Features; p. 88 (B): David Pearson/Rex Features; p. 89: ©2013 NBC Universal Media, LLC/Getty Images; p. 90: ITV/Rex Features; p. 91: ITV/Rex Features; p. 92: PhotoEdit/Alamy; p. 96 (TL): Ton Koene/age fotostock/Superstock; p. 96 (CL): Orthodox/Shutterstock; p. 96 (BL): Jonathan Hordle/Rex Features; p. 96 (TR): Andrew Fox/Alamy; p. 96 (BL): Bridgeman Art Library/Superstock; p. 97 (T): Associated Sports Photography/Alamy; p. 97 (B): Paramount Television/ Ronald Grant Archive; p. 101: Rex Features; p. 102 (1): MobileDemand; p. 102 (2): format4/Alamy; p. 102 (3): Warren Jacobs/Art Directors & TRIP; p. 103 (TL): Gavin Parsons/Getty Images; p. 103 (CL): iStockphoto.com/MirekKijewski; p. 103 (BL): H Mark Weidman Images/Alamy; p. 103 (TR): UpperCut Images/Alamy; p. 103 (CR): imagebroker/Alamy; p. 103 (BR): blickwinkel/Alamy; p. 106 (TR): Bubbles Photolibrary/Alamy; p. 106 (BL): Digital Vision/Thinkstock; p. 106 (BC): Ian Lishman/Juice Images/Corbis; p. 106 (BR): wavebreakmedia/Shutterstock; p. 107 (T): Thomas Koehler/photothek images UG/Alamy; p. 107 (BL): ventdusud/Shutterstock; p. 107 (BR): Alessandro Penna/Alamy; p. 108: Image Source/Alamy; p. 109 (L): aberCPC/Alamy; p. 109 (R): Noam Armonn/Shutterstock; p. 110 (TL): travelib/Alamy; p. 110 (TR): Walter Schiesswohl/Getty Images; p. 110 (B): Images of Africa: Photobank/Alamy; p. 111 (TL, TR): Jupiterimages/Thinkstock; p. 111 (CL): David Young-Wolff/Getty Images; p. 111 (BL): GoGo Images Corporation/Alamy; p. 111 (BR): Aleksandr Morozov/Getty Images; p. 112: Arch White/Alamy; p. 114: B Christopher/Alamy; p. 115 (T): Purestock/Thinkstock; p. 115 (C): Blend Images/Superstock; p. 115 (B): Peter Glass/Alamy; p. 118 (1): Jaak Nilson/Alamy; p. 118 (2): Panoramic Images/Getty Images; p. 118 (3): Steve Vidler/Corbis; p. 118 (4): Jason Todd/Getty Images; p. 119 (5): Corbis/Punchstock; p. 119 (6): Eye Ubiquitous/Rex Features; p. 122 (TR): Eric Feferber/AFP/Getty Images; p. 122 (BL): Ian Murphy/Getty Images; p. 123: Robert Harding Picture Library/Alamy; p. 125 (BL, B/G): Edmond Van Hoorick/Superstock; pp. 126/127 (T): Iakov Filimonov/Shutterstock; p. 126 (B): Keith Levit/Shutterstock; p. 127 (TR): Martin Child/Getty Images; p. 128 (T, B/G): visdia/iStock/Thinkstock; p. 128 (B): PhotoAlto/Superstock; p. 129: Bryan and Cherry Alexander Photography, www.arcticphoto.com; p. 130: Rick Friedman/Corbis; p. 131: Gerald Davies/Rex Features; p. 132: Jan Greune/LOOK/Photoshot; p. 133: Konrad Wothe/Minden Pictures/FLPA; p. 134 (1): Sipa Press/Rex Features; p. 134 (2): Ashley Cooper/Alamy; p. 134 (3): Wolfgang Kaehler/Corbis; p. 135 (L): WILDLIFE GmbH/Alamy; p. 135 (R): Pete Oxford/Minden Pictures/Getty Images; p. 136: Universal Images Group/Superstock; p. 137 (BR): Ulrik Jantzen/Bloomberg via Getty Images; p. 137 (BL): Greg Balfour Evans/Alamy; p. 140 (TL): Kieran McManus/Alamy; p. 140 (C): Tetra Images/Alamy; p. 140 (BL): David Burton/Alamy; p. 140 (BR): Des & Les Jacobs/Getty Images; p. 143 (TL): Juanmonino/Getty Images; p. 143 (TC): Table Mesa Prod./Getty Images; p. 143 (BL): Realimage/Alamy; p. 143 (BC): Brett Jorgensen/Rex Features; p. 143 (TR): www.gerardbrown.co.uk/Alamy; p. 143 (BR): © Cavan Images/Getty Images; p. 144 (1): Mike King/Action Plus; p. 144 (2): Nicolas Russell/Getty Images; p. 144 (3): Ian MacNicol/Getty Images; p. 144 (4): Markus Boesch/Getty Images; p. 146 (BL): Nayashkova Olga/Shutterstock; p. 146 (TR): Barbara Dudzińska/iStock/Thinkstock; p. 146 (BR): Julian Claxton/Alamy; p. 148: Jupiterimages/Thinkstock; p. 149 (T): Ewan Burns/Corbis; p. 149 (C): fstop123/Getty Images; p. 149 (B): STEVE LINDRIDGE/Alamy; p. 150 (TR): Colinspics/Alamy; p. 150 (CR): Ken Stratton/Corbis; p. 150 (BR): Glowimages/Alamy; p. 150 (BL): Rebecca Blackwell/AP/Press Association Images; p. 151: Ocean/Corbis; p. 152: MBI/Alamy; p. 153 (TR): Kevin Foy/Rex Features; p. 153 (BL): AA World Travel Library/Alamy; p. 155: Sylvain Sonnet/Corbis; p. 156: A. Viola/Getty Images; p. 157 (TL): Juliane Thiere/Alamy; p. 157 (BR): arabianEye/Getty Images; p. 158 (BL): North Wind Picture Archives/Alamy; p. 159 (T): Rex Features; p. 159 (B): Jupiterimages/Thinkstock; p. 196 (TL): GRANT ROONEY PREMIUM/Alamy; p. 196 (R): YAY Media AS/Alamy; p. 196 (BL): Noel Hendrickson/Digital Vision/Thinkstock.

Illustration acknowledgements

Jeff Anderson (Graham-Cameron Illustration) pp. 10(TL), 20, 55, 67, 98, 99, 120, 121. Roger Harris (NB Illustration) pp. 11, 21, 48, 49, 158. Dusan Paulic (Beehive Illustration) pp. 10(BR), 35, 54, 80, 93, 147.